OLD FRENCH SERIES · VOLUME 34

Merlin

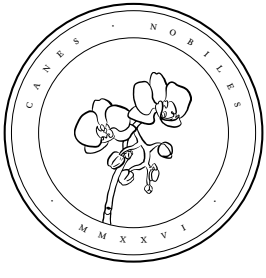
Robert de Boron

Merlin

---

with a word-for-word interlinear English translation

preserving the original word order

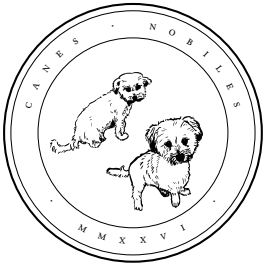


CANES NOBILES · MMXXVI

Copyright © 2026 Christopher Hench
All rights reserved

Published by Canes Nobiles
canesnobiles.com

The source text is in the public domain



Volume 34 of the Canes Nobiles Old French interlinear texts

The Old French text follows Gaston Paris and Jacob Ulrich's text, Merlin, roman en prose du XIIIe siècle, tome I (Paris, 1886), pages 1–146, from the Huth manuscript

Translated and composed with AI, edited by Christopher Hench
Artwork by Esther Steves

The text keeps the manuscript's spelling as Paris and Ulrich print it, with their accents; what their square brackets supply is printed without the brackets, and what their round brackets would strike is left out. The reading sections and their English heads are this press's. The Suite that follows Arthur's coronation in the Huth manuscript is not printed.

CONTENTS

I · The Devils' Council 7
II · The Devil and the Maiden 22
III · The Birth of Merlin 33
IV · The Mother's Trial 47
V · Merlin and Blaise 66
VI · How Vortigern Took the Crown 74
VII · The Tower That Would Not Stand 81
VIII · Merlin Goes with the Messengers 96
IX · Merlin's Laughter 107
X · The Two Dragons 116
XI · Pendragon Seeks Merlin 135
XII · Merlin and the Two Brothers 153
XIII · The Threefold Death 167
XIV · The Battle of Salisbury 182
XV · The Stones and the Round Table 196
XVI · Uther and Igerne 209
XVII · The Night at Tintagel 226
XVIII · The Peace and the Marriage 240
XIX · Arthur Given to Auctor 256
XX · The Death of Uther 269
XXI · The Sword in the Anvil 282
XXII · The Crowning of Arthur 298

The Devils' Council

I

Christ has harrowed hell, and the devils resolve to beget on a woman a man of their own, with their knowledge of things past. A devil with power over a rich man's wife ruins the house: the beasts die, the son is strangled, the wife hangs herself, and the man dies of grief. One daughter, seduced, is buried alive by the judges. A confessor counsels the other two, and a woman in the devil's service tempts the younger.

Chi endroit dist li contes que moult fu iriés anemis
Here in-place says the tale that very was angered the-enemy
quant nostre sires ot esté en infer, et il en ot jeté Adan
when our lord had been in hell and he thence had cast Adam
et Evain et des autres tant comme lui plot. Et quant
and Eve and of-the others so-much as to-him pleased And when
li anemi sorent chou, si en orent moult grant merveille,
the enemies knew this so thereof had very great marvel
et s'assamblerent et disent: «Qui est chis hom qui nous
and themselves-assembled and said Who is this man who us
a enforchiés et nos fermetés brisies si que nule chose que
has forced and our strongholds broken so that any thing that
nous eussiens reposte ne pot estre celee encontre lui que
we might-have hidden not could be concealed against him that
il n'ait fait trestout chou que il lui plaist? Et nous
he not-may-have done all this that it to-him pleases And we
ne cuidiens mie que nus hom peust naistre de feme qui
not thought at-all that any man could be-born of woman who
ne fust nostres. Cis est ensi nés que nous n'avons nule
not were ours This-one is thus born that we not-have any
partie en lui, et nous destruit et tormente au plus qu'il
part in him and us destroys and torments at-the most that-he

pot. Comment est il nés de feme que nous n'avons en lui
could How is he born of woman that we not-have in him
nul delit terriien et si nous destruist ensi?» Adont respondi
any delight earthly and so us destroys thus Then answered
li uns des anemis et dist: «Signors, che nous a destruit
the one of-the enemies and said Lords this us has destroyed
que nous cuidiens que mieus nous vausist, que membre
that we thought that better to-us would-avail that remember
vous i que li prophete parloient, qui disoient que li fieus
you there that the prophets spoke who said that the son
de Dieu verroit en terre pour sauver les pecheours d'Adan
of God would-come into earth for to-save the sinners of-Adam
et d'Evain. Et nous alames, si presimes ichiaus qui che
and of-Eve And we went so took those who this
disoient que cil qui lors verroit en terre les deliverroit
said that he who then would-come into earth them would-deliver
des painnes d'infer. Tant le disent li prophete que ore
from-the pains of-hell So-much it said the prophets that now
est avenu. Si nous a tolu chou que nous avons perdu
is come-about So us has taken-away this that we have lost
et chou que nous aviens saisi, que nous n'i poons riens
and this that we had seized that we not-there can anything
prendre contre lui. Mais il nous a tolu tous chiaus qui
take against him But he us has taken-away all those who
croient en sa nativité et qu'il nasqui de feme par tel forche
believe in his nativity and that-he was-born of woman by such force
que nous n'en eusmes onques riens ne nous ne presimes
that we not-thereof had ever anything nor we not took
garde que il nous deust che faire.» «Et ne sés tu donques,»
heed that he to-us ought this to-do And not know thou then
fait uns autres, «que il les fait laver d'iaue en son non?
says an other that he them makes wash with-water in his name

Et par tel non se levent: el non dou pere et dou
And by such name themselves raise in-the name of-the father and of-the
fil et dou saint esperit, si que nous n'en porons nul
son and of-the holy spirit so that we not-thereof shall-be-able any
avoir si que nous solions. Ore les avons tous perdus par le
have so as we were-wont Now them have-we all lost by the
lavement que il font, si que nous n'avons nul pooir sour
washing that they do so that we not-have any power over
iaus dessi que il revignent a nous par oevres que il font.
them until that they return to us by works that they do
«Ensi abaisse nostre pooirs par chelui qui che nous a
Thus lowers our power by him who this to-us has
tolu. Et plus encore, que il a laissié menistres en terre
taken-away And more still that he has left ministers on earth
qui les sauveront, ja n'averont tant fait de nos oevres, se
who them will-save ever not-will-they-have so-much done of our works if
il s'en voelent repentir et nos oevres guerpir et faire
they themselves-thereof wish to-repent and our works abandon and do
chou que li menistre lour diront. Par che les avons perdus
this that the ministers to-them will-say By this them have-we lost
tous. Moult a fait esperituel substance que pour homme
all Much has done spiritual substance that for man
sauver vint en terre et daigna naistre de feme et souffri
to-save came into earth and deigned to-be-born of woman and suffered
les tormens terriiens et nasqui de feme sans chou que nous
the torments earthly and was-born of woman without this that we
n'en seusmes nient, et sans faire nul delit d'omme ne
not-thereof knew anything and without to-make any delight of-man nor
de feme. Et quant nous i fumes venu, nous l'essaiames en
of woman And when we there were come we him-tested in
toutes les manieres que nous seusmes. Et quant nous l'eusmes
all the manners that we knew And when we him-had

essaiié et qu'en lui n'avoit nule de nos oevres, si vaut morir
tested and that-in him not-had any of our works so wished to-die
pour sauver homme. Moult a chier homme, quant il si grant
for to-save man Much has dear man when he so great
painne vaut souffrir pour li avoir et nous tolir. Et
pain wished to-suffer for him to-have and us to-take-away And
moult nous deveriens pener comment nous le porriens avoir
much ourselves ought to-toil how we him could have
a faire nos oevres, en tel maniere que il ne s'en peust
to make our works in such manner that he not himself-thence could
repentir ne parler a chiaus par cui il aroit le pardon
repent nor speak to those by whom he would-have the pardon
que il achata de sa mort.» Lors dient tout ensamble: «Nous
that he bought with his death Then say-they all together We
avons tout pierdu, dès que il puet pardouner les pechiés
have all lost since that he can pardon the sins
dusques en la fin: se il le prent en ses oevres, dont sera il
until in the end if he him takes in his works then will-be he
saus. Et quant il avera tous jors faites nos oevres, se l'avons
saved And when he will-have all days done our works so him-have
nous pierdu, se il se repent. Ensi les perdons nous tous.»
we lost if he himself repents Thus them lose we all

Atant parlerent entr'aus et dient: «Cil qui plus nous
Thereupon spoke-they among-them and say Those who most us
ont neut, che sont cil qui disent de sa venue en terre. Et
have harmed these are those who said of his coming into earth And
che sont cil dont li grans damages nous est venus. Et
these are those from-whom the great damage to-us is come And
quant il che plus disoient et nous plus les tormentions,
when they this more said and we more them tormented
si m'est avis que il se hasta pour iaus venir aidier
so to-me-is opinion that he himself hastened for them to-come help

et secourre, pour iaus delivrer des tormens que nous
and succor for them to-deliver from-the torments that we
leur faisions souffrir. Mais comment porriens nous avoir
to-them made suffer But how could we have
un homme qui parlast a iaus et lour desist nos sens
a man who should-speak to them and to-them should-tell our sense
et nos proueches et nos affaires, si que nous avons pooir
and our prowesses and our affairs so that we have power
de savoir toutes choses faites, dites et alees? Et se nous
of knowing all things done said and gone And if we
aviemes cel houme qui de che eust pooir, et il seust ces
had that man who of this had power and he knew these
choses dire et raconter, et il fust avoec les autres hommes
things to-say and recount and he were with the other men
en terre, si nous porroit bien aidier et ensegnier comme li
on earth so us could well help and teach as the
prophete qui avoec nous estoient, que nous cuidiens que ja
prophets who with us were whom we thought that ever
ne deust avenir. Ensi diroit cil les choses dites et faites
not ought to-happen Thus would-say he the things said and done
priès et loing et seroit moult creus de maintes personnes.»
near and far and would-be much believed by many-a persons
Lors dient tout ensamble: «Moult seroit bien esploitiet
Then say-they all together Much would-be well achieved
qui tel homme porroit faire, car moult seroit creus.» Lors
who such man could make for much would-be believed Then
dist li uns: «Je n'ai pooir dou conchevoir ne de faire
said the one I not-have power of-the conceiving nor of making
semence en feme, mais se j'en avoie le pooir je le porroie
seed in woman but if I-thereof had the power I it could
bien faire, que je sai une feme qui fait et dist a devise
well do for I know a woman who does and says at will

canques je voel.» Et li autres dist: «Il i a tel de nous
whatever I wish And the other said It there has such of us
qui bien puet prendre samblance d'omme et conchevoir
who well can take semblance of-man and conceive
en feme. Mais il convient que il le prenge aussi celeement
in woman But it behooves that he it take as secretly
comme il porra plus.» Ensi ont pris li anemi conseil
as he will-be-able most Thus have taken the enemies counsel
qu'il engenderront un homme qui engingnera les autres.
that-they will-beget a man who will-deceive the others
Moult sont fol li dyable qui quident que nostre sires ne
Very are mad the devils who think that our lord not
sache cest oevre qu'il pourparloient entr'aus. Et ensi prist
may-know this work that-they plotted among-them And thus took
li dyables a faire un homme qui eust son memoire
the devil to make a man who should-have his memory
et son sens pour engingnier homme et Jesucrist. Et bien
and his sense for to-deceive man and Jesus-Christ And well
poés savoir que moult est dyables faus, qui cuide engingnier
can-you know that much is devil false who thinks to-deceive
celui qui est sires de lui et de tout. Ensi departirent lour
him who is lord of him and of all Thus parted their
conseil, et ont ceste oevre acordee a faire. Et cil qui dist
council and have this work agreed to do And he who said
qu'il avoit pooir de la feme ne se targa plus et vint au
that-he had power of the woman not himself delayed more and came to-the
liu la ou elle estoit, si le tourna auques a sa volenté. Et
place there where she was so her turned somewhat to his will And
douna canques elle avoit entre lui et son signour a l'enemi.
gave whatever she had between her and her lord to the-enemy

Chele feme estoit feme a un riche homme, et cis
That woman was wife to a rich man and this
hom avoit moult grant plenté de biestes et d'autres grans
man had very great plenty of beasts and of-other great
riqueces. Et si avoit un fil et trois filles de cele feme
riches And so had a son and three daughters of that woman
ou dyables conversoit. Li dyables ne s'oublia mie, ains
where devil dwelt The devil not himself-forgot at-all rather
vint as chans ou les brebis au preudomme estoient,
came to-the fields where the sheep of-the worthy-man were
si en ochist une partie. Un autre jour vint a la feme, si
so thereof killed a part An other day came to the woman so
li demanda comment il porroit son signour engingnier. Et
to-her asked how he could her lord deceive And
elle li dist que il ne le porroit en nule maniere si bien
she to-him said that he not him could in any manner so well
engingnier comme par prendre de la soie chose et de lui
deceive as by taking of the his thing and of him
corechier: «Et il se courechera et esragera tous vis, se tu
angering And he himself will-anger and will-go-mad all alive if thou
prens les soies choses.» Lors s'en torna li anemis as
takest the his things Then himself-thence turned the enemy to-the
biestes au preudomme, si en ochist une grant partie. Et
beasts of-the worthy-man so thereof killed a great part And
quant li pastour virent les biestes lour signour ensi morir
when the shepherds saw the beasts (of-)their lord thus die
en mi les chans, si s'en esmiervillierent moult et
in mid the fields so themselves-thereat marveled much and
disent que il l'iroient dire a leur signour. Lors s'en
said that they it-would-go say to their lord Then themselves-thence
vindrent a lui et li disent que ses bestes se moroient
came to him and to-him said that his beasts themselves died

ensi en mi les chans. Quant li preudom l'oi, si s'en
thus in mid the fields When the worthy-man it-heard so himself-thereat
esmervilla moult et dist as pastours: «Es che voir que
marveled much and said to-the shepherds Is this true that
vous me dites?» Et il respondent: «Sire, oil.» Adont se
you me tell And they answer Lord yes Then himself
courecha li preudom moult et s'esmervilla que ses biestes
angered the worthy-man much and himself-marveled that his beasts
avoient a morir. Lors demanda as pastours: «Savés vous
had to die Then asked-he to-the shepherds Know you
que mes brebis ont a morir?» Et il dient que il ne sevent
what my sheep have to die And they say that they not know
que elles ont. Ensi remest a cel jour. Quant li dyables sot
what they have Thus remained at that day When the devil knew
que li preudom fu corechiés de si peu, se li fu avis
that the worthy-man was angered by so little so to-him was opinion
que se il li faisoit grant damage que il se corcheroit
that if he to-him did great damage that he himself would-anger
moult et il l'en averoit plus a sa volenté; si revint li
much and he him-thereof would-have more at his will so came-back the
anemis a ses bestes et a deus biaus chevaus, si les tua tous
enemy to his beasts and to two fair horses so them killed all
en une nuit. Et quant li preudom vit que la soie chose
in one night And when the worthy-man saw that the his thing
aloit ensi a mal, si fu moult courechiés et dist une parole
went thus to ill so was very angered and said a word
moult fole que sa grans ire li fist dire, que il donna
very mad that his great wrath him made say that he gave
canques il avoit au dyable et canques il li estoit remés.
whatever he had to-the devil and whatever it to-him was left

Quant li anemis sot que il ot cel don fait, si en fu
When the enemy knew that he had that gift made so thereof was
moult liés et li commencha a courre sus moult durement
very glad and him began to run upon very hard
por gringneur damage faire, si que il ne li laissa nule
for greater damage to-do so that he not to-him left any
de ses bestes. Si en fu li preudom moult courechiés et
of his beasts So thereof was the worthy-man very angered and
en la grant ire ou il fu fouit le compaignie des gens.
in the great wrath where he was fled the company of-the folk
Si sot bien li dyables quant il li vit che faire que il
So knew well the devil when he him saw this do that he
feroit sa volenté de lui. Lors vint li dyables a un moult
would-do his will of him Then came the devil to a very
biel fil que il avoit, si l'estrangla en son lit. Au matin fu
fair son that he had so him-strangled in his bed At-the morning was
li enfes trouvés mors. Et quant li preudom vit que il ot
the child found dead And when the worthy-man saw that he had
perdut son fil, se desespera et se meserra moult de sa
lost his son himself despaired and himself misbelieved much of his
creanche, et que il n'i pot plus recouvrer. Si en fu li
faith and that he not-there could more recover So thereof was the
dyables moult liés. Et lors ala a la feme au preudomme,
devil very glad And then went-he to the wife of-the worthy-man
par cui il avoit tout chou fait. Si la fist monter sour une
by whom he had all this done So her made mount upon a
huge en sen celier et metre une corde en son col, puis
chest in her cellar and put a cord on her neck then
descendi de la huge, si s'estrangla. Ensi fu trouvee toute
went-down from the chest so herself-strangled Thus was found all
morte, et quant li preudom vit qu'il ot pierdu sa feme et
dead and when the worthy-man saw that-he had lost his wife and

son fil en tel maniere, si s'en adola moult, et de che
his son in such manner so himself-thereof grieved much and from this
grant duel prist une maladie dont il morut. Ensi fait li
great grief took a sickness whereof he died Thus does the
dyables de chiaus que il puet traire a sa volenté. Quant li
devil with those whom he can draw to his will When the
dyables ot che fait, si en fu moult liés et pensa comment
devil had this done so thereof was very glad and thought how
il engingneroit les trois filles au preudomme qui estoient
he would-deceive the three daughters of-the worthy-man who were
remeses. Dyables sot que il ne les porroit engingnier s'il
remaining Devil knew that he not them could deceive if-he
ne faisoit lour volenté et che que elles vaurroient. Il avoit
not did their will and this that they would-wish He had
un baceler en la ville qui moult ouvroit a sa volenté, si le
a young-man in the town who much worked at his will so him
mena la ou les trois pucieles estoient, si en commencha
led there where the three maidens were so thereof began
l'une a proiier. Et tant ala par ses fais et par ses dis que
the-one to woo And so-much went by his deeds and by his sayings that
il l'engingna. Et quant il l'ot engingnie, si en fu moult
he her-deceived And when he her-had deceived so thereof was very
liés. Et dyables n'a cure de celee de che dont il est
glad And devil not-has care of concealment of this whereof he is
au deseure, ains veult que il voist en apert devant la gent
on-the above rather wishes that it may-go in open before the folk
pour plus tost honnir. Ensi fist dyables savoir au peuple che
for more soon to-shame Thus made devil know to-the people this
que il avoit fait par son pourcach et tant que li siecles le
that he had done by his contriving and so-much that the world it
sot. En che tans estoit coustume que feme qui estoit reprise
knew In that time was custom that woman who was caught

d'avoutire, si elle n'estoit commune a tous, que on en
in-adultery if she not-was common to all that one thereof
faisoit justiche. Et li dyables, qui porcache tous dis les siens
made justice And the devil who seeks all days the his
a hounir, fist a tous cel oevre savoir et as hommes de la
to shame made to all that work know and to-the men of the
ville qui estoient juge. Li vallès s'en fui et li feme
town who were judges The young-man himself-thence fled and the woman
fu prise et menee devant les juges. Quant li juge le virent
was taken and led before the judges When the judges her saw
par devant iaus, si en orent moult grant pitié pour l'amour
by before them so thereof had very great pity for the-love
au preudomme qui fille elle estoit, et disent: «Grant
of-the worthy-man whose daughter she was and said Great
merveille poés veoir de tel homme qui fille ele estoit,
marvel can-you see of such man whose daughter she was
comme il li est meskeu en poi de tans, qu'encor n'a
how it to-him is befallen-ill in little of time for-still not-has
gaires que il estoit uns des plus preudoumes de ceste ville.»
much that he was one of-the most worthy-men of this town
Li juge si se consellierent que il en porroient faire
The judges so themselves counseled what they thereof could do
et quel justiche il en prenderoient, si s'acorderent tout
and what justice they thereof would-take so themselves-agreed all
ensamble que il l'enterreront une nuit toute vive pour la
together that they her-will-bury one night all alive for the
honte de ses amis, et il ensi le fisent. Ensi fait li dyables
shame of her friends and they thus it did Thus does the devil
honte et dolour a chiaus qui font ses oevres. En la terre
shame and grief to those who do his works In the land
avoit un preudomme qui estoit bons confessours, et oi
there-was a worthy-man who was good confessor and heard

parler de ceste merveille; si vint as deus serours qui remeses
speak of this marvel so came to-the two sisters who left
estoient, l'aisnee et la maisnee, si les prist a conforter et
were the-elder and the younger so them took to comfort and
lour demanda comment ceste mesaventure lour est avenue
to-them asked how this misadventure to-them is befallen
de lour pere et de lour mere et de lor serour et de lour
of their father and of their mother and of their sister and of their
frere. Et elles respondent: «Sire, nous ne savons, fors tant
brother And they answer Lord we not know except so-much
que nous cuidons que Dieus nous het, si nous sueffre cest
that we think that God us hates so us suffers this
torment avoir.» Et li preudom respont: «Vous ne dites pas
torment to-have And the worthy-man answers You not say at-all
bien. Dieus ne het nului, ains li poise que li pechieres
well God not hates anyone rather to-him weighs that the sinner
se het. Et je sai bien qu'il vous est avenu par oevre dou
himself hates And I know well that-it to-you is befallen by work of-the
dyable. Et de vostre serour que vous avés perdue si vilment,
devil And of your sister whom you have lost so vilely
saviés vous que elle fesist ceste oevre?» Et elles respondent:
knew you that she did this work And they answer
«Sire, nous n'en saviens rien.» Et li preudom lour dist:
Lord we not-thereof knew anything And the worthy-man to-them said
«Gardés vous de mauvaises oevres, car li mauvaise oevre
Guard you from bad works for the bad work
mainne l'oume et le feme a le mauvaise fin.» Moult les
leads the-man and the woman to the bad end Much them
aprent bien li preudom et ensegne, se elles i vausissent
teaches well the worthy-man and instructs if they there had-wished
entendre. Et l'aisnee l'entendi moult bien et moult li plot
to-attend And the-elder him-heard very well and much to-her pleased

chou que il disoit. Et li preudom li aprent moult bien sa
this that he said And the worthy-man to-her teaches very well her
creanche, et ele i mist moult grant cure a savoir en faire
faith and she there put very great care to know in doing
et en dire et a escouter chou que il li ensaigne. Adont
and in saying and to listen this that he to-her teaches Then
dist li preudom: «Se vous creés bien chou que je vous dirai,
said the worthy-man If you believe well this that I you shall-say
grans biens vous en venra encore, et serés m'amie et
great goods to-you thereof will-come still and will-you-be my-friend and
ma fille en Dieu, ne vous n'avrés ja si grant besoing ne
my daughter in God nor you not-will-have ever so great need nor
si grant oevre a faire, se vous vous contenés a mon conseil,
so great work to do if you yourself keep to my counsel
que je ne vous aie a consillier a l'aide de nostre signour.
that I not you may-have to counsel with the-aid of our lord
Ne ne vous esmaiiés pas,» dist li preudom, «car nostre
Nor not you dismay at-all said the worthy-man for our
sires vous aidera, se vous vous tenés a lui; et si venés
lord you will-help if you yourself hold to him and so come
souvent a moi, car je ne ferai mie loing de chi estage.»
often to me for I not shall-make at-all far from here dwelling

Ensi ot li preudom consillié les deus pucieles et mises
Thus had the worthy-man counseled the two maidens and put
en boine voie. L'aisnee crut moult bien le preudomme et
in good way The-elder believed very well the worthy-man and
ama moult le boin conseil que il li disoit. Et quant li
loved much the good counsel that he to-her said And when the
dyables le sot, si l'em pesa moult, et ot paour que il
devil it knew so him-thereof weighed much and had fear that he
ne les perdist; si se pourpensa comment il les porroit
— them should-lose so himself bethought how he them could

engingnier. Illuecques près avoit une feme qui par maintes
deceive There near there-was a woman who by many-a
fois avoit eu sa volenté et fait ses oevres. Et cele feme prist
times had had his will and done his works And that woman took
li anemis et l'envoia la ou les deus pucieles estoient, si
the enemy and her-sent there where the two maidens were so
traist le maisnee a une part, que elle n'osoit traire l'aisnee
drew the younger to one side for she not-dared draw the-elder
pour chou que elle le vit maintenir si humblement. Puis
for this that she her saw conduct-herself so humbly Then
li demande de son estre et de son couvine et li
to-her asks of her state and of her condition and to-her
demande quel vie mainne sa suer. Et elle respont: «Elle
asks what life leads her sister And she answers She
m'a moult chiere et moult me moustre biel samblant.» Et
me-has very dear and much to-me shows fair semblance And
dist: «Ma suer est moult pensive de ces mesaventures qui
said My sister is very pensive of these misadventures which
nous sont avenues, que ele ne fait biele chiere ne a moi
to-us are befallen that she not makes fair face nor to me
ne a autrui. Et uns preudom qui toute jour parole a li
nor to another And a worthy-man who all day speaks to her
de Dieu si l'a convertie et tornee a sa guise que ele ne
of God so her-has converted and turned to his guise that she not
fait se che non que il veult.» Et cele feme li dist: «Biele
does if this not that he wishes And that woman to-her said Fair
suer, mar fu vostres gens cors nés, car jamais n'averés
sister ill was your gentle body born for ever not-will-you-have
joie tant comme il soit en la compaignie vostre serour.
joy so-long as it may-be in the company (of-)your sister
Hé! biele suer, se vous saviés quel delit ces autres femes
Ah fair sister if you knew what delight these other women

ont, vous ne priseriés riens canques vous avés. Nous avons
have you not would-prize anything whatever you have We have
tel joie quant nous sommes en la compaignie des gens
such joy when we are in the company of-the folk
que nous amons, que se nous n'aviemes que une pieche
whom we love that if we not-had but a piece
de pain, si sommes nous plus aise que vous n'estes, se
of bread so are we more at-ease than you are if
vous aviés canques il a en cest monde. Que vaut joie
you had whatever it there-has in this world What is-worth joy
de feme quant il n'i a joie d'omme? Biele amie,» fait
of woman when it not-there has joy of-man Fair friend says
ele, «je le di pour vous, que ja n'averés joie tant que
she I it say for you that ever not-will-you-have joy so-long as
vous serés avec vostre serour. Et si vous dirai por coi.
you will-be with your sister And so you shall-I-tell for what
Vostre suer est aisnee de vous, c'est pour chou que elle
Your sister is elder than you it-is for this that she
avera avant joie d'omme que vous n'aiiés, se elle puet. Car
will-have before joy of-man than you may-have if she can For
elle ne soufferra point que vous en aiiés devant li. Et
she not will-suffer at-all that you thereof may-have before her And
quant elle avera eut son delit, si ne li caurra de vous.
when she will-have had her delight so not to-her will-matter of you
Ensi arés pierdu la joie de vostre biel cors qui tant
Thus will-you-have lost the joy of your fair body which so
mar fu.» Et elle respont: «Comment oseroie je faire che
ill was And she answers How would-dare I do this
que vous me dites? car ma suer en fu morte vilainement
that you me say for my sister thereof was dead basely
et trop obscurement de faire tels oevres.» Et elle respont:
and too darkly from doing such works And she answers

«Vostre suer le fist trop vilainnement et trop folement, et
Your sister it did too basely and too madly and
mauvais conseil en prist. Mais se vous m'en creés, vous
bad counsel thereof took But if you me-thereof believe you
ne serés occoisonnee de chose que en faciés, et si arés
not will-be accused of thing that thereof you-may-do and so will-have
tout delit de vostre cors.» «Je ne sai,» fait ele, «comment le
all delight of your body I not know says she how it
puisse faire, ne je n'en oseroie parler pour ma serour.»
I-may do nor I not-thereof would-dare speak for my sister

The Devil and the Maiden

II

The younger sister gives herself to every man, and the elder goes in fear to her confessor, who teaches her the faith and bids her never sleep in the dark or in anger. Her wild sister comes home with a gang of lads and has her beaten. The elder lies down clothed in grief and anger, forgetting the sign of the cross, and the devil lies with her as she sleeps. She wakes, finds the door shut and no one there, and knows she has been deceived.

Quant li dyables oi chou, si en fu moult liés, et set
When the devil heard this so thereof was very glad and knows
bien que il l'avra a sa volenté, si en mena sa feme. Et
well that he her-will-have at his will so thence led his woman And
quant la feme en fu alee, la demoisiele pensa maintes fois
when the woman thence was gone the damsel thought many-a times
a chou que la feme li avoit dit. Quant li dyables entendi
of this that the woman to-her had said When the devil understood
que il le trouva si esmeue a sa volenté faire que elle
that he her found so moved to his will to-do that she

meismes en parloit a soi seul a seul, si l'escaufa tant
herself thereof spoke to herself alone to alone so her-heated so-much
comme il puet, et tant que ele regarda son biau cors
as he can and so-much that she looked-at her fair body
par nuit et dist que «voirement disoit voir la preude feme
by night and said that truly said true the worthy woman
qui me dist que j'ai perdue la joie de cest siecle,» tant
who me said that I-have lost the joy of this world so-much
que un jour avint que elle manda la feme et li dist:
that one day befell that she sent-for the woman and to-her said
«Certes, dame, vous me desistes voir de che que vous me
Certainly lady you me said true of this that you me
desistes l'autrier que il ne caloit ma serour de moi.» Et
said the-other-day that it not mattered (to-)my sister of me And
cele li dist: «Biele amie, je le disoie bien. Encore l'en
she to-her said Fair friend I it said well Still her-thereof
caurra mains, se ele avoit la soie joie. Ne nous ne fumes
will-matter less if she had the her joy Nor we not were
pour autre chose nees que pour avoir joie d'omme.» Et
for other thing born than for to-have joy of-man And
cele dist: «Je le vaurroie moult volentieres, se je ne cuidoie
she said I it would-wish very willingly if I not thought
c'om m'ochesist.» Et la feme respont: «On vous ochirra se
that-one me-would-kill And the woman answers One you will-kill if
vous le faites aussi folement que vostre suer fist. Mais je
you it do as madly as your sister did But I
vous ensegnerai moult bien comment vous le ferés.» Et la
you shall-teach very well how you it will-do And the
puciele respont: «Dame, dites le dont.» Et la feme li dit:
maiden answers Lady say it then And the woman to-her says
«Vous vous abandonnerés a tous hommes; et se vous en
You yourself will-abandon to all men and so you thence

fuiiés de chiés vo sereur, et dites que vous ne poés durer
flee from house-of your sister and say that you not can last
a li, et ensi ferés de vostre cors vostre volenté, ne ja
with her and thus will-do of your body your will nor ever
ne troverés justice qui en parolt. Ensi poés issir fors de
not will-find justice who thereof may-speak Thus can-you go out of
dangier, et quant vous averés mené ceste vie et tant qu'il
danger and when you will-have led this life and so-much as-it
vous plaira, adont sera uns preudom tous liés se il vous a,
you will-please then will-be a worthy-man all glad if he you has
pour vostre grant iretage. Et se vous le faites ensi que je
for your great heritage And if you it do thus as I
vous ai dit, si porrés avoir la joie de cest monde.» La
you have said so will-you-be-able have the joy of this world The
puciele otroie a la feme que elle le fera ensi comme elle
maiden grants to the woman that she it will-do thus as she
l'a dit. Ensi s'en fui la puciele en sus de sa serour
it-has said Thus herself-thence fled the maiden in up from her sister
et abandouna son cors as houmes par le conseil de cele
and abandoned her body to-the men by the counsel of that
feme. Et moult fu liés li dyables quant il ot engingnié
woman And very was glad the devil when he had deceived
l'autre serour. Et quant l'aisnee sot que sa suer en estoit
the-other sister And when the-elder knew that her sister thereof was
ensi alee, si s'en ala au preudomme moult esfraee.
thus gone so herself-thence went to-the worthy-man very frightened
Quant li preudom le vit si grand duel mener, si en ot
When the worthy-man her saw so great grief lead so thereof had
moult grant pitié et li dist: «Biele amie, sainne toi, et
very great pity and to-her said Fair friend cross thyself and
si te commande a Dieu. Car je te voi moult esfreee.» Et
so thee commend to God For I thee see very frightened And

cele respont: «Sire, je n'ai pas tort se je sui esfreee, car
she answers Lord I not-have at-all wrong if I am frightened for
j'ai ma serour perdue.» Et conta au preudomme comment
I-have my sister lost And told to-the worthy-man how
elle s'en estoit alee, tout chou que savoir en pot.
she herself-thence was gone all this that to-know thereof she-could
Et se li dist par verité que elle s'estoit abandonnee a
And so to-him said by truth that she herself-was abandoned to
tous houmes. Et quant li preudom oi ceste mierveille, si
all men And when the worthy-man heard this marvel so
en fu moult esfreés, et li dist: «Biele suer, dyables est
thereof was very frightened and to-her said Fair sister devil is
encore entour vous, ne il n'avra jamais pais devant chou
still around you nor he not-will-have ever peace before this
que il vous ara toutes engingnies, se Dieus ne vous
that he you will-have all deceived if God not you
gart.» Cele demande au preudomme: «Sire, pour Dieu,
may-guard She asks to-the worthy-man Lord for God
m'en porrai je garder? Ja n'est il riens au monde
me-thence shall-be-able I to-guard Ever not-is it anything in-the world
dont j'aie si grant paour que de chou que il m'engint.»
whereof I-may-have so great fear as of this that he me-may-deceive
Et li preudom respont: «Se tu crois chou que je te dirai,
And the worthy-man answers If thou believest this that I thee shall-say
il ne t'engingnera pas.» «Sire, je vous querrai de canques
he not thee-will-deceive at-all Lord I you shall-believe in whatever
vous me dites.» Chis li dist: «Dont crois tu le pere et
you me say He to-her said Then believest thou the father and
le fil et le saint esperit, et que ces trois viertus sont une
the son and the holy spirit and that these three virtues are one
meisme chose en Dieu, et que nostre sires vint en terre
same thing in God and that our lord came to earth

pour sauver les pecheours qui vaurroient croire baptesme
for to-save the sinners who would-wish to-believe baptism
et les autres commandemens de sainte eglyse et des autres
and the other commandments of holy church and of-the other
menistres que elle laissa en terre pour sauver chiaus qui
ministers whom she left on earth for to-save those who
querroient son nom et adrecier en boine voie?» Et elle
would-believe his name and to-direct in good way And she
dist: «Tout ensi comme vous le m'avés dit, ensi le croi
said All thus as you it me-have said thus it I-believe
et querrai tous les jours de ma vie. Et ensi comme il est
and shall-believe all the days of my life And thus as he is
sires et rois de tout le monde, tout ensi le croi jou. Et
lord and king of all the world all thus it believe I And
me gart si que dyables ne m'en puisse engingnier.»
me may-be-guard so that devil not me-thence can deceive
Et li preudom li dist: «Biele fille, se tu ensi le crois,
And the worthy-man to-her said Fair daughter if thou thus it believest
dyables ne anemis ne nule autre mauvaise chose ne t'en
devil nor enemy nor any other bad thing not thee-thence
porra engingnier. Je te pri que tu te gardes d'entrer
will-be-able deceive I thee pray that thou thyself guard from-entering
en trop grant ire. De verité je di que c'est la chose
into too great wrath Of truth I say that it-is the thing
ou monde ou dyables se repaire plus volentiers que en
in-the world where devil himself resorts more willingly than in
homme et en feme plainne de grant ire. Et pour icele
man and in woman full of great wrath And for that
chose te dois tu garder de tous mesfais et de tous
thing thyself oughtest thou guard from all misdeeds and from all
les encombriers qui t'averront. Et en toutes les ires ou
the troubles which to-thee-will-come And in all the wraths where

tu seras, ma douce amie chiere, si vien a moi et le me
thou wilt-be my sweet friend dear so come to me and it to-me
di tout ensi comme il t'averra. Et te rent coupable a
say all thus as it to-thee-will-befall And thyself render guilty to
nostre seigneur, et a toutes les fois que tu te couceras
our lord and at all the times that thou thyself wilt-lie-down
et leveras, si te sainne el non de la crois ou li cors
and wilt-rise so thyself cross in-the name of the cross where the body
Dieu fu mis pour pecheours et pour pecheresses raiembre
(of-)God was put for sinners and for sinful-women to-ransom
des painnes d'infer, el non dou pere et dou fil et dou
from-the pains of-hell in-the name of-the father and of-the son and of-the
saint esperit, que dyables ne anemis ne te puist engingnier.
holy spirit that devil nor enemy not thee may deceive
Se tu le fais ensi que je le t'ai commandé et dit, tu
If thou it doest thus as I it thee-have commanded and said thou
n'averas garde de l'anemi. Et garde bien que la ou tu
not-wilt-have fear of the-enemy And guard well that there where thou
gerras que il ait tout dis clarté, car li dyables het
wilt-lie that it may-have all days brightness for the devil hates
sour toutes riens nostre clarté, ne il ne va pas volentiers
above all things our brightness nor he not goes at-all willingly
la u clartés est.» Ensi aprent li preudom cheli, qui a
there where brightness is Thus teaches the worthy-man her who has
grant paour que li dyables ne l'engint.
great fear that the devil — her-may-deceive

Atant revint la puciele en maison, moult bien creans
Thereupon came-back the maiden into house very well believing
et moult bien humilians vers Dieu. Et li preudomme et
and very well humbling toward God And the worthy-men and
les preudefemes vinrent a li et se li disent par maintes
the worthy-women came to her and so to-her said by many-a

fois: «Damoisiele, vous devés estre effraee de vos sereurs
times Damsel you ought to-be frightened of your sisters
qui si ont esté de mauvaise vie. Ore prendés boin conseil
who so have been of bad life Now take good counsel
en vous et boin cuer. Car vous estes moult riche feme et
in you and good heart For you are very rich woman and
si avés moult grant iretage. Et moult en seroit liés uns
so have very great heritage And much thereof would-be glad a
preudom, se il savoit que vous vous tenissiés en bien, si
worthy-man if he knew that you yourself held in good so
vous prenderoit moult volentiers.» Et elle respont: «Nostre
you would-take very willingly And she answers Our
sires me tienge si qu'il set que mestiers m'est.» Ensi fu
lord me may-hold so as-he knows that need to-me-is Thus was
cele damoisiele lonc tans en pais et mena moult bonne vie.
that damsel long time in peace and led very good life
Onques nus ne le pot engingnier, ne ne sot li anemis
Ever anyone not her could deceive nor not knew the enemy
nule mauvaise oevre qu'ele fesist. Si l'em pesa moult,
any bad work that-she did So him-thereof weighed much
et bien sot que il ne le porroit engingnier, ne ne puet
and well knew that he not her could deceive nor not can
veoir comment il le puist metre en ses oevres, tant que
see how he her could put into his works so-much that
il se pourpensa que il ne le porroit engingnier de li
he himself bethought that he not her could deceive by her
faire oublier chou que li preudom li ot dit, se il ne
making forget this that the worthy-man to-her had said if he not
le courechoit. Car elle n'avoit cure de ses oevres, ne faire
her angered For she not-had care of his works nor to-do
ne li pooit abielir. Lors prist li dyables l'autre serour, si
not to-her could please Then took the devil the-other sister so

l'en mena un samedi au soir en sa maison pour li
her-thence led one Saturday at-the evening into her house for her
courechier et pour veoir se il le porroit engingnier. Quant
to-anger and for to-see if he her could deceive When
la suer a la boine damoisiele vint a l'ostel son pere, si
the sister of the good damsel came to the-lodging (of-)her father so
estoit une grant piece de la nuit alee, et amena un tropel
was a great piece of the night gone and brought a troop
de garchons avoec li. Et vinrrent tout dedens l'ostel. Et
of lads with her And came all within the-lodging And
quant sa suer le vit, si en fu moult iree et dist: «Biele
when her sister her saw so thereof was very angry and said Fair
suer, vous ne deussiés mie estre chaiens venue tant que vous
sister you not ought at-all to-be in-here come so-long as you
voelliés tele vie mener, car vous me feriés avoir blasme,
wish such life to-lead for you me would-make have blame
chou dont je n'averoie mestier.» Quant sa suer li oi
this whereof I not-would-have need When her sister to-her heard
chou dire, si en fu moult irie por chou que ele disoit
this say so thereof was very angry for this that she said
que elle en aroit blasme, se li dist que elle faisoit
that she thereof would-have blame so to-her said that she did
pis que elle ne fesist, et li mist sus que elle amoit le
worse than she — did and to-her put upon that she loved the
boin homme en mauvaistié, et, se les gens le savoient, elle
good man in wickedness and if the folk it knew she
seroit arse. Quant cele oi que sa suers li metoit sus
would-be burned When she heard that her sister to-her put upon
tel blasme, si s'en courecha moult et dist que elle
such blame so herself-thereof angered much and said that she
alast fors de sa maison. Et elle respont: «Autressi fu ele
should-go out of her house And she answers Likewise was it

a mon pere comme le vostre.» Et quant cele oi que sa
to my father as the yours And when she heard that her
suer ne s'en iroit pas, si le prist par les espaules et
sister not herself-thence would-go at-all so her took by the shoulders and
le vaut bouter fors; cele se revenga, et li garchon qui
her wished to-push out she herself avenged and the lads who
estoient venu avoec li prisent sa serour et le batirent moult
were come with her took her sister and her beat very
doleuresement, tant que ele lor prist a eschaper. Quant
grievously until that she from-them took to escape When
il l'orent tant batue comme il vaurrent, elle s'en
they her-had so-much beaten as they wished she herself-thence
entra en sa chambre et frema l'uis. Et elle n'avoit fors
entered into her chamber and shut the-door And she not-had except
son vallet et sa baisiele, pour qui il le laissierent a batre.
her servant and her maid for whom they her left to beat
Cele fu en sa chambre toute seule et se coucha en son
She was in her chamber all alone and herself lay-down in her
lit toute viestue, et commencha a plourer moult durement,
bed all clothed and began to weep very hard
et si ot moult grant ire en son cuer de che que sa suer
and so had very great wrath in her heart from this that her sister
l'avoit ensi atornee, et en icele dolour s'endormi. Et quant
her-had thus handled and in that grief herself-fell-asleep And when
li dyables sot que ele avoit tout oublié por le grant ire
the devil knew that she had all forgotten for the great wrath
ou elle estoit chou que li preudom li avoit commandé,
where she was this that the worthy-man to-her had commanded
si en fu moult liés et dist: «Or puis je bien faire de
so thereof was very glad and said Now can I well do with
cesti che que je vaurrai. Ceste est fors mise de la grasce
this-one this that I shall-wish This-one is out put from the grace

de son signour et de la grasce son maistre. Et bien
of her lord and from the grace (of-)her master And well
porroit on metre en li nostre homme.» Icil dyables qui avoit
could one put in her our man That devil who had
pooir de converser a feme lors en fu tous apparilliés
power of consorting with woman then thereof was all prepared
et vint u elle estoit a li, et conchut. Et quant elle
and came where she was to her and she-conceived And when she
ot conchut, si s'esvella. Et en esveillier que elle fist, si
had conceived so herself-awoke And in waking that she did so
li souvint dou preudoume qui le consilloit, et s'esveilla
to-her remembered of-the worthy-man who her counseled and herself-awoke
et se sainna. Et quant elle ot faict le signe de la crois
and herself crossed And when she had made the sign of the cross
si dist: «Dame sainte Marie, que m'est il avenu? Je sui
so said Lady holy Mary what to-me-is it befallen I am
empirie de tele comme je soloie estre quant je couchai en
worsened from such as I was-wont to-be when I lay-down in
che lit. Biele glorieuse mere Jesucrist, garde l'ame de moi
this bed Fair glorious mother (of-)Jesus-Christ guard the-soul of me
de peril. Et gardés le cors et defendés del torment a
from peril And guard the body and defend from-the torment of
l'anemi.» Lors se leva de son lit, et commencha a querre
the-enemy Then herself raised from her bed and began to seek
chelui qui che li avoit fait, car elle le cuidoit trouver.
him who this to-her had done for she him thought to-find
Puis quert a l'uis de sa chambre, si le trueve fremé.
Then runs to the-door of her chamber so it finds shut
Et quant elle le trueve bien fremé, si rechierke derechief la
And when she it finds well shut so searches again the
chambre. Mais elle ne trova riens. Et quant elle vi chou, si
chamber But she not found anything And when she saw this so

se trouva toute engingnie de l'anemi. Lors se commencha
herself found all deceived by the-enemy Then herself began
a dementer et a reclamer nostre signeur, et dist: «Biaus
to lament and to call-upon our lord and said Fair
sire Dieus, par vostre pitié, sire, se il vous vient a plaisir, ne
lord God by your pity lord if it to-you comes to pleasure not
me laissiés honnir en cest siecle, ne que je fache chose de
me let shame in this world nor that I may-do thing of
pechié dont je perde m'ame.» La nuis passa et li jours vint.
sin whereby I may-lose my-soul The night passed and the day came
Et si tost comme il fu ajorné, dyables en mena sa feme,
And so soon as it was dawned devil thence led his woman
quant elle li ot bien fait che par coi elle i fu amenee.
when she to-him had well done this by which she there was brought
Quant elle s'en fu alee et li garchon, cele issi de
When she herself-thence was gone and the lads she went-out from
sa chambre moult iree plorant, si apiela son serjant et li
her chamber very angry weeping so called her servant and to-him
dist que il li amenast deus femes, et il si fist tantost.
said that he to-her should-bring two women and he so did at-once

The Birth of Merlin

III

The maiden confesses all to her confessor, who doubts her and sets her a penance. When her pregnancy shows, he writes down the night and the hour, and the judges, on his advice, shut her in a tower with two women until the child is born and weaned. He is born hairy, with the devil's knowledge of what is done and said, but God gives him knowledge of what is to come, and his mother names him Merlin, after her father.

Chi endroit dist li contes que quant les femes furent
Here in-place says the tale that when the women were
venues, la damoisiele se mist a la voie pour aler a sen
come the damsel herself put to the way for to-go to her
confessour. Si erra tant que elle vint la. Et quant li
confessor So journeyed so-much that she came there And when the
preudom le vit, se li dist: «Biele fille, tu as besoing,
worthy-man her saw so to-her said Fair daughter thou hast need
che m'est avis, car je te voi moult effreee et espoentee.»
this to-me-is opinion for I thee see very frightened and terrified
Et elle respont: «Sire, che m'est avenu que onques mais
And she answers Lord this to-me-is befallen which ever more
n'avint a feme. Si vieng a vous que vous me consilliés pour
not-befell to woman So I-come to you that you me may-counsel for
Dieu. Car vous m'avés dit que nus ne puet si grant pechié
God For you to-me-have said that anyone not can so great sin
faire, se il en est vrais confès et repentans, et il en a
do if he thereof is true confessed and repenting and he thereof has
fait chou que li confessours li ensegne, que il li sera
done this that the confessor to-him teaches that it to-him will-be
pardouné. Sire, j'ai pechié, et bien sachiés que j'ai esté
pardoned Lord I-have sinned and well know that I-have been

engigne par anemi.» Lors li commenche a dire comment
deceived by enemy Then to-him begins to tell how
sa suer vint en sa maison et comment elle se courecha a
her sister came into her house and how she herself angered at
li et elle et li garchon le batirent, et comment elle entra
her and she and the lads her beat and how she entered
en sa chambre toute iree et frema l'uis moult bien. «Et
into her chamber all angry and shut the-door very well And
pour le grant ire ou j'estoie je m'oubliai a segnier. Sire,
for the great wrath where I-was I myself-forgot to cross-myself Lord
ensi oubliai tous les commandemens que vous m'aviés dit, si
thus forgot-I all the commandments that you to-me-had said so
me couchai en mon lit toute viestue. Et en la grant ire
myself lay-down in my bed all clothed And in the great wrath
ou j'estoie m'endormi. Et quant je m'esvillai, si me trovai
where I-was myself-fell-asleep And when I myself-awoke so myself found
honnie et despucelee, si recerquai ma chambre derechief,
shamed and deflowered so searched my chamber again
et alai a l'uis, si le trouvai fremé, ne onques n'i trovai
and went to the-door so it found shut nor ever not-there found
riens nee, ne ne vi ne seuch qui m'ot chou fait. Sire,
anything born nor not saw nor knew who to-me-had this done Lord
ensi comme vous avés oit m'avint il et fui engingnie. Si
thus as you have heard to-me-befell it and was deceived So
vous pri pour Dieu que se li cors est tormentés que je
you I-pray for God that if the body is tormented that I
ne perde l'ame.» Li preudom a bien escouté, si s'en
not may-lose the-soul The worthy-man has well listened so himself-thereat
esmiervelle moult. Car il n'oi onques mais parler de tel
marvels much For he not-heard ever more speak of such
merveille. Si li dist: «Biele amie, toute plainne estes dou
marvel So to-her said Fair friend all full are-you of-the

diable, et dyables converse encore en toi. Comment te
devil and devil dwells still in thee How thee
confesserai ne je te donrai penitanche de che? que je cuic
shall-I-confess nor I thee shall-give penance for this for I think
vraiement que tu mentes, que onques feme ne fu ensement
truly that thou liest for ever woman not was thus
despucelee ne en tel maniere que elle ne seust de qui,
deflowered nor in such manner that she not knew by whom
ne au mains que elle ne veist chelui qui la despucheloit.
nor at-the least that she not saw him who her deflowered
Et tu me veuls faire a croire que ceste mierveille t'est
And thou me wishest make to believe that this marvel to-thee-is
avenue en ton dormant!» Cele li respont: «Si me fache
befallen in thy sleeping She to-him answers So me may-make
Dieus sauve et me gart de tous tormens que je voir di.
God saved and me guard from all torments as I true say
Et vous le troverés bien.» Et il respont: «Tu as fait trop
And you it will-find well And he answers Thou hast done too
grant pechié que de obedienche trespasser que je t'avoie
great sin as of obedience to-transgress which I to-thee-had
commandee. Et par che que tu l'as trespassee t'en
commanded And by this that thou it-hast transgressed thee-thereof
carcherai je bien penitanche a tous les jours mais que tu
shall-charge I well penance at all the days more that thou
viveras, se tu le veuls faire tele que je le te carcherai.»
wilt-live if thou it wishest to-do such as I it thee shall-charge

Atant respont la damoisele: «Sire, vous ne me
Thereupon answers the damsel Lord you not me
commanderés ja chose a faire que je ne le fache.» Et il
will-command ever thing to do that I not it may-do And he
respont: «Dieu le t'otroit. Dis me tu que tu viens au
answers God it thee-may-grant Tellest me thou that thou comest to-the

conseil Dieu et as menistres de sainte eglyse? Chou est
counsel (of-)God and to-the ministers of holy church This is
vraie confiessions et repentemens de faire et de dire a ton
true confession and repentance of doing and of saying to thy
pooir selonc les commendemens de Dieu.» Et cele respont:
power according-to the commandments of God And she answers
«Sire, tout aussi comme vous l'avés dit le terrai jou a mon
Lord all likewise as you it-have said it shall-hold I to my
pooir, se Dieu plaist.» Cil respont: «Je croi bien en Dieu, se
power if God please He answers I believe well in God if
che puet estre voirs que tu m'as dit, que tu n'i averas
this can be true that thou me-hast said that thou not-there wilt-have
garde.» «Sire,» dist elle, «aussi me gart Dieus de vilonnie
fear Lord said she so me may-guard God from villainy
que je di voir.» Et li preudom dist: «Tu m'as acreanté
as I say true And the worthy-man said Thou me-hast promised
a bien tenir la penitanche et a guerpir le pechié.» Et ele
to well hold the penance and to abandon the sin And she
respont: «Sire, voire.» Et il dist: «Dont as tu guerpie toute
answers Lord truly And he said Then hast thou abandoned all
luxure. Et je le te desfenc tous les jours que tu averas a
lust And I it thee forbid all the days that thou wilt-have to
vivre, fors celi qui vient en dormant, dont on ne se puet
live except that which comes in sleeping whereof one not himself can
garder. Veuls tu le bien et t'en porras tu garder?»
guard Wishest thou it well and thee-thence wilt-be-able thou to-guard
Et elle respont: «Sire, oil bien, se vous estes pleges envers
And she answers Lord yes well if you are pledges toward
Dieu que je n'iere par che pechié dampnee, si comme il
God that I not-shall-be by this sin damned so as he
vous establi en terre par son commandement.» Chele prent
you established on earth by his commandment She takes

sa penitanche moult volentiers, tele comme li preudom li
her penance very willingly such as the worthy-man to-her
carca, em plourant, comme celle qui moult se repentoit de
charged in weeping as she who much herself repented from
boin cuer. Et li preudom le sainne et assaut, et le met
good heart And the worthy-man her crosses and absolves and her puts
arriere en la creanche Jesucrist au plus que il puet. Et
back in the faith (of-)Jesus-Christ at-the most that he can And
se porpense comment che porroit estre voirs chou que elle
himself bethinks how this could be true this that she
li avoit dit. Quant il ot che pensé, si sot bien que elle
to-him had said When he had this thought so knew well that she
estoit engingnie de l'anemi, si l'apiele et li fist boire de
was deceived by the-enemy so her-calls and her made drink of
l'iaue el non dou pere et dou fil et dou saint esperit, si
the-water in-the name of-the father and of-the son and of-the holy spirit so
l'en jeta seur li et li dist: «Garde que tu n'oublies mie
it-thereof threw upon her and to-her said Guard that thou not-forget at-all
les commandemens que je t'ai commandé. Et par toutes
the commandments that I thee-have commanded And by all
les fies que tu avras de moi besoing, si vien a moi et
the times that thou wilt-have of me need so come to me and
puis te sainne et te commande tout maintenant a Dieu,
then thyself cross and thyself commend all at-once to God
et je te mech en penitanche tous les biens que tu feras.»
and I thee put in penance all the goods that thou wilt-do

Ensi s'en va la damoisiele en sa maison, et mena
Thus herself-thence goes the damsel into her house and led
moult boine vie. Et quant dyables vit que il l'ot perdue
very good life And when devil saw that he her-had lost
et que il ne savoit que elle faisoit ne que elle disoit aussi
and that he not knew what she did nor what she said also

que se elle n'eust onques esté, si en fu moult iriés quant
as if she not-had ever been so thereof was very angered when
il l'ot ensi perdue. Ensi remest la damoisiele en sa maison,
he her-had thus lost Thus remained the damsel in her house
et mena moult boine vie, tant que cele semence que elle
and led very good life until that that seed which she
avoit ou cors ne se pot plus celer, si engroissa et enbarni,
had in-the body not itself could more conceal so grew-big and swelled
tant que les autres femes s'em parcheurent. Et le
until that the other women themselves-thereof perceived And her
regarderent parmi les flans et li disent: «Biele suer, vous
looked-at through the flanks and to-her said Fair sister you
estes toute grosse.» Et elle respont: «Biele suer, vous dites
are all big And she answers Fair sister you say
voir.» «Dieus!» font elles, «qui es che qui vous a engroissie?»
true God say they who is it who you has made-big
Et elle lor dist: «Se Dieus me doinst delivrer a joie,
And she to-them said So God me may-give to-be-delivered with joy
je ne sai.» Et elles dient: «Le vous ont tant d'ommes fait
I not know And they say It you have so-many of-men done
que vous ne savés assener au quel?» Et elle dist: «Ja
that you not know-how to-point to-the which And she said Ever
Dieu ne place que je en soie delivree se onques a mon
God not may-please that I thereof may-be delivered if ever to my
seuu ne a ma veue i ot onques nus hom a faire en tel
knowing nor to my sight there had ever any man to do in such
maniere que che me deust avenir.» Et celes qui chou orent
manner that this to-me ought to-happen And those who this had
oi se sainnierent, et disent: «Che ne porroit estre,
heard themselves crossed and said This not could be
ne che n'avint onques a vous ne a autrui. Mais vous amés,
nor this not-befell ever to you nor to another But you love

espoir, coiement chelui qui che a fait, que vous ne volés
perhaps quietly him who this has done whom you not wish
mie encuser. Mais certes grans damage ert de vous, que
at-all to-accuse But certainly great damage will-be of you for
tantost que li juge le savront, si tost vous converra morir.»
as-soon as the judges it will-know so soon you will-behoove to-die
Quant elle oi que a morir le converroit, si en fu moult
When she heard that to die her would-behoove so thereof was very
espoentee, et dist: «Aussi face Dieus l'ame de moi sauve
terrified and said So may-make God the-soul of me saved
que je ne vi onques celui ne ne connui qui che m'a fait.»
as I not saw ever him nor not knew who this to-me-has done
Atant s'en vont les femes, et le tienent pour
Thereupon themselves-thence go the women and her hold for
fole, et dient que mar i fu si biaus iretages et si biaus
mad and say that ill there was so fair heritage and so fair
edefiemens, que elle avoit tout perdu. Quant cele oi ceste
building that she had all lost When she heard this
parole, si en fu moult espoentee et vint a son confessour
word so thereof was very terrified and came to her confessor
arriere et conta la parole que les femes li disoient. Et
back and told the word that the women to-her said And
li preudom vit que ele estoit grosse de vif enfant, si
the worthy-man saw that she was big with living child so
s'en esmiervilla moult et li demanda se elle avoit
himself-thereat marveled much and to-her asked if she had
bien fait sa penitance que il li avoit carchie. Cele respont:
well done her penance that he to-her had charged She answers
«Oie.» «Et avint vous onques chis pechiés que une fois?»
Yes And befell to-you ever this sin but one time
Et elle respont: «Certes, sire, nenil. Onques puis ne m'avint
And she answers Certainly lord no Ever after not to-me-befell

ne devant.» Quant li preudom l'oi, si s'en esmiervilla
nor before When the worthy-man it-heard so himself-thereat marveled
moult, et puis mist la nuit et l'eure en escrit si comme
much and then put the night and the-hour in writing so as
elle li ot conté, et dist: «Toute seure soiiés. Quant chis
she to-him had told and said All sure be When this
oirs qui dedens toi est naistera, je savrai bien se tu m'as
heir who within thee is will-be-born I shall-know well if thou me-hast
voir dit u menti. Et j'ai bien creanche en Dieu que, se
true said or lied And I-have well faith in God that if
che est voirs ensi que tu le m'as dit, que tu n'averas
this is true thus as thou it me-hast said that thou not-wilt-have
ja garde de mort. Les granz paours en porras tu bien
ever fear of death The great fears thereof wilt-be-able thou well
avoir. Quant li juge le savront, il te prendront pour avoir
to-have When the judges it will-know they thee will-take for to-have
tes biaus edefis, et diront que il feront de toi justiche.
thy fair buildings and will-say that they will-do of thee justice
Et quant il t'avront prise, si le me fai a savoir, et
And when they thee-will-have taken so it to-me make to know and
je t'irai consillier se je puis, et Dieus t'aidera se tu
I thee-shall-go counsel if I can and God thee-will-help if thou
es tele comme tu dis; il ne t'oubliera mie.» Atant li
art such as thou sayest he not thee-will-forget at-all Thereupon to-her
dist li preudom: «Va t'ent a ton hostel et soies toute
said the worthy-man Go thee-thence to thy lodging and be all
seure et mainne boine vie, que boine vie aiue bonne fin
sure and lead good life for good life helps good end
a avoir.» Ensi revint la nuit la damoisiele a son hostel
to have Thus came-back the night the damsel to her lodging
et s'estut em pais et moult se tint simplement, et
and herself-stayed in peace and much herself held simply and

tant que il avint chose que li juge vinrent en la terre et
until that it befell thing that the judges came into the land and
oirent ceste nouviele de cele dame qui ensi avoit concheut,
heard this news of that lady who thus had conceived
si l'envoiierent querre a son hostel pour amener devant
so her-sent to-seek at her lodging for to-bring before
iaus. Et quant elle fu prise, si envoia querre le preudomme
them And when she was taken so sent to-seek the worthy-man
qui ensi l'avoit consillie. Et quant il le sot, si vint au
who thus her-had counseled And when he it knew so came at-the
plus tost qu'il pot. Et quant il fu venus, si l'apielerent
most soon that-he could And when he was come so him-called
li juge, si trouva que il l'avoient fait venir devant iaus.
the judges so found that they her-had made come before them
Et li juge moustrerent la parole a la damoisiele et au
And the judges showed the word to the damsel and to-the
preudomme et disent que elle ne set de qui ele est
worthy-man and said that she not knows by whom she is
grosse. «Sire, cuidiés vous que feme peust encarchier sans
big Lord think you that woman could conceive without
homme?» Et li preudom respont: «Je ne vous dirai pas
man And the worthy-man answers I not you shall-say at-all
canques je sai. Mais tant vous puis je bien dire, se vous
whatever I know But so-much you can I well say if you
volés mon conseil croire, que vous ne ferés justice de li
wish my counsel to-believe that you not will-do justice of her
tant que elle soit grosse, car il n'est mie raisons ne drois,
so-long as she may-be big for it not-is at-all reason nor right
ne li enfes n'a mort deservie, comme chis qui onques
nor the child not-has death deserved as he who ever
pechiet ne fist ne ne deservi, ne el pechié de la mere
sin not did nor not deserved nor in-the sin of the mother

n'a il riens fourfait. Se vous en faisiés justiche, dont
not-has he anything forfeited If you thereof did justice then
porroiés vous savoir et dire que vous avriés chelui ochis
could you know and say that you would-have him killed
qui pechié n'avroit fait.» Et li juge dient: «Sire, nous
who sin not-would-have done And the judges say Lord we
en ferons a vostre los.» Et li preudom dist: «Se vous
thereof shall-do at your advice And the worthy-man said If you
en faites a mon los, vous le ferés bien garder en une
thereof do at my advice you her will-make well guard in a
tour, si que elle ne puist faire nule folie. Et metés deus
tower so that she not can do any folly And put two
femes avoec qui li aideront a delivrer, quant mestier en
women with-her who her will-help to deliver when need thereof
sera, et en tele maniere que elles ne s'en puissent
will-be and in such manner that they not themselves-thence can
issir. Et le ferés bien garder tant que elle ait enfant.
go-out And her will-make well guard until that she may-have child
Et tant par mon los li lairés norrir que il puist
And so-much by my advice to-her will-you-let nurse that he can
mangier par soi et demander tous ses estavoirs. Et lors,
eat by himself and ask all his necessities And then
se vous ne veés autre chose, si en faites vostre volenté
if you not see other thing so thereof do your will
et vostre plaisir. Et lor donnés chou que mestier lour
and your pleasure And to-them give this that need to-them
sera. Et tout chou ferés par mon conseil, et se vous
will-be And all this will-do by my counsel and if you
le volés autrement faire, je n'en puis mais.» Et li juge
it wish otherwise to-do I not-thereof can more And the judges
respondent: «Il nous est bien avis que vous dites raison.»
answer It to-us is well opinion that you say reason

Tout ensi comme li preudom l'ot devisé il le fisent, et
All thus as the worthy-man it-had devised they it did and
le misent en une maison de pierre, et fisent tous les huis
her put in a house of stone and made all the doors
d'ambes pars fremer. Et misent deus des plus preudefemes
on-both sides shut And put two of-the most worthy-women
que il porent trouver avoec li. Et en haut laissierent une
that they could find with her And on high left a
fenestre pour iaus livrer chou que mestiers leur seroit.
window for them to-deliver this that need to-them would-be
Et quant li preudom ot che fait, se parla a li de sa
And when the worthy-man had this done so spoke to her from her
fenestre et dist: «Quant tu averas eut enfant, si le fai
window and said When thou wilt-have had child so it make
baptisier au plus tost que tu porras. Et quant tu seras
baptize at-the most soon that thou wilt-be-able And when thou wilt-be
mise fors et on te vaurra ardoir, si m'envoie querre.»
put out and one thee will-wish burn so me-send to-seek

Ensi remest cele une grant pieche en la tour, et li
Thus remained she a great while in the tower and the
juge orent bien atorné tout chou dont elles orent mestier,
judges had well arranged all this whereof they had need
si l'ont delivré as femes qui avoec li estoient. En tel
so it-have delivered to-the women who with her were In such
maniere comme vous l'avés oi remesent laiens, et ot
manner as you it-have heard remained in-there and had
enfant quant Damedieu plot. Et quant il fu nés, si ot
child when Lord-God pleased And when he was born so had
et deut avoir le sens et le pooir de l'anemi, comme
and ought to-have the sense and the power of the-enemy as
chieus qui concheus en estoit. Mais li anemis l'avoit fait
he who conceived thereof was But the enemy it-had done

folement, car nostre sires avoit rachaté de sa mort et avoit
madly for our lord had ransomed with his death and had
pardoné le pechié por vraie repentanche, et li anemis avoit
pardoned the sin for true repentance and the enemy had
cheli engingnie par dechevement. Car cele, si tost que ele
her deceived by deception For she so soon as she
se senti engingnie, si cria mierchi la ou elle dut, et
herself felt deceived so cried mercy there where she ought and
quant elle ot che fait, si se mist en la garde et ou
when she had this done so herself put in the keeping and in-the
commendement de sainte eglyse et de Dieu, et bien fist
commandment of holy church and of God and well did
les commandemens que ses confessours li ot commandé.
the commandments that her confessor to-her had commanded
Et pour chou ne vaut pas Dieus que dyables i perdist
And for this not wished at-all God that devil there should-lose
chou que il i deust avoir et che pour coi il le fist,
this that he there ought to-have and this for which he it did
pour chou que dyables si vaut que il eust son art
for this that devil so wished that he should-have his art
et son pooir de savoir les choses qui estoient dites et
and his power of knowing the things which were said and
faites et alees, et tout ichou seut il. Et nostre sires qui
done and gone and all this knew he And our lord who
tout set, par la repentance de la mere et par la boine
all knows by the repentance of the mother and by the good
repentance de confiession que il sot qui en son cuer estoit,
repentance of confession which he knew that in her heart was
ne par son gré ne par sa volenté ne li estoit avenu, et
nor by her consent nor by her will not to-her was befallen and
par la force de baptesme dont ele estoit lavee es fons,
by the force of baptism wherewith she was washed in-the font

vaut nostre sires que li pechiés ne li peust riens nuire,
wished our lord that the sin not to-him could anything harm
si donna a l'enfant pooir de savoir les choses a avenir. Par
so gave to the-child power of knowing the things to come By
ceste raison sot cil les choses qui estoient dites et faites
this reason knew he the things which were said and done
et alees de par l'anemi, et le seurplus que il sot des
and gone from by the-enemy and the surplus that he knew of-the
choses a venir vaut nostre sires que il seust contre les
things to come wished our lord that he should-know against the
autres choses que il savoit pour endroit de la soie partie.
other things that he knew for in-respect of the his part
Ore si se tourt a la quele que il vaurra; et se il veult
Now so himself may-turn to the which that he will-wish and if he wishes
il puet rendre au dyable son droit et a nostre signour
he can render to-the devil his right and to our lord
le sien. Car plus n'i a dyables formé fors le cors, et
the his For more not-there has devil formed except the body and
nostre sires met ens l'esperit por veoir et pour oir et
our lord puts in the-spirit for to-see and for to-hear and
pour entendre a chascun selonc chou que il li preste
for to-understand to each according-to this that he to-him lends
sens et memoire et que il li plaist a douner, et il a
sense and memory and that it him pleases to give and he to
cestui en a plus douné que a autrui por chou que grans
this-one thereof has more given than to another for this that great
mestiers li estoit. Lors verra on bien au quel il se
need to-him was Then will-see one well to-the which he himself
devera tenir. Et quant les femes le virent et le rechiurent
ought to-hold And when the women him saw and him received
de terre, si n'en i ot cheli qui n'en eust grant
from earth so not-thereof there had she who not-thereof had great

paour, pour chou que elles le virent tout pelu et plus
fear for this that they him saw all hairy and more
grant poil avoir que eles n'avoient veut as autres enfans,
great hair have than they had seen on-the other children
si le moustrerent a la mere. Et quant la mere le vit, si
so him showed to the mother And when the mother him saw so
s'en sainna et dist: «Cis enfes me fait grant paour.»
herself-thereof crossed and said This child me makes great fear
Et les autres femes dient: «Si fait il a nous meismes,
And the other women say So does he to us ourselves
que a painnes le poons nous tenir.» Et la mere dist:
that with pains him can we hold And the mother said
«Avalés le et commandés que il soit baptisiés.» Et il li
Let-down him and command that he be baptized And they to-her
demandent: «Comment volés vous qu'il ait non?» Et elle
ask How wish you that-he may-have name And she
dist: «Ensi que mes peres ot non, qui ot non Merlins.»
said Thus as my father had name who had name Merlin

The Mother's Trial

IV

At eighteen months the child speaks and tells his weeping mother that she will not die for him. At the trial he answers the judge that he knows his own father better than the judge knows his, and in private makes the judge's mother confess that the judge is her priest's son. Merlin tells the judge his father was an incubus and foretells that the priest will drown himself, and the judge acquits Merlin's mother.

Apriès chou que Merlins fu baptisiés, il fu carchiés a la
After this that Merlin was baptized he was entrusted to the
mere pour norrir. Et elle tant le norri et alaita qu'il ot
mother for to-nurse And she so-much him nursed and suckled that-he had
nuef mois. Et quant il les ot, si sambla que il eust un an.
nine months And when he them had so seemed that he had a year
Une pieche apriès revint que li enfes fu en l'eage de dis
A while after came-again that the child was in the-age of ten
et uit mois et que les femes disent a la dame: «Dame,
and eight months and that the women said to the lady Lady
nous vaurrions estre hors de chaiens et vaurrions raler
we would-wish to-be out of in-here and would-wish to-go-back
entre nos amis. Car il nous est avis que nous avrons
among our friends For it to-us is opinion that we shall-have
chaiens moult demouré, que chaiens ne poons pas tous jours
in-here much stayed for in-here not can at-all all days
estre.» Et elle respont: «Certes, je n'en puis mais.» Lors
be And she answers Certainly I not-thereof can more Then
commencha a plorer et priier pour Dieu merchi que eles
began to weep and to-pray for God mercy that they
sueffrent encore un poi. Cele s'en va a une feniestre
may-suffer still a little She herself-thence goes to a window

et tint son enfant entre ses bras et commencha moult
and held her child between her arms and began very
durement a plourer. Et dist: «Biaus fius, je rechevrai pour
hard to weep And said Fair son I shall-receive for
toi mort et si ne l'ai pas deservie. Car il n'est nus qui
thee death and so not it-have at-all deserved For it not-is anyone who
sache la verité de qui vous fustes engenrés, ne ne puis
may-know the truth by whom you were begotten nor not can
estre creue de chose que je die. Ensi me couverra morir.»
be believed of thing that I may-say Thus me will-behoove to-die
Ensi comme elle se dolousoit pour la mort et pour le
Thus as she herself grieved for the death and for the
torment que elle atendoit a avoir, li enfes regarda sa mere
torment that she awaited to have the child looked-at his mother
et dist: «Biele mere, ne t'esmaie mie; tu ne morras ja
and said Fair mother not thyself-dismay at-all thou not wilt-die ever
de chose qui te soit avenue pour moi.» Quant sa mere
of thing which to-thee may-be befallen for me When his mother
l'oi ensi parler, se li failli tous li cuers, si s'en
him-heard thus speak so to-her failed all the heart so herself-thereof
esfrea et li osta ses bras de son col et chai li enfes
frightened and to-him took-away her arms from his neck and fell the child
a terre. Et les femes qui estoient a la feniestre l'oirent, si
to earth And the women who were at the window it-heard so
saillirent sus et cuidierent que elle le vausist estrangler,
leapt up and thought that she him would-wish strangle
et disent: «Que volés vous faire de vostre enfant? Volés
and said What wish you to-do with your child Wish-you
le tuer?» Et ele respont toute esbahie: «Je non. Mais je
him to-kill And she answers all amazed I no But I
fui esbahie pour une grant merveille que il m'a dit, si
was amazed for a great marvel that he to-me-has said so

m'en faillirent li bras et li cuers.» Et elles respondent:
me-thereof failed the arms and the heart And they answer
«Que vous a il dit?» «Il m'a dit,» fait elle, «que je
What to-you has he said He to-me-has said says she that I
ne prenderai ja mort pour li.» Et celes dient: «Encore
not shall-take ever death for him And they say Still
dira il autre chose.» Lors le prendent entre eles, si le
will-say he other thing Then him take-they among them so him
commenchent a escouter por savoir se il parleroit plus. Mais
begin to listen for to-know if he would-speak more But
il n'en fist onques samblant ne ne lour dist mot. Tant
he not-thereof made ever semblance nor not to-them said word Until
que il avint, après que uns lons tans fu passés, que la mere
that it befell after that a long time was passed that the mother
dist as deus femes: «Manechiés moi, si verrés bien se
said to-the two women Threaten me so will-you-see well if
il vaurra parler.» Lors le prist sa mere entre ses bras, que
he will-wish to-speak Then him took his mother between her arms for
elle vausist bien que il parlast devant elles, si commencha
she would-wish well that he should-speak before them so began
a plorer. Et les femes disent tout maintenant: «Dame,
to weep And the women said all at-once Lady
moult sera grans damages de vostre biau cors, ki por tele
very will-be great damage of your fair body who for such
creature serés arse. Moult vausist mieus que il ne fust
creature will-be burned Much would-be-worth better that he not were
ja nés.» Et li enfes respont: «Vous mentés ore: che vous
ever born And the child answers You lie now this you
a fait ma mere dire.» Quant celles l'oirent ensi parler, si
has made my mother say When they him-heard thus speak so
en furent moult effraees, et dient: «Che n'est pas enfes,
thereof were very frightened and say This not-is at-all child

ains est uns dyables, qui set chou que nous avons fait et
rather is a devil who knows this that we have done and
dit.» Et parolent a lui et le metent en mainte parole. Et
said And speak-they to him and him put in many-a word And
il lour dist tant seulement: «Laissiés moi ester. Car vous
he to-them said so-much only Let me be For you
estes foles et pecheresses plus que ma mere n'est.» Et quant
are mad and sinners more than my mother is And when
celes l'oirent, si s'en esmervillierent et disent: «Ceste
they him-heard so themselves-thereat marveled and said This
chose ne puet estre celee, nous le dirons aval au peuple.»
thing not can be concealed we it shall-say below to-the people
Lors vinrent les deus femes a la fenestre et parlerent as
Then came the two women to the window and spoke to-the
gens et lour disent chou que li enfes lor avoit dit.
folk and to-them said this that the child to-them had said
Et quant il oirent ceste merveille, si disent que il estoit
And when they heard this marvel so said that it was
bien tans de faire justice de la mere. Si firent faire lettres
well time to do justice of the mother So made make letters
et ajornerent la mere de fere justice a quarante jours. Et
and summoned the mother for to-do justice at forty days And
quant les lettres furent aportees a la mere et que li jours
when the letters were brought to the mother and that the day
de son martyre li fu nommés, si en ot moult grant
of her martyrdom to-her was named so thereof had very great
paour. Et le fist a savoir au boin homme qui le consilloit.
fear And it made to know to-the good man who her counseled
Ensi remest une grande pieche, que il n'i ot mais que
Thus remained a great while that it not-there had more than
set jours jusques au terme que elle devoit estre arse. Et
seven days until to-the term that she ought to-be burned And

quant il li membroit de cel jour, si ne savoit que elle
when it to-her remembered of that day so not knew what she
en deust faire, si en fu moult espoentee et commencha
thereof ought to-do so thereof was very terrified and began
a plourer. Et li enfes aloit par la tour et vit sa mere
to weep And the child went through the tower and saw his mother
qui plouroit, si commencha a rire et a faire semblant de
who wept so began to laugh and to make semblance of
grant joie. Et les femes li dient: «Moult penses ore
great joy And the women to-him say Much thinkest-thou now
pau a chou que ta mere pense, qui en ceste semainne doit
little of this that thy mother thinks who in this week ought
estre arse por toi. Maleoite fu l'eure que tu fu nés,
to-be burned for thee Cursed was the-hour that thou wast born
se Dieus ne l'amende, quant elle pour vous soufferra tel
if God not it-amends when she for you will-suffer such
martyre!» Et li enfes respont: «Biele mere, or mentent.
martyrdom And the child answers Fair mother now they-lie
Ja ne sera hom, tant comme je vive, qui vous ost
Ever not will-be man so-long as I may-live who you may-dare
ochirre ne adeser ne metre en justiche de mort fors Dieus.»
kill nor touch nor put in justice of death except God

Quant la mere et les deus femes oirent l'enfant ensi
When the mother and the two women heard the-child thus
parler, si en furent moult lies et disent: «Chis enfes ert
speak so thereof were very glad and said This child will-be
encore moult preudom et moult sages, se Dieu plaist, qui
still very worthy-man and very wise if God please who
teuls paroles set dire.» Ensi remest dusques au jour
such words knows-how to-say Thus remained until to-the day
qui nommés fu. Et quant chou vint a cel jour, si furent les
which named was And when this came to that day so were the

femes mises fors et la mere en porta son enfant entre ses
women put out and the mother thence carried her child between her
bras devant les juges. Et li juge furent venu, si parlerent
arms before the judges And the judges were come so spoke
a une part as femes qui avoient esté avoec la mere. Et
to one side to-the women who had been with the mother And
lor demanderent se c'estoit voirs que li enfes parlast ensi.
to-them asked if it-was true that the child spoke thus
Et elles lor content canques elles li ont oi dire. Et
And they to-them tell whatever they to-him have heard say And
quant cil l'oirent, si s'en esmiervillierent moult et
when those it-heard so themselves-thereat marveled much and
disent que moult li converra a savoir des paroles, se
said that much to-him will-behoove to know of-the words if
il la reskeut de mort. Ensi vinrent arriere. Et li preudom
he her rescues from death Thus came-they back And the worthy-man
fu venus, cil qui la damoisiele consilloit. Lors dist li uns
was come he who the damsel counseled Then said the one
des juges: «Damoisiele, avés vous mais que faire? Atornés
of-the judges Damsel have you more to do Array
vous or, que il vous covient souffrir cest martyre.» Et cele
yourself now for it you behooves to-suffer this martyrdom And she
respont: «Sire, se il vous plaisoit, je parleroie volontiers a
answers Lord if it you pleased I would-speak willingly to
cest preudomme.» Atant l'en a donné li juges congié.
this worthy-man Thereupon her-thereof has given the judge leave
Si s'en entra en une chambre, et li enfes remest
So herself-thence entered into a chamber and the child remained
defors. Si le misent mainte gent a parole, dont gaires ne
outside So him put many-a folk to word whereof much not
li fu. Adont parla la feme a son confessour et moult
to-him was Then spoke the woman to her confessor and very

piteusement en plourant. Quant ele ot parlé de canques ele
piteously in weeping When she had spoken of whatever she
vaut, se li demanda li preudom: «Es che dont voirs que
wished so to-her asked the worthy-man Is this then true that
tes enfes parole si comme on dist?» Et cele respont: «Sire,
thy child speaks so as one says And she answers Lord
oil.» Puis conta au preudomme chou que elle li oi dire.
yes Then told to-the worthy-man this that she him heard say
Et quant li preudom l'oi, si dist: «Auchune mierveille
And when the worthy-man it-heard so said Some marvel
averra de ceste oevre.» Lors s'en issirent de la
will-come of this work Then themselves-thence went-out from the
cambre entre li et la damoisiele, si trova son enfant defors
chamber between him and the damsel so found her child outside
et le prist entre ses bras et s'en vint tantost devant
and him took between her arms and herself-thence came at-once before
les juges. Et quant li juge le virent, si dient: «Dame,
the judges And when the judges her saw so say Lady
dirés vous qui est peres de cest enfant? Gardés que vous
will-say you who is father of this child Guard that you
ne le celés mie.» Et elle respont: «Seigneur, je voi bien que
not it conceal at-all And she answers Lords I see well that
je sui livree a justice de mort. Si n'ait Dieus ja pitié
I am delivered to justice of death So not-may-have God ever pity
ne merchi de moi si je le pere vi onques ne ne connui
nor mercy of me if I the father saw ever nor not knew
ne onques viers homme fui tant abandonnee que il deust
nor ever toward man was so-much abandoned that he ought
enfant engendrer en moi.» Et li juge respondent: «Nous
child to-beget in me And the judges answer We
ne creons pas que che puist estre voirs. Et si demanderons
not believe at-all that this can be true And so shall-ask

as autres femes se che porroit avenir que tu nous fais
to-the other women if this could happen that thou us makest
entendant. Car onques mais ne pot nus tele miervelle oir.»
understanding For ever more not could anyone such marvel hear
Atant se traient li juge a une part et parlerent
Thereupon themselves draw the judges to one side and spoke
a maintes femes de chou que cele damoisiele lour faisoit
to many-a women of this that that damsel to-them made
entendant. Et dist li uns des juges: «Dames, vous qui chi
understanding And said the one of-the judges Ladies you who here
estes, avint onques a nule de vous ne a autre dont on oist
are befell ever to any of you nor to other of-whom one heard
onques parler que elle puist conchevoir ne avoir enfant sans
ever speak that she could conceive nor have child without
compaignie d'omme carnelment?» Et celes dient que che
company of-man carnally And they say that this
ne porroit avenir. Quant li juge oirent che, si s'en
not could happen When the judges heard this so themselves-thence
revinrent arriere a la mere Merlin et li conterent che
came-back back to the mother (of-)Merlin and to-her told this
que il ont oi dire as autres femes. «Et des ore mais
that they have heard say to-the other women And from now more
en est il drois que la justiche en soit faite.» Lors saut
thereof is it right that the justice thereof be done Then leaps
avant Merlins, qui moult fu irés de ceste chose et de
forward Merlin who very was angered by this thing and by
chou que il oi dire de sa mere. Et dist: «Signour, che
this that he heard say of his mother And said Lords this
ne sera mie si tost que justice en soit faite. Car se
not will-be at-all so soon that justice thereof be done For if
on faisoit justice de tous chiaus et de toutes celes qui
one did justice of all those and of all those-women who

ont esté en avoutire a autrui que a lour femes et a lor
have been in adultery to others than to their wives and to their
maris, il en i aroit ja ars plus des deus pars
husbands it thereof there would-have already burned more than-the two parts
de chiaus qui chi sont et de celes dont je sai aussi
of those who here are and of those-women of-whom I know as
bien lour couvine que eles meismes font. Se je en voloie
well their condition as they themselves do If I thereof wished
parler, je les feroie ja tous jehir. Sacés que assés
to-speak I them would-make already all confess Know that enough
en i a qui ont fait pis que ma mere n'ait. Car elle
thereof there has who have done worse than my mother may-have For she
n'a coupes en chou que on li met sus. Et s'ele i
not-has guilt in this that one to-her puts upon And if-she there
a coupes, teuls coupes que ele a a pris cis preudom sur
has guilt such guilt as she has has taken this worthy-man upon
li. Et se vous ne m'en creés, demandés li.» Et li juge
him And if you not me-thereof believe ask him And the judges
apielerent le preudomme et li demanderent se c'estoit
called the worthy-man and to-him asked if it-was
voirs que Merlins lour avoit adont conté. Li preudom
true that Merlin to-them had then told The worthy-man
conte tout mot a mot canques la mere Merlin li avoit
tells all word for word whatever the mother (of-)Merlin to-him had
dit, si li demandent se che est voirs que ele disoit, que
said so to-him ask-they if this is true that she said that
tel chose li fust avenue. Et li preudom respont: «Je li
such thing to-her were befallen And the worthy-man answers I to-her
dis que elle n'avoit garde envers Dieu ne enviers le monde,
said that she not-had fear toward God nor toward the world
qui droit li feroit. Ele meesmes vous a conté comment
who right to-her would-do She herself to-you has told how

ele fu engingnie, et c'est mierveille de cest enfant, que
she was deceived and it-is marvel of this child that
ele encarka sans delit d'omme et si ne set qui l'engenra,
she conceived without delight of-man and so not knows who him-begot
et si en fu confiesse et repentans et l'en carchai
and so thereof was confessed and repenting and her-thereof charged-I
sa penitance.» Et li enfes dist au preudomme: «Vous avés
her penance And the child said to-the worthy-man You have
en escrit l'eure toute et la nuit que je fui engenrés, si
in writing the-hour all and the night that I was begotten so
poés bien savoir quant je nasqui et l'eure que je sui nés.
can-you well know when I was-born and the-hour that I am born
Et par che poés bien savoir grant partie de l'euvre ma
And by this can-you well know great part of the-work (of-)my
mere.» Et li preudom respont: «Vous dites voir. Mais je
mother And the worthy-man answers You say true But I
ne puis savoir dont chis sens te vient. Car tu sés
not can know whence this sense to-thee comes For thou knowest
plus que nous tout.» Et lors furent apielees les femes qui
more than we all And then were called the women who
avoient esté en la tour avoec la mere Merlin. Et conterent
had been in the tower with the mother (of-)Merlin And told
devant les juges le termine de l'enfant, de l'engenrer et
before the judges the term of the-child of the-begetting and
dou porter et del naistre par l'escrit au preudome, se
of-the carrying and of-the being-born by the-writing of-the worthy-man so
le troverent ensi comme il le dist. Et li uns des juges
it found thus as he it said And the one of-the judges
respont: «Pour chou ne sera el pas cuite, se elle ne dist
answers For this not will-be she at-all quit if she not says
qui t'engendra et qui est tes peres.» Et li enfes se
who thee-begot and who is thy father And the child himself

courecha et dist: «Je connois mieus mon pere que tu ne
angered and said I know better my father than thou —
fais le tien. Et ta mere set mieus qui t'engendra que la
dost the thine And thy mother knows better who thee-begot than the
moie ne set qui m'engenra.» Et li juges se courecha et
mine — knows who me-begot And the judge himself angered and
dist a Merlin: «Se tu sés riens dire sur ma mere, je le
said to Merlin If thou knowest anything to-say upon my mother I it
terrai bien a droit.» Et Mierlins respont: «Je savroie bien
shall-hold well for right And Merlin answers I would-know well
dire sur li, se tu en faisoies justiche, que elle averoit
to-say upon her if thou thereof didst justice that she would-have
mieus mort deservie que la moie mere. Se je le te faz
better death deserved than the my mother If I it thee make
connoistre a li meismes, si claimme ma mere quite, car
know from her herself so declare my mother quit for
ele n'a coupes en che que on li met sus. Et elle dist
she not-has guilt in this that one to-her puts upon And she said
voir de canques elle dist d'endroit m'engenreure.» Et quant
true of whatever she said concerning my-begetting And when
li juges oi Merlin ensi parler, si en fu moult irés. Et
the judge heard Merlin thus speak so thereof was very angered And
dist: «Merlins, vostre mere avrés rescousse d'ardoir, se
said Merlin your mother will-you-have rescued from-burning if
il est ensi. Mais tant saches tu bien: se vous ne savés
it is thus But so-much know thou well if you not know
tant dire seur ma mere dont je vous croie et que
so-much to-say upon my mother whereby I you may-believe and that
la vostre remaingne em pais, sachés on ardera vous avoec.»
the yours may-remain in peace know one will-burn you with-her

Atant prisent jour entre le juge et Mierlin a le
Thereupon took-they day between the judge and Merlin at the
quinsainne, et li juges envoia querre sa mere et fist l'enfant
fortnight and the judge sent to-seek his mother and made the-child
et sa mere moult bien garder, et il meismes fu tous jours
and his mother very well guard and he himself was all days
avoec les gardes. Et maintes fois fu li enfes mis en paroles
with the guards And many-a times was the child put in words
de sa mere et d'autrui, mais en tous les quinse jours
of his mother and of-others but in all the fifteen days
parole n'en pot on traire. Et quant vint a la quinsainne,
word not-thereof could one draw And when came at the fortnight
si vint la mere au juge. Et quant elle fu venue, si mist
so came the mother of-the judge And when she was come so put
on Merlin et sa mere fors de la prison et les mena on
one Merlin and his mother out of the prison and them led one
devant le peuple. Et lors dist li juges: «Merlins, vés ci
before the people And then said the judge Merlin see here
ma mere seur qui tu dois parler. Ore di chou que tu
my mother upon whom thou oughtest to-speak Now say this that thou
li veuls dire.» Et li enfes respont: «Vous n'estes mie
to-her wishest say And the child answers You not-are at-all
si sages comme vous cuidiés d'assés. Alés, si menés vostre
so wise as you think by-enough Go so lead your
mere en une maison tout priveement et amenés vostre plus
mother into a house all privately and bring your most
privé conseil, et jou apielerai le conseil ma mere, che est
private counsel and I shall-call the counsel (of-)my mother this is
Dieus li tous poissans et ses confessours.» Lors furent si
God the all mighty and her confessor Then were so
esbahi cil qui ces paroles oirent que a painnes porent il
amazed those who these words heard that with pains could they

respondre. Mais li juge connoist bien que il dist que sages.
answer But the judge knows well that he said as wise
Et li enfes demande a tous les autres juges: «Segnour, se je
And the child asks to all the other judges Lords if I
puis delivrer ma mere par raison de cest homme, sera elle
can deliver my mother by reason from this man will-be she
quite de vous tous?» Et il respondent: «Se elle eschape de
quit of you all And they answer If she escapes from
cestui, elle ne trouvera ja mais qui riens li demant.» En
this-one she not will-find ever more who anything of-her may-ask In
ceste maniere que vous avés oi s'en alerent en une
this manner that you have heard themselves-thence went into a
chambre entre Merlin et le juge. Et mena li juges sa mere
chamber between Merlin and the judge And led the judge his mother
et deus autres hommes de ses amis les plus preudommes
and two other men of his friends the most worthy-men
que il pot trouver. Et li enfes i mena le confessour sa
that he could find And the child there led the confessor (of-)his
mere. Et quant il furent assamblé, si dist li juges: «Ore
mother And when they were assembled so said the judge Now
pues tu dire a ma mere chou que tu veuls, par quoi la
canst thou say to my mother this that thou wishest by which the
toie mere doit estre quite.» «Je ne voel pas,» fait Merlins,
thy mother ought to-be quit I not wish at-all says Merlin
«ma mere desfendre contre tort, mais je li voel le droit
my mother to-defend against wrong but I to-her wish the right
Damedieu sauver et le sien. Et sachés que ma mere n'a
(of-)Lord-God to-save and the hers And know that my mother not-has
pas le torment deservi que vous li volés faire. Et se vous
at-all the torment deserved that you to-her wish to-do And if you
m'en creés, vous quiterés ma mere et lairés a enquerre
me-thereof believe you will-quit my mother and will-leave to inquire

de la vostre.» Et li juges respont: «Ensi ne m'escaperés
of the yours And the judge answers Thus not me-will-you-escape
mie, plus vous couverra dire.» Et Merlins dist: «Vous m'avés
at-all more you will-behoove to-say And Merlin said You me-have
asseuré et ma mere, se je le puis desfendre, que vous le
assured and my mother if I her can defend that you her
cuitiés?» Et li juges respont: «Che est voirs.» Et Merlins
quit And the judge answers This is true And Merlin
respont: «Vous volés ma mere ardoir por chou que je sui nés
answers You wish my mother to-burn for this that I am born
de li et pour chou que elle ne set qui en li m'engendra.
of her and for this that she not knows who in her me-begot
Mais se je voloie, elle savroit mieus dire quels fieus je
But if I wished she would-know better say what son I
sui que tu ne savroies dire qui fu tes peres, et ta mere
am than thou — wouldst-know say who was thy father and thy mother
set mieus quels fieus tu ies que la moie mere ne porroit
knows better what son thou art than the my mother — could
orendroit dire quels fieus je sui.» Et li juges dist: «Belle
now say what son I am And the judge said Fair
mere, ne sui je mie vostre fius de vostre loial espous?»
mother not am I at-all your son of your loyal spouse
Adont respondi la mere au juge: «Biaus fieus, oil.» Et
Then answered the mother to-the judge Fair son yes And
Merlins parole et dist: «Dame, il vous converra voir dire
Merlin speaks and said Lady it you will-behoove true to-say
se vostre fieus ne quite ma mere et moi. Se il le voloit
if your son not quits my mother and me If he it wished
faire sans plus dire, je m'en tairoie.» Et li juges
to-do without more saying I me-thereof would-be-silent And the judge
respont: «Je n'en ferai nient.» «Vous i gaaignerés ja
answers I not-thereof shall-do anything You there will-gain already

tant,» fait Merlins, «que vous trouverés vostre pere par le
so-much says Merlin that you will-find your father by the
tiesmoing de vostre mere.» Et quant cil l'oirent qui erent
witness of your mother And when those it-heard who were
au conseil, si se saingnierent et eurent moult grant
at-the council so themselves crossed and had very great
mervieille de chou que Merlins disoit. Et Merlins dist a
marvel of this that Merlin said And Merlin said to
la mere au juge: «Dame, il convient que vous dites voir
the mother of-the judge Lady it behooves that you may-say true
a vostre fil quels fieus il est.» Et la dame dist: «Dyables
to your son what son he is And the lady said Devil
Sathanas, dont ne l'ai je dit?» Et Merlins respont: «Vous
Satan then not it-have I said And Merlin answers You
savés bien certainnement que il n'est pas fieus chelui que
know well certainly that he not-is at-all son (of-)him whom
il cuide estre.» La dame fu espoentee, si dist: «A cui
he thinks to-be The lady was terrified so said Of whom
dont?» Et il dist: «Vous savés bien que il est fieus a vostre
then And he said You know well that he is son to your
prevoire. A ces ensaignes que la premiere fois que vous
priest By these tokens that the first time that you
assamblastes a lui que vous li desistes que vous aviés
lay with him that you to-him said that you had
paour d'encarkier. Et il vous dist que vous n'encarceriés
fear of-conceiving And he you said that you not-would-conceive
ja de lui, et que il meteroit en escrit toutes les fois
ever of him and that he would-put in writing all the times
que il girroit a vous, pour chou que il meismes avoit
that he would-lie with you for this that he himself had
paour que vous ne couchissiés a autre homme et que
fear that you — should-lie with other man and that

vostre sires estoit mal de vous en cel termine. Et quant il
your lord was ill with you in that term And when he
fu engenrés, ne demoura gaires que vous desistes que vous
was begotten not delayed much that you said that you
estiés mal baillie de chou que vous estiés de lui grosse.
were ill handled by this that you were by him big
Se che est voirs ensi comme je l'ai dit, si le connissiés.
If this is true thus as I it-have said so it acknowledge
Et se vous ne le volés reconnoistre, encore vous dirai je
And if you not it wish to-acknowledge still you shall-tell I
el.» Et li juges fut moult irés et demanda a sa mere:
else And the judge was very angered and asked to his mother
«Est che voirs que il dist?» Et la mere respont, qui moult
Is this true that he says And the mother answers who very
fu espoentee, et dist: «Biaus fieus, creés dont chou que
was terrified and said Fair son believe-you then this that
cis dyables dist?» Et Merlins dist: «Se vous nel connissiés,
this devil says And Merlin said If you not-it acknowledge
je vous dirai encore autre chose que vous savés bien et
I you shall-tell still other thing that you know well and
voirs est.» Et la dame se taist. Et Merlins dist: «Je sai
true is And the lady herself silences And Merlin said I know
canques il i ot fait et dit. Voirs est que quant vous
whatever it there had done and said True is that when you
vous sentistes grosse, vous fesistes querre le pais de vostre
yourself felt big you made seek the peace of your
signour a vostre prestre, pour chou que vous vous voliés
lord to your priest for this that you yourself wished
couvrir que vous fuissiés grosse de lui, et le cuist tant
to-cover that you were big by him and him urged so-much
et pourcacha que il le fist et vous fist gesir ensamble od
and contrived that he it did and you made lie together with

li. Ensi fesistes entendant au preudomme que li enfes
him Thus made-you understanding to-the worthy-man that the child
estoit siens. Ensi le cuident mainte autre gent. Et chis
was his Thus it think many-a other folk And this-one
meismes qui chi est le cuide pour voir que il fust fieus
himself who here is it thinks for true that he were son
au preudomme. Et dès lors en cha avés ceste vie
to-the worthy-man And from then thereof hither have-you this life
menee et menés encore. Et la nuit que vous meustes a
led and lead still And the night that you set-out to
venir cha jeustes vous ensamble. Et au matin vous convoia
come hither lay you together And at-the morning you escorted
il grant pieche. Et quant il se departi de vous, il vous
he great while And when he himself departed from you he you
dist en conseil en riant: «Biele suer, or pensés de faire et
said in counsel in laughing Fair sister now think of doing and
de dire canques mes fieus vaurra.» Car il savoit bien que
of saying whatever my son will-wish For he knew well that
chis estoit ses fieus et par son escrit.» Quant la mere
this-one was his son and by his writing When the mother
au juge oi Merlin ensi parler et que ele sot bien que
of-the judge heard Merlin thus speak and that she knew well that
il disoit voir, si s'assist et fu moult destroite. Et voit bien
he said true so herself-sat and was very distressed And sees well
que il li converra dire voir. Et ses fieus le regarde et
that it to-her will-behoove to-say true And her son her looks-at and
dist: «Biele mere, qui que soit mes peres, je sui vos fieus,
said Fair mother who that may-be my father I am your son
comme fieus vous ferai. Mais dites voir se cis enfes dist
as son you shall-I-treat But say true if this child says
verité.» Et la mere respont: «Biaus fieus, pour Dieu merchi!
truth And the mother answers Fair son for God mercy

Je nel te puis celer, car tout ensi comme il l'a dit est
I not-it thee can conceal for all thus as he it-has said is
il.» Et quant li juges l'oi, si dist: «Voir disoit cis enfes,
it And when the judge it-heard so said True said this child
qu'il savoit mieus qui estoit ses peres que je ne savoie qui
that-he knew better who was his father than I — knew who
estoit li miens. Et si n'est pas drois que je face justice
was the mine And so not-is at-all right that I may-do justice
de sa mere quant je nel fach de la moie.» Et dist li
of his mother when I not-it do of the mine And said the
juges a Merlin: «Merlins, je te pri pour Dieu, pour chou
judge to Merlin Merlin I thee pray for God for this
que je puisse ta mere descouper envers le peuple et toi,
that I may thy mother exculpate toward the people and thee
di moi qui est tes peres.» Et Merlins dist: «Je le te dirai
tell me who is thy father And Merlin said I it thee shall-tell
plus pour t'amour que pour ta force. Je voel que tu saces
more for thy-love than for thy force I wish that thou may-know
que je sui fieus d'un anemi qui engingna ma mere. Et
that I am son of-an enemy who deceived my mother And
saces que ceste maniere d'anemis ont a non Ekupedes, et
know that this manner of-enemies have as name Incubi and
repairent en l'air. Et chis m'a donné le sens de savoir
dwell in the-air And this-one me-has given the sense of knowing
les choses dites, faites et alees. Et pour chou sa ge la
the things said done and gone And for this know I the
vie que ta mere a tous jors menee. Et nostre sires vaut
life that thy mother has all days led And our lord wished
que je eusse tel memoire pour la bonté ma mere et
that I should-have such memory for the goodness (of-)my mother and
se boine repentance, et, pour le commandement de sainte
her good repentance and for the commandment of holy

eglyse que je croi, m'a donné tant de vertu que je sai
church as I believe me-has given so-much of virtue that I know
les choses qui sont a avenir en partie. Et si le pues
the things which are to come in part And so it canst-thou
savoir par chou que je te dirai.» Lors le traist Merlins a
know by this that I thee shall-tell Then him drew Merlin to
une part et li dist: «Ta mere s'en ira et contera
one side and to-him said Thy mother herself-thence will-go and will-tell
a chelui qui t'engendra chou que je lui ai dit. Et quant
to him who thee-begot this that I to-her have said And when
il orra que tu savras la verité, il avera si grant paour
he will-hear that thou wilt-know the truth he will-have so great fear
de toi que il s'en fuira. Et li dyables quels oevres
of thee that he himself-thence will-flee And the devil whose works
il a tous jours menees si l'en menra a une riviere,
he has all days led so him-thence will-lead to a river
et la se noiera. Et pour chou poes prouver que
and there himself will-drown And by this canst-thou prove that
je sai les choses qui sont a avenir.» Et li juges respont:
I know the things which are to come And the judge answers
«Merlins, se chou est voirs que tu m'as dit, je ne te
Merlin if this is true that thou me-hast said I not thee
mesquerrai ja mais.» Ensi departirent de lour conseil et
shall-disbelieve ever more Thus parted-they from their counsel and
vinrent devant le peuple, et dist li juges au peuple:
came before the people and said the judge to-the people
«Chis enfes a bien rescousse sa mere d'ardoir. Et sachent
This child has well rescued his mother from-burning And let-know
tout cil qui cest enfant verront qu'il ne verront ja mais
all those who this child will-see that-they not will-see ever more

plus sage ne onques ne virent.» Et cil respondent tout:
more wise nor ever not saw And those answer all
«Dieus en soit aourés, se elle est respitee de la mort.»
God thereof be adored if she is respited from the death

Merlin and Blaise

V

The judge's mother goes home and the priest drowns himself, as Merlin foretold. Merlin tells his mother's confessor, Blaise, who he is and bids him write a book of these things beside the book of Joseph and the grail. He foretells that messengers will come from the west sworn to kill him, and that he will go with them.

Chi endroit dist li contes que Merlins remest avoec les
Here in-place says the tale that Merlin remained with the
juges. Et li juges en envoia sa mere et deus hommes
judges And the judge thence sent his mother and two men
avoecques li pour savoir se c'estoit voirs que Merlins li
with her for to-know if it-was true what Merlin to-him
avoit dit dou prouvoire et de la mere au juge. Si tost que
had said of-the priest and of the mother of-the judge So soon as
ele fu venue a son hostel, si parla au prouvoire en conseil
she was come to her lodging so spoke to-the priest in counsel
et li dist la merveille que elle avoit oie. Et quant cil
and to-him told the marvel that she had heard And when he
l'oi, si fu si espoentés que il ne li pot mot respondre,
it-heard so was so terrified that he not to-her could word answer
et lors se pensa que si tost que li juges verroit qu'il
and then himself thought that so soon as the judge would-see that-he
l'ochiroit. Si s'en ala pensant fors de la ville. Et vint
him-would-kill So himself-thence went thinking out of the town And came

a une riviere et dist que mieus li venoit que il se
to a river and said that better to-him came that he himself
noiast que on l'ochesist, ne que il le fesist morir de
should-drown than one him-should-kill nor that he him should-make die of
vilainne mort. Ensi le mena dyables quels oevres il avoit
base death Thus him led devil whose works he had
faites qu'il le fist sailir en l'iaue, si se noia. Et che
done that-he him made leap into the-water so himself drowned And this
virent cil qui en furent alé avoec la mere au juge. Pour
saw those who thence were gone with the mother of-the judge For
chou dist li contes que nus ne se doit des gens fuir,
this says the tale that anyone not himself ought from-the folk to-flee
que li dyables repaire plus tost avoecques un homme seul
for the devil dwells more soon with a man alone
que avoeques plusieurs. Ensi revinrent cil qui che orent veu.
than with several Thus came-back those who this had seen
Et quant il furent venu la ou li juges estoit, si li
And when they were come there where the judge was so to-him
conterent l'uevre si comme il l'orent veue. Et au tierch
told the-work so as they it-had seen And at-the third
jour comme il furent la s'estoit cil noiiés. Et quant
day as they were there himself-was be drowned And when
li juges l'oi, si s'en esmervilla, et vint a Merlin et
the judge it-heard so himself-thereat marveled and came to Merlin and
li dist. Et Merlins en rist et dist au juge: «Or pues
to-him told And Merlin thereof laughed and said to-the judge Now canst
tu bien veoir se je te di voir. Et je te pri que tout ensi
thou well see if I thee say true And I thee pray that all thus
que je le te dis que tu le dies a Blaise. Et cil Blaises
as I it thee said that thou it may-say to Blaise And this Blaise
estoit confessours ma mere.» Et li juges conta a Blaise
was confessor (of-)my mother And the judge told to Blaise

la merveille si comme elle avoit esté del prouvoire. Atant
the marvel so as it had been of-the priest Thereupon
s'en ala Merlins entre lui et sa mere et Blaise, et
himself-thence went Merlin between him and his mother and Blaise and
li juge s'en ralerent d'autre part. Et cil Blaises fu
the judges themselves-thence went-back on-the-other side And this Blaise was
moult boins clers et moult soutieus. Quant il oi ensi
very good clerk and very subtle When he heard thus
parler Merlin et si soutilment, qui de si petit eage estoit
speak Merlin and so subtly who of so little age was
qu'il n'avoit mie a cele eure plus de deus ans et demi, si
that-he not-had at-all at that hour more than two years and half so
s'esmiervilla moult dont si grans sens li pooit venir. Si
himself-marveled much whence so great sense to-him could come So
se mist en moult grant painne d'essaiier Merlin en mainte
himself put in very great pain of-testing Merlin in many-a
maniere. Tant que Merlins dist a Blaise: «Ne m'essaie mie.
manner Until that Merlin said to Blaise Not me-test at-all
Car quant plus m'essaieras, plus t'esmiervilleras. Mais fai
For when more me-thou-wilt-test more thyself-wilt-marvel But do
che que je te proierai et croi en partie chou que je te
this that I thee shall-pray and believe in part this that I thee
dirai, si t'aprenderai a avoir l'amour Jesucrist.» Blaises dist
shall-say so thee-shall-teach to have the-love (of-)Jesus-Christ Blaise said
a Merlin: «Je t'ai oi dire et je le croi bien que tu
to Merlin I thee-have heard say and I it believe well that thou
ies concheus dou dyable, si te redout moult que tu ne
art conceived of-the devil so thee fear much that thou —
m'engingnes.» Et Merlins dist: «Il est coustume de tous
me-may-deceive And Merlin said It is custom of all
mauvais cuers que il voient en tout lour faire et notent
bad hearts that they see in all their doing and note

plus le mal que le bien. Ensi que tu m'as oi dire que
more the ill than the good Thus as thou me-hast heard say that
je estoie fius dou dyable, aussi m'ois tu dire que Dieus
I was son of-the devil also me-hearest thou say that God
m'avoit donné sens et savoir des choses qui sont a avenir.
me-had given sense and knowledge of-the things which are to come
Et pour chou, se tu fuisses sages, deusses tu savoir et
And for this if thou wert wise oughtest thou to-know and
esprouver au quel je me devroie tenir. Et saces tu bien
to-test to-the which I myself ought to-hold And know thou well
que Dieus voult que je seusse ces choses pour chou que
that God wished that I should-know these things for this that
dyable m'ont perdu, mais je n'ai pas pierdu lor engien
devils me-have lost but I not-have at-all lost their cunning
ne lor art. Ains tieng d'aus che que tenir en doi.
nor their art Rather hold-I from-them this that hold thereof I-ought
Mais je nel tieng mie pour lour preu, ne il, quant il me
But I not-it hold at-all for their profit nor they when they me
conchurent en ma mere, ne furent mie sage. Car il me
conceived in my mother not were at-all wise For they me
misent en tel vaissiel qui ne devoit mie estre leur, et la
put in such vessel which not ought at-all to-be theirs and the
bontés de li lour nuist moult. Mais s'il m'eussent concheu
goodness of her to-them harms much But if-they me-had conceived
et mis en m'aiole, je n'eusse pooir de connoistre que
and put in my-grandmother I not-would-have power of knowing that
Dieus est et fuisse leur. Et vint par li tous li tormens
God is and would-be theirs And came by her all the torment
que ma mere ot de son pere et des autres damages que
that my mother had from her father and of-the other damages that
tu li as oi conter. Mais croi chou que je te dirai
thou to-her hast heard tell But believe this that I thee shall-say

de la foi et de la creance Jesucrist. Et je te dirai tel
of the faith and of the belief (of-)Jesus-Christ And I thee shall-tell such
chose que nus, fors Dieus, ne te savroit dire. Si en
thing that anyone except God not thee would-know-how to-tell So thereof
fai un livre. Et maintes gens qui orront che livre que
make a book And many-a folk who will-hear this book that
tu feras en seront millour, et s'en garderont
thou wilt-make thereof will-be better and themselves-thereof will-guard
de pechier, et feras grant aumosne se tu le fais.»
from sinning and wilt-make great alms if thou it makest

Blaises respont a Merlin: «Je ferai volentiers le livre,
Blaise answers to Merlin I shall-make willingly the book
mais je te conjure el non del pere et le fil et le saint
but I thee conjure in-the name of-the father and the son and the holy
esperit et de la deboinaire dame qui le cors Dieu porta
spirit and of the gracious lady who the body (of-)God carried
et de tous ses angles et archangles et apostles et de tout
and of all his angels and archangels and apostles and of all
canques de Dieu est, que tu ne me puisses dechevoir ni
whatever of God is that thou not me may deceive nor
engingnier, ne faire chose qui au plaisir nostre signor ne
deceive nor do thing which to-the pleasure (of-)our lord not
soit.» Et Merlins respont: «Toutes les creatures dont tu
may-be And Merlin answers All the creatures of-which thou
m'as parlé me puissent nuire envers Dieu, se je te faich
me-hast spoken me may harm toward God if I thee do
chose qui contre sa volenté soit.» «Ore me diras dont,» dist
thing which against his will may-be Now me wilt-tell then said
Blaises, «chou que tu vaurras de bien, car je le ferai dès ore
Blaise this that thou wilt-wish of good for I it shall-do from now
mais.» Et Merlins dist: «Or quier dont enche et parchemin
more And Merlin said Now seek then ink and parchment

assés, que je te dirai moult de choses que tu metras en
enough for I thee shall-tell many of things that thou wilt-put in
ton livre.» Et quant il ot tout quis, si li conta Merlins
thy book And when he had all sought so to-him told Merlin
les amours de Jesucrist et de Joseph tout ensi comme eles
the loves of Jesus-Christ and of Joseph all thus as they
avoient esté, et d'Alain et de sa compaignie tout ensi comme
had been and of-Alain and of his company all thus as
il avoit alé, et comment Joseph se dessaisi dou vaissiel et
it had gone and how Joseph himself dispossessed of-the vessel and
puis devia, et comment dyable apriès toutes ces choses qui
then died and how devils after all these things which
furent avenues prisent conseil que il avoient perdu lour pooir
were befallen took counsel that they had lost their power
que il soloient avoir seur les hommes, et se li conte
that they were-wont to-have over the men and so to-him tells
comment li prophete lor avoient mal fait, et pour chou
how the prophets to-them had ill done and for this
s'estoient acordé ensamble comment il feroient un homme.
themselves-were agreed together how they would-make a man
«Et tu as bien oi et seu par ma mere et par autrui
And thou hast well heard and known by my mother and by others
le painne et l'engien que il i ont mis. Et par la folie
the pain and the-cunning that they there have put And by the folly
dont il sont plain m'ont perdu.» Ensi devisa Merlins ceste
whereof they are full me-have lost Thus devised Merlin this
oevre et le fist faire a Blaise. Et moult s'esmiervilla Blaises
work and it made do to Blaise And much himself-marveled Blaise
des mierveilles que Merlins disoit, et toutes voies li
at-the marvels that Merlin said and all the-same to-him
sambloient estre boines et si i entendoit moult volentiers.
seemed to-be good and so there attended very willingly

Endementiers que il entendoit a ceste oevre faire, si dist
Meanwhile that he attended to this work to-do so said
Merlins a Blaise: «Il me converra de ceste chose que tu
Merlin to Blaise It me will-behoove for this thing that thou
fais moult grant painne souffrir.» Et Blaises li demande
doest very great pain to-suffer And Blaise to-him asks
comment. Et Merlins dist: «Je serai envoiiés querre de viers
how And Merlin said I shall-be sent to-seek from toward
occident. Et cil qui me verront querre avront juré lour
west And those who me will-come seek will-have sworn (to-)their
signeur que il m'ochiront et li porteront le sanc de moi.
lord that they me-will-kill and to-him will-carry the blood of me
Mais si tost comme il me verront et m'orront parler, si
But so soon as they me will-see and me-will-hear speak so
n'en avront ja talent. Et quant je m'en irai avoec iaus,
not-thereof will-have ever desire And when I me-thence shall-go with them
tu t'en iras en ces parties ou les gens sont qui ont che
thou thee-thence wilt-go into these parts where the folk are who have this
saint graal, et tous jours mais sera ta painne et tes livres
holy grail and all days more will-be thy pain and thy books
retrais et volentiers ois de toutes gens. Mais il ne sera pas
recounted and willingly heard by all folk But it not will-be at-all
en auctorité, pour chou que tu n'es pas ne ne pues estre
in authority for this that thou not-art at-all nor not canst be
des apostles. Ne li apostle ne misent onques riens en escrit
of-the apostles Nor the apostles not put ever anything in writing
de nostre signeur que il n'eussent veu et oi, et tu n'i
of our lord that they not-had seen and heard and thou not-there
mès riens que tu aies veu et oi d'autrui que de moi.
puttest anything that thou may-have seen and heard from-others than from me

«Et ensi comme je sui oscurs et serai enviers chiaus ou
And thus as I am obscure and shall-be toward those where
je ne me vaurrai esclairier, ensi sera tous li livres celés,
I not me shall-wish to-clarify thus will-be all the book concealed
et peu avenra que ja nus en face bonté. Et tu l'en
and little will-happen that ever any thereof may-do goodness And thou it-thence
porteras quant je m'en irai avoec chiaus qui me verront
wilt-carry when I me-thence shall-go with those who me will-come
querre. Si sera Joseph et li livres des lignies que je t'ai
seek So will-be Joseph and the book of-the lineages that I thee-have
amenteues avec le tien et le mien; et tu avras ta painne
mentioned with the thine and the mine and thou wilt-have thy pain
finee et tu seras teuls comme tu dois estre en lour
ended and thou wilt-be such as thou oughtest to-be in their
compaignie; lors si assamblera tes livres au sien, si sera
company then so will-join thy books to-the his so will-be
bien la chose prouvée de ma painne et de la toie. Ensi
well the thing proved of my pain and of the thine Thus
en avront mierchi, se iaus plaist. Et il proieront nostre
thereof will-have mercy if them pleases And they will-pray our
signour por nous. Et quant li doi livre seront assamblé, si
lord for us And when the two books will-be joined so
i avra un biel livre. Et li doi seront une meesme chose
there will-have a fair book And the two will-be one same thing
fors tant que je ne puis dire, ne drois n'est, les privees
except so-much that I not can say nor right not-is the private
paroles de Joseph et de Jesucrist.» Et Engletere n'avoit adont
words of Joseph and of Jesus-Christ And England not-had then
eut encore roi crestiien; ne des rois qu'i avoient esté
had still king Christian nor of-the kings who-there had been
ne me tient a retraire fors tant que a cist conte monte.
not me pertains to recount except so-much as to this tale mounts

How Vortigern Took the Crown

VI

King Constans of England dies, leaving three sons, Moine, Pendragon, and Uther, and a seneschal, Vortigern. Moine is made king and rules badly in war with the Saxons, while Vortigern stands aside. Men who want Vortigern king murder Moine, and Vortigern is chosen in his place. The two younger sons are taken away to foreign lands in the east for fear of him.

Ore dist li contes que un roi avoit en Engletere qui avoit
Now says the tale that a king there-was in England who had
non Constans. Et icil Constans regna une grant pieche et
name Constans And that Constans reigned a great while and
si avoit trois fieus; si en ot un qui ot non Moines, et li
so had three sons so thereof had one who had name Moine and the
autres avoit non Pandragons, et li tiers Uters. Et si avoit
other had name Pendragon and the third Uther And so had
un senescal qui avoit non Vertigiers. Icil Vertigiers estoit
a seneschal who had name Vortigern That Vortigern was
moult sages et engingneus et bons chevaliers au tans qui
very wise and cunning and good knight at-the time which
estoit adont. Et Constans ala de vie a mort. Et quant
was then And Constans went from life to death And when
il fu mors, si demanderent de cui il feroient roi. Et li
he was dead so asked-they of whom they would-make king And the
plus s'acorderent que il le feroient de Moine. Et quant
most themselves-agreed that they it would-make of Moine And when
Moines fu rois, si ot guerre, et Vertigiers fu ses senescaus.
Moine was king so had war and Vortigern was his seneschal
Et li Saisne guerrioient le roi Moyne. Et cil qui estoient
And the Saxons warred the king Moine And those who were

de la loy de Romme vinrent pluiseurs fois combatre as
of the law of Rome came several times to-fight with-the
crestiiens. Et Vertigiers, qui estoit senescaus de la terre,
Christians And Vortigern who was seneschal of the land
faisoit dou tout a son plaisir. Et li enfes qui rois estoit
did of-the all at his pleasure And the child who king was
n'estoit pas si sages ne si preus que mestiers li fust. Et
not-was at-all so wise nor so worthy as need to-him were And
Vertigiers avoit moult de la terre trait a soi et les cuers
Vortigern had much of the land drawn to himself and the hearts
des gens, et sot bien que il le tenoient pour preu. Si
of-the folk and knew well that they him held for worthy So
li leva orguels, et dist, pour chou que il vit bien que
to-him rose pride and said for this that he saw well that
il n'estoit nus qui peust che faire que il faisoit, que il ne
it not-was anyone who could this do that he did that he not
s'entremeteroit plus de la guerre le roi, si s'en traist
himself-would-concern more with the war (of-)the king so himself-thence drew
arriere. Et quant li Saisne oirent dire que Vertigiers avoit la
back And when the Saxons heard say that Vortigern had the
guerre laissie, si assamblerent et vinrent a grant ost seur
war left so assembled and came with great host upon
les crestiiens. Et li rois Moynes vint a Vertigier et dist:
the Christians And the king Moine came to Vortigern and said
«Biaus amis, aidiés la terre a desfendre, car je et tout cil
Fair friend help the land to defend for I and all those
qui i sont sont en vostre volenté.» Et Vertigiers respont:
who there are are at your will And Vortigern answers
«Sire, or i aillent li autre, car je ne vous puis mais
Lord now there may-go the others for I not you can more
aidier. Car il a gens en vostre terre qui me heent pour
help For it has folk in your land who me hate for

vostre service. Ore si voel qu'il aient ceste bataille, que
your service Now so I-wish that-they may-have this battle for
je ne m'en entremetrai ja mais.» Quant li rois Moynes
I not me-thereof shall-concern ever more When the king Moine
et cil qui avoec lui estoient virent que il ne trouveroient
and those who with him were saw that they not would-find
autre chose en Vertigier, si s'en tornerent et alerent
other thing in Vortigern so themselves-thence turned and went
combatre as Saisnes. Et li Saisne se combatirent a
to-fight with-the Saxons And the Saxons themselves fought with
iaus, si les vainquirent. Et quant il les orent vaincus, si
them so them conquered And when they them had conquered so
s'en alerent et disent que il avoient tout perdu. Et
themselves-thence went and said that they had all lost And
disent que il n'eussent pas ceste perte faite se Vertigiers
said that they not-would-have at-all this loss made if Vortigern
i eust esté. Ensi remest. Et li enfes ne savoit pas si
there had been Thus remained-it And the child not knew at-all so
bien maintenir terre ne n'avoit le cuer des gens comme
well to-maintain land nor not-had the heart of-the folk as
mestiers li fust. Si l'aqueillirent li pluiseur en haine. Ensi
need to-him were So him-gathered the most in hatred Thus
remest une grant pieche. Et tant que li rois Moynes fu
remained-it a great while And so-much that the king Moine was
tenus a si malvais que il disent que il ne soufferroient
held for so bad that they said that they not would-suffer
plus sa malvaisté. Lors vinrent a Vertigier, se li disent:
more his badness Then came-they to Vortigern so to-him said
«Sire, nous sommes sans roi et sans signour, car chis
Lord we are without king and without lord for this
rois que nous avons ne vaut riens. Nous vous prions pour
king whom we have not is-worth anything We you pray for

Dieu que vous soiiés rois et si nous gouvernés. Car il n'est
God that you may-be king and so us may-govern For it not-is
nus hom en ceste terre qui si bien le puist avoir ne doie
any man in this land who so well it could have nor ought
comme vous.» Et Vertigiers respont: «Se il estoit mors et
as you And Vortigern answers If he were dead and
vous et li autre vausissiés que je fuisse rois, je le seroie
you and the others wished that I were king I it would-be
volentiers. Mais tant qu'il vive je ne le puis estre.» Cil
willingly But so-long that-he may-live I not it can be Those
oirent la parole Vertigier, si penserent chou que il vaurent.
heard the word (of-)Vortigern so thought this that they wished
Si s'en tornerent d'iluoc et prisent congié a lui.
So themselves-thence turned from-there and took leave of him

Quant cil furent venut en leur pais, si manderent de leur
When those were come into their country so sent-for of their
amis. Et quant lour ami furent venut, si parlerent ensamble.
friends And when their friends were come so spoke-they together
Et cil qui avoient esté a Vertigier lour dient comment il
And those who had been to Vortigern to-them say how they
avoient parlé a lui. Et quant lour ami oirent chou, si disent:
had spoken to him And when their friends heard this so said
«Chou est dou mieus a faire que nous l'ochions. Et quant
This is of-the best to do that we him-may-kill And when
nous l'arons ochis, si sera Vertigiers rois. Et puis savra
we him-shall-have killed so will-be Vortigern king And then will-know
que il le sera par nous, et que nous avrons mort le roi
that he it will-be by us and that we shall-have killed the king
Moyne pour lui, si fera tout chou que nous vaurrons. En
Moine for him so will-do all this that we shall-wish In
ceste maniere porrons nous tous jours mais estre seigneur de
this manner shall-be-able we all days more to-be lords of

lui.» Lors atornerent entr'aus li quel d'iaus l'ochirroient. Et
him Then arranged-they among-them the which of-them him-would-kill And
lors si en esliurent douze. Et icel douze s'en alerent
then so thereof chose twelve And those twelve themselves-thence went
la ou li rois Moynes estoit. Et li autre furent en la ville
there where the king Moine was And the others were in the town
pour chou, si on vausist a chiaus mal faire, qu'il lor
for this if one should-wish to those ill to-do that-they to-them
aidaissent. Et icil douze vinrent la ou il trouverent le roi
should-help And those twelve came there where they found the king
Moyne, se li coururent sus a coutiaus et as espees, si
Moine so to-him ran upon with knives and with-the swords so
l'ochirent. Et che fu tost fait, car il estoit jovenes enfes. Et
him-killed And this was soon done for he was young child And
quant il l'orent mort, si ne troverent pas qui granment en
when they him-had killed so not found at-all who much thereof
parlast. Et cil vinrent a Vertigier, se li disent: «Vertigiers,
should-speak And those came to Vortigern so to-him said Vortigern
or seras tu rois, car nous avons ochis le roi Moyne.»
now wilt-be thou king for we have killed the king Moine

Quant Vertigiers oi que il avoient mort leur signour, si
When Vortigern heard that they had killed their lord so
en fu moult irés. Et lor dist: «Signour, moult avés
thereof was much angered And to-them said Lords much have-you
mal fait de vostre signour ochirre. Et je vous lo que
ill done of your lord to-kill And I you advise that
vous en fuiiés pour les preudommes de la terre, car il
you thence may-flee for the worthy-men of the land for they
vous ochirront se il vous pueent tenir. Et il m'en poise
you will-kill if they you can hold And it me-thereof weighs
moult que vous estes chi venus.» Ensi s'en ralerent.
much that you are here come Thus themselves-thence went-back

Et ensi fu mors li rois Moines. Et apriès chou avint
And thus was dead the king Moine And after this befell
que les gens dou roiame s'assamblerent. Et quant il furent
that the folk of-the kingdom themselves-assembled And when they were
assamblé, si parlerent entr'aus de qui il feroient roi. Et
assembled so spoke among-them of whom they would-make king And
Vertigiers, si comme je vous ai dit, avoit les cuers des
Vortigern so as I you have said had the hearts of-the
gens et de la terre, si s'acorderent tout plainnement que
folk and of the land so themselves-agreed all fully that
Vertigiers fust rois. Ensi se sont acordé a Vertigier. A
Vortigern should-be king Thus themselves are agreed to Vortigern At
cel conseil ot deus preudommes qui gardoient les autres
that council there-were two worthy-men who guarded the other
deus enfans, Pendragon et Uter. Et cil doi enfant estoient
two children Pendragon and Uther And those two children were
fil Constant et frere au roy Moine qui mors estoit. Et
sons (of-)Constans and brothers to-the king Moine who dead was And
quant li preudomme oirent que Vertigiers seroit rois, si
when the worthy-men heard that Vortigern would-be king so
lour fu moult avis que il avoit fait le roi Moyne ochirre.
to-them was much opinion that he had made the king Moine kill
Si parlerent entr'aus et disent: «Si tost comme il sera
So spoke-they among-them and said So soon as he will-be
rois, si fera il ces deus enfans ochirre que nous gardons;
king so will-make he these two children kill whom we guard
et nous amames moult le pere, car il nous fist moult de
and we loved much the father for he to-us did many of
biens, et par lui avons nous encore chou que nous avons.
goods and by him have we still this that we have
Et moult seriesmes ore mauvais se nous ensi ces deus
And much would-we-be now bad if we thus these two

enfans laissiens perdre. Et nous savons bien que si tost que
children let perish And we know well that so soon as
Vertigiers sera rois, il les fera ochirre por chou que il
Vortigern will-be king he them will-make kill for this that he
set bien que li roiaumes doit estre leur, si les occhirroit
knows well that the kingdom ought to-be theirs so them would-kill
ains qu'il fuissent en aage dou demander lour terre.» Lors
before that-they were in age of-the asking their land Then
dient li doi preudomme et s'acorderent que il s'en
say the two worthy-men and themselves-agreed that they themselves-thence
iront et en merront les enfans en estranges terres viers
will-go and thence will-lead the children into foreign lands toward
orient, pour chou que de la estoient venu lour ancissour.
east for this that from there were come their ancestors
Ensi les garderoient, que Vertigiers ne les porroit ochire.
Thus them would-guard that Vortigern not them could kill
Tant firent que il en menerent les deus enfans. Et d'aus
So-much did-they that they thence led the two children And of-them
ne vous doi je mie plus parler tant que li drois contes
not you ought I at-all more to-speak until that the right tale
m'i ramaint. Mais tant puet on bien noter par cest
me-there may-bring-back But so-much can one well note by this
conte que on ne pert mie qui bien fait au preudomme.
tale that one not loses at-all who well does to-the worthy-man

The Tower That Would Not Stand

VII

Vortigern has Moine's twelve murderers torn apart by horses and drives out their kin. Hated by his people, he makes peace with the Saxons, marries Hengist's daughter, and builds a tower that falls three times. His clerks see only a fatherless child of seven by whom they must die, so they tell the king his blood will make the tower stand. Four messengers find Merlin, who tells them he is the child they have sworn to kill.

Chi endroit dist li contes que Vertigiers fu esleus a roi si
Here in-place says the tale that Vortigern was elected for king so
comme je vous ai conté. Et quant il fu sacrés et sires dou
as I you have told And when he was anointed and lord of-the
pais, si vinrent a lui cil qui le roy Moyne avoient ochis.
country so came to him those who the king Moine had killed
Et quant Vertigiers les vit, si ne fist onques nul samblant
And when Vortigern them saw so not made ever any semblance
que il les eust onques mais veus. Et cil s'embatirent seur
that he them had ever more seen And those themselves-thrust upon
lui et li commenchierent a reprochier que par iaus estoit
him and to-him began to reproach that by them was
il rois et que il avoient ochis le roi Moyne. Et quant
he king and that they had killed the king Moine And when
Vertigiers lour oi dire que il avoient occhis lour segnour,
Vortigern them heard say that they had killed their lord
si les commanda tous a prendre et dist: «Vous meisme
so them commanded all to take and said You yourselves
vous estes jugié, car vous n'aviés droit de lui ochirre. Et
you are judged for you not-had right of him to-kill And
autressi feriés vous de moi, se vous poiiés. Mais je m'en
likewise would-do you of me if you could But I me-thence

savrai moult bien garder.» Et quant cil oirent ceste parole,
shall-know very well guard And when those heard this word
si en furent moult espoenté, si disent a Vertigier: «Sire,
so thereof were much terrified so said to Vortigern Lord
nous le cuidames avoir fait por vostre pourfit, et pour
we it thought to-have done for your profit and for
chou que nous cuidiens que tu nous en amaisses mieus.»
this that we thought that thou us thereof wouldst-love better
Quant Vertigiers l'oi, si dist: «Signour, je vous mousterrai
When Vortigern it-heard so said Lords I you shall-show
comment on doit amer tés gens comme vous estes.» Atant
how one ought to-love such folk as you are Thereupon
les fist prendre tous douze, si les a fait liier a douze
them made take all twelve so them has made bind to twelve
chevaus, et tant les fist detraire que pau en remest
horses and so-much them made draw-apart that little thereof remained
ensamble. Quant cil furent mort, si avoient moult grant
together When those were dead so had very great
lignage qui vinrent a Vertigier, se li disent: «Vertigiers,
lineage who came to Vortigern so to-him said Vortigern
tu nous as fait moult grant honte, qui nos parens et
thou us hast done very great shame who our kinsmen and
nos amis avés ensi ochis et de si vilainne mort comme
our friends have thus killed and with so base death as
detraire as chevaus. Nous ne ferons jamais de boin gré
to-draw-apart with-the horses We not shall-do ever with good will
ton service.» Quant Vertigiers oi que cil le manechoient,
thy service When Vortigern heard that those him threatened
si en ot moult grant despit, si leur respondi et dist que
so thereof had very great spite so to-them answered and said that
se il en parloient, tout autretel feroit d'aus faire. Quant
if they thereof spoke all such would-do of-them to-do When

il l'oirent que il les manechoit, si en orent moult grant
they it-heard that he them threatened so thereof had very great
despit. Si li respondirent ireement, comme cil qui gaires
spite So to-him answered angrily as those who much
ne le doutoient, et disent: «Rois, tu manecheras canques
not him feared and said King thou wilt-threaten whatever
tu vaurras. Mais itant te disons que tant que nous
thou wilt-wish But so-much thee we-say that so-long as we
avrons nul ami ne te faurra guerre. Et de chi en avant
shall-have any friend not thee will-fail war And from here on forward
te desfions nous; car tu n'iés mie nos sires, ne le terre
thee defy we for thou not-art at-all our lord nor the land
ne tiens tu mie loiaument. Et saces que d'autretel mort
not holdest thou at-all loyally And know that of-such death
comme tu as fait morir nos parens te couverra morir.»
as thou hast made die our kinsmen thee will-behoove to-die
Et plus ne disent, si s'en vont. Et quant Vertigiers
And more not said-they so themselves-thence go And when Vortigern
sot que a morir l'en converroit, si en fu moult irés.
knew that to die him-thereof would-behoove so thereof was much angered
Ensi meut grans contenchons entre Vertigier et chiaus
Thus moved great quarrels between Vortigern and those
quels parens il avoit fait ochirre. Car cil amassent gent
whose kinsmen he had made kill For those gather folk
et entrent en la terre. Vertigiers tint la terre grant tans
and enter into the land Vortigern held the land great time
apriès, et maintes fois se combati a chiaus. Et tant
after and many-a times himself fought with those And so-much
s'i combati que il les gieta de la terre. Et quant il
himself-there fought that he them cast from the land And when they
furent fors, si devint Vertigiers si malvais a son peuple que
were out so became Vortigern so bad to his people that

il ne le porent souffrir, si revelerent tout contre li. Et
they not him could suffer so revolted all against him And
quant Vertigiers vit chou, si en fu tous espoentés que il
when Vortigern saw this so thereof was all terrified that they
ne le gietaissent fors de la terre. Si renvoia Vertigiers par
— him should-cast out of the land So sent Vortigern by
ses messages querre les Saisnes, et dist que il feroit pais
his messengers to-seek the Saxons and said that he would-make peace
a iaus. Et quant li Saisne oirent que Vertigiers requeroit
with them And when the Saxons heard that Vortigern sought
la pais, si en furent moult lié. Et de ces Saisnes en
the peace so thereof were very glad And of these Saxons thereof
i avoit un qui avoit non Hangus, et plus fier fu des
there had one who had name Hengist and more fierce was than-the
autres. Chis Hangus avoit servi longuement Vertigier. Et
others This Hengist had served long Vortigern And
tant le servi que Vertigiers vint au dessus de sa guerre.
so-much him served that Vortigern came on-the above of his war
Et quant sa guerre fu finée, si parla Hangus a lui, et li
And when his war was ended so spoke Hengist to him and to-him
dist que ses pueples le haoit moult. Tant fist Hangus
said that his people him hated much So-much did Hengist
et tant pourcacha que Vertigiers prist une soie fille a
and so-much contrived that Vortigern took a his daughter to
femme. Et sachent bien tout cil qui che conte orront que
wife And let-know well all those who this tale will-hear that
ce fu cele qui premierement dist en Engleterre garsoil. Je ne
it was she who first said in England wassail I not
vous doi ore plus parler de Hangus ne de son afaire; mais
you ought now more to-speak of Hengist nor of his affair but
moult furent dolant li crestiien quant il l'ot prise, et
much were sorrowful the Christians when he her-had taken and

disent maintes fois de teus i ot que il avoit grant partie
said many-a times of such there were that he had great part
laissiet de sa creanche pour sa feme, qui n'estoit pas de la
left of his faith for his wife who not-was at-all of the
loy Jesucrist. Après sot Vertigiers que il n'estoit pas bien
law (of-)Jesus-Christ After knew Vortigern that he not-was at-all well
amés de tous ses hommes. Et savoit que li fil Constant
loved by all his men And knew that the sons (of-)Constans
s'en estoient alé en estraingnes terres et que il
themselves-thence were gone into foreign lands and that they
repairroient au plus tost que il porroient. Et il sot bien
would-return at-the most soon that they could And he knew well
que si tost que il reverroient ou pais que che seroit
that so soon as they would-come-back into-the country that this would-be
por lui damage faire. Si se porpensa que il feroit
for him damage to-do So himself bethought that he would-make
une tour si haute et si forte que il n'averoit garde de
a tower so high and so strong that he not-would-have fear of
nul homme. Et quant il en orent trois toises u quatre
any man And when they thereof had three fathoms or four
faites par deseure terre, si chaoit tout jus. Ensi le fisent
made by above earth so fell all down Thus it did-they
trois fois, ce dit li contes des estoires, et trois fois chei.
three times this says the tale of-the histories and three times fell

Quant Vertigiers vit que sa tours ne porroit tenir, si en
When Vortigern saw that his tower not could hold so thereof
fu moult irés, et dist que ja mais n'avroit joie se il
was much angered and said that ever more not-would-have joy if he
ne savoit pour coi sa tours cheoit. Lors fist mander par
not knew for what his tower fell Then made-be summon through
toute sa terre tous les sages hommes, et il i vinrent. Et
all his land all the wise men and they there came And

quant il furent tout venu, si leur conta Vertigiers toute la
when they were all come so to-them told Vortigern all the
merveille de sa tour qui ensi chaoit, et que riens n'i
marvel of his tower which thus fell and that anything not-there
pooit durer que on i fesist. Si lour demanda Vertigiers
could last that one there might-make So to-them asked Vortigern
a tous conseil. Quant li preudoume oirent telle merveille
to all counsel When the worthy-men heard such marvel
et il virent l'uevre toute cheue, si s'en miervillierent
and they saw the-work all fallen so themselves-thereof marveled
moult et disent a Vertigier: «Sire, che ne puet nus savoir,
much and said to Vortigern Lord this not can anyone know
che nous est il avis, se il n'est clers. Mais li clerc sevent
this to-us is it opinion if he not-is clerk But the clerks know
moult par force de clergie que autre gent ne savroient mie.
much by force of learning that other folk not would-know at-all
Et se tu le veuls savoir, tu ne le pues savoir se par iaus
And if thou it wishest to-know thou not it canst know if by them
non.» Lors dist Vertigiers: «Il me samble que vous dites
not Then said Vortigern It to-me seems that you say
voir.» Atant fist mander tous les sages clers de par toute
true Thereupon made-he summon all the wise clerks from by all
sa terre. Et quant il furent tout venu, si lor moustra
his land And when they were all come so to-them showed
Vertigiers cele miervelle, et il disent li uns a l'autre: «Chou
Vortigern that marvel and they said the one to the-other This
est moult grant merveille que li rois nous a dite.» Et puis
is very great marvel that the king to-us has told And then
si traist li rois les plus sages a une part a conseil, si lour
so drew the king the most wise to one side to counsel so to-them
dist: «Signour, me savriés vous consillier pour coi ma
said Lords me would-know-how you counsel for what my

tour chiet? Car riens que je i puisse faire ne puet tenir
tower falls For anything that I there may do not can hold
ne durer. Si vous vaurroie a tous priier que vous mesissiés
nor last So you would-wish to all pray that you should-put
painne par coi je le seusse, que on m'a dit que je nel
pain by which I it should-know for one me-has said that I not-it
puis savoir se par vous non.» Quant li clerc oirent chou que
can know if by you not When the clerks heard this that
li rois leur requeroit, si disent: «Sire, nous n'en savons
the king them asked so said Lord we not-thereof know
riens, mais il a chi de teuls clers qui bien le porroient
anything but it has here of such clerks who well it could
savoir, s'il s'en voloient entremetre, par une art qui
know if-they themselves-thereof wished to-concern by an art which
a non astronomie.» Et li rois respont: «Vous meisme qui
has name astronomy And the king answers You yourselves who
chi estes, ki les connissiés mieus que je ne faich, si le
here are who them know better than I — do so it
sachiés entre vous li quel che sont. Et cil qui le savront
know among you the which these are And those who it will-know
ne s'en traient mie arriere, mais viegnent avant et
not themselves-thence may-draw at-all back but may-come forward and
dient hardiement. Et il ne m'en demanderont ja chose,
say boldly And they not me-thereof will-ask ever thing
mais que il dient pour coi elle chiet, que il n'avront.»
but that they say for what it falls that they not-will-have
Atant se traient li clerc a une part a conseil. Et
Thereupon themselves draw the clerks to one side to counsel And
demanderent li un a l'autre s'il en i a nul qui sache
asked the one to the-other if-it thereof there has any who may-know
de cele art. Lors en i a deus qui se traient avant
of that art Then thereof there has two who themselves draw forward

et dient que «nous en savons assés, che quidons, pour tel
and say that we thereof know enough this think-we for such
chose savoir. Et si a chi d'autres clers qui en sevent.»
thing to-know And so has here of-other clerks who thereof know
Et li preudomme dient: «Alés, si querés vos compaignons
And the worthy-men say Go so seek your companions
qui riens i pueent savoir.» Tant quisent que set en
who anything there can know So-much sought-they that seven thereof
i ot. Et de ces set n'i ot nul qui ne quidast estre
there had And of these seven not-there had any who not thought to-be
maistres a l'autre. Et ensi furent amenet devant le roi. Et
master to the-other And thus were brought before the king And
li rois lour demande se il quident que il lui sachent
the king to-them asks if they think that they to-him may-know
a dire pour coi sa tour chiet. Et il respondent que oil,
to say for what his tower falls And they answer that yes
se il doit estre seuu par nul homme. Et li rois dist que
if it ought to-be known by any man And the king said that
se il li dient, que il lor donra chou que il vaurront.
if they to-him say that he to-them will-give this that they will-wish
Ensi se departirent li rois et li clerc dou conseil. Et
Thus themselves parted the king and the clerks from-the council And
li set clerc demourerent, si s'entremisent moult de savoir
the seven clerks remained so themselves-undertook much of knowing
pour coi cele tours chiet et comment elle se porra
for what that tower falls and how it itself will-be-able
tenir. Cil set clerc furent moult sage de tel art et moult
hold These seven clerks were very wise in such art and much
i misent grant entente. Et com plus s'en penoient,
there put great attention And as more themselves-thereof toiled
et mains en savoient, et se n'i pooient riens trouver
and less thereof knew and so not-there could anything find

que une seule chose, et che que il i trouvoient ne
but one single thing and this that they there found not
tenoit riens a celle tour, che lour fu avis; si en furent
held anything to that tower this to-them was opinion so thereof were
moult espoenté. Et tant que li rois les hasta et les fist
much terrified And until that the king them hastened and them made
mander devant lui, si lor dist li rois: «Signour, que ne
summon before him so to-them said the king Lords why not
me dites vous chou que vous me devés dire?» Lors dient
me tell you this that you me ought to-tell Then say
li clerc: «Sire, che est moult grant chose que tu nous
the clerks Lord this is very great thing that thou us
demandes. Il convient que tu nous en donnes encore jour
askest It behooves that thou us thereof give still day
dusqu'a onze jors.» Et li rois lor dist: «Je voel que vous
until-to eleven days And the king to-them said I wish that you
l'aiiés. Regardés, si chier que vous avés vo cors, que vous
it-may-have Look as dear as you have your body that you
le me sachiés a dire au chief de onze jours.» Et il
it to-me may-know to tell at-the end of eleven days And they
respondent: «Si ferons nous sans faille.» Lors s'en
answer So shall-do we without fail Then themselves-thence
alerent a conseil et demanderent li uns a l'autre: «Seignour,
went to counsel and asked the one to the-other Lords
que dites vous de ceste chose?» Et il dient: «Nous n'en
what say you of this thing And they say We not-thereof
savons riens.» Ensi le demandent li uns a l'autre, ne li
know anything Thus it ask the one to the-other nor the
uns ne veult dire a l'autre chou que il set. Tant que il
one not wishes to-tell to the-other this that he knows Until that it
en i ot un qui estoit li plus sages d'iaus tous, si
thereof there had one who was the most wise of-them all so

lour dist: «Signour, faites le bien. Dites le moi tout a
to-them said Lords do it well Tell it me all in
conseil li uns sans l'autre che que il en set. Et je
counsel the one without the-other this that he thereof knows And I
n'en encuserai nul se par le conseil de tous ne le faich.»
not-thereof shall-accuse any if by the counsel of all not it I-do
Et il respondent tout que il l'otroient bien et volentiers.
And they answer all that they it-grant well and willingly

Atant traist cil qui estoit plus saiges de tous les autres
Thereupon drew he who was most wise of all the others
chascun a une part a conseil. Et demanda l'un après l'autre
each-one to one side to counsel And asked the-one after the-other
a chascun son avis. Et chascuns li dist autretel parole li
to each-one his opinion And each-one to-him said such word the
uns comme li autres, que il de la tour ne savoient riens,
one as the other that they of the tower not knew anything
mais il veoient une autre mierveille: que il veoient un
but they saw an other marvel that they saw a
enfant de set ans qui estoit nés sans pere d'oume terriien
child of seven years who was born without father of-man earthly
et conceus en une feme. Ceste parole disent tout li set
and conceived in a woman This word said all the seven
clerc. Et quant il les ot tous escoutés, si lor dist: «Venés
clerks And when he them had all listened-to so to-them said Come
tout devant moi ensamble.» Et il si firent. Et quant il
all before me together And they so did And when they
furent tout venu, si lour dist: «Seignour, vous avés tout dit
were all come so to-them said Lords you have all said
une parole et si m'avés une chose celee.» Et il li dient:
one word and so me-have a thing concealed And they to-him say
«Ore nous dites chou que nous vous avons dit et che que
Now us tell this that we you have said and this that

nous vous avons celé.» Et il lour dist: «Vous dites que vous
we you have concealed And he to-them said You say that you
ne savés riens de cele tour comment elle peust tenir. Mais
not know anything of that tower how it could hold But
vous avés veut un enfant de set ans qui est nés sans pere
you have seen a child of seven years who is born without father
d'oume terriien et concheus en feme. Ne vous tout ne m'avés
of-man earthly and conceived in woman Nor you all not me-have
dit autre chose. Et je vous dirai tant, que je voel que vous
said other thing And I you shall-tell so-much for I wish that you
m'en creés, qu'il n'i a nul de vous qui n'ait veut
me-thereof believe that-it not-there has any of you who not-may-have seen
qu'il doit par cel enfant morir. Et je meismes l'ai veut
that-he ought by that child to-die And I myself it-have seen
certainnement aussi comme uns autres de vous. Et che est
certainly also as a other of you And this is
la parole que vous m'avés celee. Mais a chou devons nous
the word that you me-have concealed But to this ought we
conseil metre dès que nous sommes tant devant nos mors.»
counsel to-put since that we are so-much before our deaths

Atant dist cil qui estoit plus sages d'aus tous: «Segnour,
Thereupon said he who was most wise of-them all Lords
se vous m'en volés croire, nous garderons bien nos vies.
if you me-thereof wish to-believe we shall-guard well our lives
Et vous savés bien se je vous ai dit voir.» Et cil dient
And you know well if I you have said true And those say
que il dist voir: «Ore vous prions pour Dieu que vous metés
that he said true Now you we-pray for God that you put
conseil en nos vies.» Et il respont: «Bien seroit ore faus qui
counsel in our lives And he answers Well would-be now false who
ne l'i saroit metre. Savés vous que nous ferons? Nous
not it-there would-know put Know you what we shall-do We

nous acorderons tout a une parole, et dirons que cele tours
ourselves shall-agree all to one word and shall-say that that tower
ne puet tenir ne ja mais ne tenra, se il n'a el mortier
not can hold nor ever more not will-hold if it not-has in-the mortar
del fondement mis del sanc a cel enfant qui est nés sans
of-the foundation put of-the blood of that child who is born without
pere; et qui porroit cel sanc avoir et metre ou mortier,
father and who could that blood have and put in-the mortar
si tenra la tours et sera tous jors mais bonne. Et ensi le
so will-hold the tower and will-be all days more good And thus it
die chascuns pour soi, que li rois ne s'aparchoive pas
may-say each-one for himself that the king not himself-may-perceive at-all
que nous avons tel chose esmeue. Et ensi nous porrons
that we have such thing stirred And thus we shall-be-able
nous garder de la mort et de chelui par cui nous
ourselves to-guard from the death and from him by whom we
avons veut que nous devons morir. Et faisons bien le roi
have seen that we ought to-die And let-us-make well the king
desfendre que il ja ne le voie, mais cil qui le querront
forbid that he ever — him may-see but those who him will-seek
l'ochient la ou il le trouveront, et le sanc de lui
him-may-kill there where they him will-find and the blood of him
aporteront au roi.» Ensi ont li clerc lour paroles acordées.
will-bring to-the king Thus have the clerks their words agreed
Et puis s'en vinrent devant le roi et li dient:
And then themselves-thence came before the king and to-him say
«Sire, nous ne vous dirons pas tout nostre sens ensamble,
Lord we not you shall-tell at-all all our sense together
mais cascuns par soi, si savrés li quels vous dira
but each-one by himself so will-you-know the which you will-tell
mieus.» En ceste maniere font li clerc samblant que li uns
best In this manner make the clerks semblance that the one

ne sace riens de l'autre. Ensi conte cascuns sa parole au
not may-know anything of the-other Thus tells each-one his word to-the
roi et as cinc hommes de son conseil avoec lui. Et quant
king and to-the five men of his council with him And when
il orent oie ceste mierveille, si s'en esmervillierent
they had heard this marvel so themselves-thereat marveled
moult, et dient que bien puet estre ceste chose voire, se
much and say that well can be this thing true if
che puet estre voirs que hom puist estre nés sans pere. Et
this can be true that man could be born without father And
li rois tint moult ses clers a sages, si lor dist: «Signour,
the king held much his clerks for wise so to-them said Lords
vous m'avés tout ceste parole dite et cascuns par soi. Or le
you me-have all this word said and each-one by himself Now it
nous retraiiés dont tout en apert.» Et li rois lour retraist
to-us recount then all in open And the king to-them recounted
tout mot a mot si comme il li orent conté. Et lors
all word for word so as they to-him had told And then
dient tout: «Sire, se che n'est voirs que nous vous avons dit,
say-they all Lord if this not-is true that we you have said
si faites de nous vostre commandement.» Et li rois lor
so do with us your commandment And the king to-them
demande se che puet estre voirs que nus hom puist naistre
asks if this can be true that any man could be-born
sans pere. Et cil respondent: «Nous n'en oismes onques
without father And those answer We not-thereof heard ever
mais parler que de cestui. Mais tant vous poons nous bien
more speak but of this-one But so-much you can we well
dire que chis est nés sans pere.» Et li rois lour dist que
say that this-one is born without father And the king to-them said that
il les feroit moult bien garder, et si envoieroit querre le
he them would-make very well guard and so would-send to-seek the

sanc de l'enfant. Et il dient lors: «Sire, nous le volons bien,
blood of the-child And they say then Lord we it wish well
mais que tu l'enfant n'oies ne ne voies. Et commande
but that thou the-child not-may-hear nor not may-see And command
que il soit ochis et que li sans de lui te soit aportés.
that he be killed and that the blood of him to-thee be brought
«En ceste maniere que nous t'avons dit tenra ta tours,
In this manner that we thee-have said will-hold thy tower
se elle doit ja mais tenir.» Li rois fist metre tous ses
if it ought ever more to-hold The king made put all his
clers en une forte maison et lour fist livrer chou que
clerks in a strong house and to-them made deliver this that
mestiers lour fu. Et prist ses messages et les envoia
need to-them was And took his messengers and them sent
par tout deus et deus. Et de ces messages i ot douze.
through all two and two And of these messengers there had twelve
Et lour fist li rois jurer sor sains que cil qui cel enfant
And them made the king swear upon relics that he who that child
porroit trouver que il l'occiroit et qu'il aporteroit le sanc
could find that he him-would-kill and that-he would-bring the blood
et que il ne revenroient dessi a tant que il l'aroient
and that they not would-come-back until to so-much that they him-would-have
trouvé. Ensi comme vous avés oi envoia querre li rois
found Thus as you have heard sent to-seek the king
Merlin. Li message se departirent doi et doi et quirent
Merlin The messengers themselves departed two and two and sought
par mainte terre et par maint pais, tant que doi des
through many-a land and through many-a country until that two of-the
messages trouverent les autres deus, et quant il s'en
messengers found the other two and when they themselves-thereof
furent entrecontré, si disent que il iroient une grant pieche
were met-each-other so said that they would-go a great while

ensamble. Ensi cavauchierent li message tout quatre, tant
together Thus rode the messengers all four until
que il avint chose que il passoient un jour par mi un
that it befell thing that they passed one day through mid a
grant camp a l'entree d'une vile. Et en cel camp avoit
great field at the-entrance of-a town And in that field there-was
une compaignie d'enfens qui choulloient. Et Merlins, qui
a company of-children who played-ball And Merlin who
toutes les choses savoit, i estoit et vit les messages le
all the things knew there was and saw the messengers (of-)the
roi Vertigier qui le queroient. Si se traist Merlins lés
king Vortigern who him sought So himself drew Merlin beside
un des plus riches enfans, pour chou que il savoit bien
one of-the most rich children for this that he knew well
que il le mesaesmeroit, si haucha la croche, si en feri
that he him would-insult so raised the crook so thereof struck
l'enfant en la gambe; et li enfes commencha a plourer
the-child on the leg and the child began to weep
et Merlin a laidengier et apieler fius sans pere. Quant
and Merlin to revile and to-call son without father When
li message qui le queroient oirent l'enfant ensi parler,
the messengers who him sought heard the-child thus speak
si alerent tout quatre viers l'enfant qui ploroit, si li
so went all four toward the-child who wept so to-him
demanderent: «Qui est cil qui t'a feru?» Et il dist: «C'est
asked Who is he who thee-has struck And he said It-is
li fieus d'une feme que onques ne seult qui l'engendra,
the son of-a woman who ever not knew who him-begot
ne onques n'ot pere.» Quant Merlins l'oi, si vint viers
nor ever not-had father When Merlin it-heard so came toward
les messages tout en riant et lour dist: «Signour, je sui
the messengers all in laughing and to-them said Lords I am

chieus que vous querés et que vous avés juré que vous
he whom you seek and whom you have sworn that you
ochirrés et devés porter mon sanc le roi Vertigier.»
will-kill and ought to-carry my blood (to-)the king Vortigern

Merlin Goes with the Messengers

VIII

Merlin promises to go with the messengers if they swear to bring him unharmed before the king. At his mother's house of nuns Blaise questions them and finds his story true. Merlin tells Blaise to go into Northumberland and write a book that will be called the book of the grail, and foretells a king named Arthur. He takes leave of his mother, and on the road they see a peasant carrying leather to mend his shoes for a pilgrimage.

Quant li message oirent parler ensi Merlin, si s'en
When the messengers heard speak thus Merlin so themselves-thereat
esmervillierent moult et en furent tout esbahi, et li
marveled much and thereof were all amazed and to-him
respondirent: «Qui t'a ce dit?» Et il respont: «Jel seuch
answered Who thee-has this said And he answers I-it knew
trés dont que vous le jurastes.» Et li message dient: «Verras
from then that you it swore And the messengers say Wilt-come
tu avoecques nous et nous t'en porterons?» Et Merlins
thou with us and we thee-thence shall-carry And Merlin
respont: «Signeur, je douteroie que ne m'ocesissiés.» Et il
answers Lords I would-fear that — me-you-should-kill And he
savoit bien que il n'en avoient talent, mais il le disoit
knew well that they not-thereof had desire but he it said
pour iaus mieus apenser. Et Merlins lour dit: «Signour,
for them better to-bethink And Merlin to-them says Lords

si vous me creantés que vous ne me ferés nul mal, je
if you me promise that you not me will-do any ill I
m'en irai avoec vous et se dirai au roi pour coi
me-thence shall-go with you and so shall-say to-the king for what
sa tours ne puet tenir, por coi vous veniés querre mon
his tower not can hold for which you came to-seek my
sanc.» Et quant il oirent chou que Merlins disoit, si en
blood And when they heard this that Merlin said so thereof
furent tout esbahi. Et dist li uns a l'autre: «Chis enfes
were all amazed And said the one to the-other This child
nous dist merveilles. Et moult feriens grant pechié se
us tells marvels And very would-we-do great sin if
nous l'ochiiemes.» Et chascuns dist: «Je m'en voel mieus
we him-killed And each-one said I me-thereof wish rather
parjurer.» Atant dist Merlins as messages: «Signeur, vous
to-perjure Thereupon said Merlin to-the messengers Lords you
verrés avoec moi herbegier la ou ma mere est. Car je
will-come with me to-lodge there where my mother is For I
ne porroie aler avoec vous sans le congiet de ma mere et
not could go with you without the leave of my mother and
sans le congiet au preudomme qui est avoec li.» Et li
without the leave of-the worthy-man who is with her And the
messages dient: «Nous irons volentiers la ou tu vaurras.»
messengers say We shall-go willingly there where thou wilt-wish
Ensi les mainne Merlins en une maison de nonains la
Thus them leads Merlin into a house of nuns there
ou il avoit fait rendre sa mere, si commanda a chiaus de
where he had made render his mother so commanded to those of
laiens que il fesissent biele chiere as messages le roi
in-there that they should-make fair face to-the messengers (of-)the king
Vertigier. Lors descendirent li message, et Merlins les en
Vortigern Then dismounted the messengers and Merlin them thence

mena devant Blaise et li dist: «Veés chi cheus que je
led before Blaise and to-him said See here those whom I
vous di que il me devoient venir querre pour ochirre.» Et
you said that they me ought to-come seek for to-kill And
Merlins dist as messages: «Signeur, je vous pri que vous
Merlin said to-the messengers Lords I you pray that you
dites voir a che preudomme de chou que je vous demanderai
say true to this worthy-man of this that I you shall-ask
sans faillir, et tant voel jou bien que vous sachiés, se
without failing and so-much wish I well that you may-know if
vous mentés, je le savrai bien.» Et li message respondent:
you lie I it shall-know well And the messengers answer
«Nous ne t'en mentirons ja; mais tu meismes li
We not thee-thereof shall-lie ever but thou thyself to-him
conte, qui mieuz sés parler de nul de nous, et nous
tell who better knowest speak than any of us and we
orrons bien se tu li diras nule mençonge.» Et Merlins
shall-hear well if thou to-him wilt-tell any lie And Merlin
dist a Blaise: «Or entent bien chou que nous te dirons.»
said to Blaise Now hear well this that we thee shall-tell
Lors dist Merlins: «Signour, vous estes au roi qui a non
Then said Merlin Lords you are to-the king who has name
Viertigiers. Et chis rois si fait faire une tour qui ne puet
Vortigern And this king so makes make a tower which not can
tenir, ains chiet tous jours. Et li rois manda clers pour
hold rather falls all days And the king summoned clerks for
savoir s'il en savoient riens pour coi elle cheoit. Si
to-know if-they thereof knew anything for what it fell So
li disent qu'il li ensegneroient bien comment elle
to-him said that-they to-him would-teach well how it
tenroit. Si gieterent leur sort, mais riens ne seurent de la
would-hold So cast their lot but anything not knew-they of the

tour pour coi elle cheoit, mais il sorent bien que j'estoie
tower for what it fell but they knew well that I-was
nés, si lor fu avis que je lour porroie bien nuire. Si
born so to-them was opinion that I them could well harm So
s'assamblerent ensamble et disent que il m'ochiroient par
themselves-assembled together and said that they me-would-kill by
chou que il diroient au roi que la tour terroit se il i
this that they would-say to-the king that the tower would-hold if it there
avoit de mon sanc qui estoie nés sans pere. Et Vertigiers,
had of my blood who was born without father And Vortigern
quant il oi ceste chose, se li vint a grant mierveille,
when he heard this thing so to-him came to great marvel
et quida que il dessissent voir. Et commanderent au roi
and thought that they said true And commanded to-the king
que il me fesist querre tant que je fuisse trouvés. Et
that he me should-make seek until that I were found And
disent au roi que il desfendist as messages que il ne
said to-the king that he should-forbid to-the messengers that they not
m'amenaissent mie devant lui, et si tost qu'il m'aroient
me-should-bring at-all before him and so soon as-they me-would-have
trové qu'il m'ochesissent et portaissent le sanc de moi
found that-they me-should-kill and should-carry the blood of me
por metre el mortier de la tour. Et par ceste raison
for to-put in-the mortar of the tower And by this reason
dient que elle tenroit. Et Vertigiers prist douze messages, si
say-they that it would-hold And Vortigern took twelve messengers so
lor fist jurer a tous que il m'ochirroient si tost que il
to-them made swear to all that they me-would-kill so soon as they
m'aroient trouvé et li aporteroient le sanc de moi. Ensi
me-would-have found and to-him would-bring the blood of me Thus
s'en alerent li message doi et doi. Et cist quatre
themselves-thence went the messengers two and two And these four

se sont entrecontré et s'embatirent la u j'estoie. Et
themselves are met-each-other and themselves-came there where I-was And
pour chou que je savoie bien que il me queroient me
for this that I knew well that they me sought me
fis jou connoistre a iaus par un enfant que je feri pour
made I known to them by a child whom I struck for
chou que il me nommast. Ensi m'ont trouvé comme
this that he me should-name Thus me-have-they found as
vous avés oi. Or lour demandés se je di voir.» Et Blaises
you have heard Now them ask if I say true And Blaise
lour demande, et il dient que ensi est il. Et li messagier
them asks and they say that thus is it And the messengers
content a Blaise que tout ensi comme il a conté dou roi
tell to Blaise that all thus as he has told of-the king
et des clers ensi est il. Et Blaises se saigna et dist:
and of-the clerks thus is it And Blaise himself crossed and said
«Se cil enfes vit par aage, il sera moult sages. Et si seroit
If this child lives by age he will-be very wise And so would-be
moult grans damages si vous l'aviés ochis.» Et li message
very great damage if you him-had killed And the messengers
dient: «Sire, nous ameriemes mieus a estre parjuré et que li
say Lord we would-love better to be perjured and that the
rois nous tausist tous nos yretages. Et il meismes, qui
king from-us should-take-away all our heritages And he himself who
les autres choses set, set bien se nous en avons talent.»
the other things knows knows well if we thereof have desire
Et Blaises dist: «Vous dites voir. Et je li demanderai ja
And Blaise said You say true And I him shall-ask already
voiant vous.» Lors apiele Blaises Merlin qui s'en estoit
seeing you Then calls Blaise Merlin who himself-thence was
alés pour chou que il voloit que il parlaissent ensamble,
gone for this that he wished that they should-speak together

et li dist tout ensi comme il li ont conté. Et
and to-him said all thus as they to-him have told And
Merlins respont: «Il ont voir dit.» Et Blaises li demande
Merlin answers They have true said And Blaise him asks
se il ont talent de lui ochirre. Et Merlins rist et dist:
if they have desire of him to-kill And Merlin laughed and said
«Nennil encore.» Et li message dient: «Vous dites voir.»
No yet And the messengers say You say true
Et il li dient: «Merlins, frere, verras tu avoec?» Et il
And they to-him say Merlin brother wilt-come thou with And he
dit: «Oil, se vous me creantés que vous me menrés devant
says Yes if you me promise that you me will-lead before
le roi et que vous ne soufferrés que nus maus me soit
the king and that you not will-suffer that any ill to-me be
fais devant que jou aie au roi parlet. Et je sai bien
done before that I may-have to-the king spoken And I know well
que quant jou averai a li parlé, je n'avrai garde.»
that when I shall-have to him spoken I not-shall-have fear

Ensi creanterent li message a Merlin chou que il lour
Thus promised the messengers to Merlin this that he to-them
ot dit. Et Blaises dist: «Merlins, or voi je bien que tu
had said And Blaise said Merlin now see I well that thou
me veuls laissier. Or me di que tu veuls que je face de
me wishest to-leave Now me say what thou wishest that I may-do with
ceste oevre que tu m'as fait commenchier.» Et Merlins
this work that thou me-hast made begin And Merlin
respont: «Je t'en dirai: tu vois bien que Dieus m'a
answers I thee-thereof shall-tell thou seest well that God me-has
donné tant de sens et de memoire que chis qui me quida
given so-much of sense and of memory that he who me thought
avoir fait a son oes m'a pierdu, et que nostre sires m'a
to-have made for his use me-has lost and that our lord me-has

eslit a son service faire, et que nus hom ne puet faire che
chosen to his service to-do and that any man not can do this
que je faich se je non. Et vois bien que il m'en convient
that I do if I not And seest well that it me-thereof behooves
aler avoec iaus au roi. Et quant je i serai serai li plus
to-go with them to-the king And when I there shall-be shall-be the most
creus hom qui onques fust en terre fors Dieus. Et tu i
believed man who ever was on earth except God And thou there
verras pour acomplir chou que tu as commenchié. Mais
wilt-come for to-accomplish this that thou hast begun But
tu ne verras mie avoecques moi, ains t'en verras par
thou not wilt-come at-all with me rather thee-thence wilt-come by
toi. Et demanderas une terre que on apiele Norhomberlande.
thyself And wilt-ask a land that one calls Northumberland
Et cele terre si est plainne de moult grans forès, et si est
And that land so is full of very great forests and so is
moult estrange, car il i a de teus parties la u on
very strange for it there has of such parts there where one
n'a encore esté. Et la converseras, et je irai souvent a
not-has still been And there wilt-dwell and I shall-go often to
toi, et te dirai toutes les choses dont tu avras mestier
thee and thee shall-tell all the things whereof thou wilt-have need
a cele oevre faire que tu fais. Et bien t'en deveras
for that work to-do that thou doest And well thee-thereof oughtest
travillier, et tu en averas moult bon loiier. Et sés
to-toil and thou thereof wilt-have very good reward And knowest
tu quel? tu averas a ta vie acomplissement de ton cuer
thou what thou wilt-have in thy life fulfillment of thy heart
et apriès la fine joie pardurable. Et ton oevre sera retraite
and after the fine joy everlasting And thy work will-be recounted
tant comme cis siecles duerra et volentiers oie. Et sés
so-long as this world will-last and willingly heard And knowest

tu dont ceste grace te verra? Elle verra de la grasce
thou whence this grace thee will-come It will-come from the grace
que nostre sires donna a Joseph, a cui il fu donnés en
that our lord gave to Joseph to whom he was given on
la crois. Quant tu seras bien travilliés pour li et pour
the cross When thou wilt-be well toiled for him and for
ses ancisseurs et pour les hoirs qui de son lingnage sont
his ancestors and for the heirs who from his lineage are
issu et tu avras tant de boine oevre faite que tu doies
issued and thou wilt-have so-much of good work done that thou mayest
estre en leur compaignie, je t'ensegnerai la ou il sont,
be in their company I thee-shall-teach there where they are
et verras les glorieuses saudees que Joseph eut pour le
and wilt-see the glorious wages that Joseph had for the
cors Jesucrist qui li fu donnés. Et je voel que tu
body (of-)Jesus-Christ which to-him was given And I wish that thou
saces, pour toi faire plus certain que Dieus m'a donné
mayest-know for thee to-make more certain that God me-has given
tel sens, que je ferai de tout le regne la u jou irai
such sense that I shall-make of all the realm there where I shall-go
travillier les preudommes encontre un qui doit estre de cel
toil the worthy-men against one who ought to-be of that
lignage que Dieus tant aime. Mais je voel bien que tu
lineage which God so-much loves But I wish well that thou
saches que cist grant travail ne seront devant le quart
mayest-know that these great toils not will-be before the fourth
roi. Et cil rois a cui tans cil grant travail seront avra
king And that king in whose time these great toils will-be will-have
non Artus. Et tu t'en iras la ou je t'ai dit, et
name Arthur And thou thee-thence wilt-go there where I thee-have said and
jou irai souvent a toi et te porterai toutes ces choses
I shall-go often to thee and thee shall-carry all these things

que je vaurai que tu metes en ton livre. Et saches tu
that I shall-wish that thou may-put in thy book And know thou
que tes livres sera encore moult amés et prisiés de maintes
that thy book will-be still much loved and prized by many-a
gens qui ja ne l'averont veut. Et quant tu l'averas fait,
folk who ever not it-will-have seen And when thou it-wilt-have made
si le porteras en la compaignie de ces boines gens qui ont
so it wilt-carry into the company of these good folk who have
ces glorieuses saudees dont je t'ai parlé. Ne il n'avra
these glorious wages of-which I thee-have spoken Nor it not-will-have
personne en ces parties ou je m'en vois que je ne te
person in these parts where I me-thence go that I not thee
face metre auchune partie de sa vie de boins. Et saces
may-make put some part of his life of goods And know
que onques nule vie de jans plus volentiers ne fu oie que
that ever any life of folk more willingly not was heard than
sera cele de che roi qui avra non Artus et des gens
will-be that of this king who will-have name Arthur and of-the folk
qui a ce tans regneront. Et quant tu averas tout chou
who at this time will-reign And when thou wilt-have all this
acompli et lor vies retraites, si averas deservi tout chou
accomplished and their lives recounted so wilt-have deserved all this
que il ont qui sont en la compaignie dou vaissiel que
that they have who are in the company of-the vessel that
on claimme graal. Et tes livres, por chou que tu en as
one calls grail And thy book for this that thou thereof hast
fait et feras de moi et d'aus, quant tu seras alés et
made and wilt-make of me and of-them when thou wilt-be gone and
mors, si avra a non tous jours mais li livres dou graal,
dead so will-have as name all days more the book of-the grail

et sera moult volentiers ois. Car il i avera moult peu
and will-be very willingly heard For it there will-have very few
de choses faites et dites qui ne soient pourfitables.»
of things done and said which not may-be profitable
Ensi parla Merlins a son maistre Blaise et li ensegna
Thus spoke Merlin to his master Blaise and to-him taught
que il devoit faire. Et Merlins le clama maistre pour chou
what he ought to-do And Merlin him called master for this
que il avoit esté maistres sa mere. Et li preudom quant
that he had been master (of-)his mother And the worthy-man when
il oi Merlin ensi parler, si en fu moult liés, et dist:
he heard Merlin thus speak so thereof was very glad and said
«Merlins, tu ne me commanderas ja chose a faire que je
Merlin thou not me wilt-command ever thing to do that I
ne le face.» Ensi a Merlins atorné son oirre a son maistre.
not it may-do Thus has Merlin arranged his journey with his master
Et parole as messages qui sont venu pour lui querre,
And speaks to-the messengers who are come for him to-seek
et lour dist: «Signours, venés avoec moi et s'oiiés le
and to-them said Lords come with me and so-may-you-hear the
commandement de moi et le congié de ma mere.» Et il le
command of me and the leave of my mother And they it
font. Lors dist Merlins a sa mere: «On m'est venut querre
do Then said Merlin to his mother One me-is come seek
de lontaingnes terres, si i voel aler par vostre congié. Car
from distant lands so there I-wish to-go by your leave For
il me convient rendre a Jhesucrist le service que il m'a
it me behooves to-render to Jesus-Christ the service that he to-me-has
donné por lui servir, ne je ne li puis rendre se je ne m'en
given for him to-serve nor I not to-him can render if I not me-thence
vois en icele terre la ou cil preudomme me voelent mener.
go into that land there where these worthy-men me wish to-lead

Et Blaises nostre maistres s'en ira, et si vous convient
And Blaise our master himself-thence will-go and so you behooves
de nous deus desevrer.» Et la mere dist: «Biaus fieus, a
from us two to-part And the mother said Fair son to
Dieu soiiés vous commandés. Car je ne sui pas si sage que
God be you commended For I not am at-all so wise that
je vous doive retenir. Mais se il vous pleust, je vausisse bien
I you ought to-retain But if it you pleased I would-wish well
que Blaises remansist.» Et Merlins dist: «Che ne puet estre.»
that Blaise should-remain And Merlin said This not can be

Ensi prist Merlins congiet a sa mere, et s'en va
Thus took Merlin leave of his mother and himself-thence goes
avoec les messages. Et Blaises s'em part et s'en
with the messengers And Blaise himself-thence departs and himself-thence
va d'autre part en Norhomberlande, ou Merlins li ot
goes on-the-other side into Northumberland where Merlin to-him had
commandé. Et Merlins et li message chevauchent ensamble.
commanded And Merlin and the messengers ride together
Et chevauchent tant ensamble un jour que il passerent
And ride so-much together one day that they passed
par mi une ville. Et en celle ville avoit marchiet. Et
through mid a town And in that town there-was market And
quant il orent la ville passee, si virent un vilain qui avoit
when they had the town passed so saw a peasant who had
achaté uns grans sollers et si em portoit le cuir a ses
bought some great shoes and so thence carried the leather to his
sollers affaitier, car il voloit aler en pelerinage.
shoes to-mend for he wished to-go on pilgrimage

Merlin's Laughter

IX

Merlin says the peasant will be dead before he reaches home, and two messengers see him fall dead on the road. At a child's burial he laughs again, because the priest singing over the child is its father. A day from Vortigern's court he sends the messengers ahead; the king comes out to meet him, and Merlin offers to show why the tower falls if the king will deal with the clerks as they meant to deal with him.

Quant Merlins vit le vilain, si en rist. Et li message qui
When Merlin saw the peasant so thereof laughed And the messengers who
le menoient li demanderent pour coi il avoit ris. Et
him led to-him asked for what he had laughed And
Merlins dist: «Pour che vilain que vous veés chi. Ore li
Merlin said For this peasant whom you see here Now him
demandés que il veut faire de che cuir que il em porte,
ask what he wishes to-do with this leather that he thence carries
et il vous dira que il en vaurra ses sollers affaitier. Et
and he you will-tell that he thereof will-wish his shoes to-mend And
vous le sivrés, et je vous di que il sera mors avant que
you him will-follow and I you say that he will-be dead before that
il viegne en sa maison.» Et quant li message l'oirent, si
he may-come into his house And when the messengers it-heard so
le tinrent a grant merveille. Et il dient: «Chou ariens
it held for great marvel And they say This would-have
nous volentiers veut se che puet estre voirs.» Lors alerent
we willingly seen if this can be true Then went
li message au vilain, se li disent que il voloit faire
the messengers to-the peasant so to-him said what he wished to-do
de ces sollers et de che cuir que il portoit. Et il lour
with these shoes and with this leather that he carried And he to-them

dist que il voloit aler em pelerinage, si en voloit ses
said that he wished to-go on pilgrimage so thereof wished his
sollers afaitier. Et quant il oirent chou que il lour dist
shoes to-mend And when they heard this that he to-them said
que Merlins avoit dit, si en orent moult grant merveille.
which Merlin had said so thereof had very great marvel
Et dient: «Chis hom nous samble estre tous sains et tous
And say This man to-us seems to-be all sound and all
haitiés. Nous le sivrons li doi de nous, et li autre voisent
hale We him shall-follow the two of us and the others may-go
le leur chemin et nous atengent la ou il gerront. Car
the their road and us may-await there where they will-lie For
il feroit moult boin a savoir ceste merveille.» Ensi alerent
it would-be very good to know this marvel Thus went
li doi message apriès le vilain. Et le sivirent tant que il
the two messengers after the peasant And him followed so-much that he
n'ot pas alé plus de demie liue quant il virent le vilain
not-had at-all gone more than half league when they saw the peasant
cheoir tout mort en mi la voie, ses saullers en son brach.
fall all dead in mid the way his shoes in his arm
Et quant il l'orent bien veut et esgardé, si s'en
And when they him-had well seen and looked-at so themselves-thence
tornerent et atainsent lour compaignons, si lour content la
turned and overtook their companions so to-them tell the
merveille dou vilain. Et quant li compaignon oirent chou,
marvel of-the peasant And when the companions heard this
si dirent que «moult firent li clerc que fol qui quiderent
so said that much did the clerks as mad who thought
que nous ochesissons si preudomme et si sage enfant
that we should-kill so worthy and so wise child
comme chis est!» Et li autre dient que il vaurroient
as this-one is And the others say that they would-wish

mieus avoir fait grant meschief de leur cors que il par
better to-have done great harm to their body than-that he by
iaus presist mort. Ceste parole orent dite a conseil, car
them should-take death This word had-they said in counsel for
il ne quidierent mie que Merlins le seust. Et quant il
they not thought at-all that Merlin it knew And when they
vinrent devant Merlin, si les merchia moult de chou que
came before Merlin so them thanked much for this that
il avoient dit. Et il li demanderent: «Qu'en avons
they had said And they to-him asked What-thereof have
nous dit?» Et Merlins lour conte la parole ensi comme
we said And Merlin to-them tells the word thus as
il l'avoient dite; et quant cil l'oirent, si disent: «Nous
they it-had said and when those it-heard so said We
ne poons riens dire que il ne sache.»
not can anything say that he not may-know

Ensi chevauchierent par lor jornees tant que il furent
Thus rode-they by their days'-journeys until that they were
ou pooir Vertigier. Un jour avint que il passoient par
in-the power (of-)Vortigern One day befell that they passed through
une ville, si avint que on i portoit un enfant enterer.
a town so befell that one there carried a child to-bury
Si avoit après le cors moult grant duel d'ommes et de
So there-was after the body very great grief of-men and of
femes. Et Merlins vit che duel et les prouvoires et les
women And Merlin saw this grief and the priests and the
clers qui chantoient et qui portoient le cors entierer moult
clerks who sang and who carried the body to-bury very
vistement, si commencha a rire et s'arrestut. Et li message
quickly so began to laugh and himself-stopped And the messengers
li demanderent pour coi il rioit. Et Merlins dist: «Veés
to-him asked for what he laughed And Merlin said See

vous che preudomme qui la fait tel duel? et veés vous
you this worthy-man who there makes such grief and see you
che prevoire qui la chante devant les autres? Il deust le
this priest who there sings before the others He ought the
duel faire que li preudom fait.» Et li message dient: «Pour
grief to-make that the worthy-man makes And the messengers say For
coi?» Et Merlins lor respont: «Le volés vous savoir?»
what And Merlin to-them answers It wish you to-know
Et il dient: «Oil.» «Je voel bien,» fait Merlins, «que vous
And they say Yes I wish well says Merlin that you
le saciés: que li enfes est ses fieus pour qui il chante.
it may-know that the child is his son for whom he sings
Et li preudom cui il n'apartient en fait duel, et cil
And the worthy-man to-whom he not-belongs thereof makes grief and he
qui fieus il est chante. Si m'est avis que chou est grant
whose son he is sings So to-me-is opinion that this is great
miervelle.» Et li message demanderent Merlin: «Comment
marvel And the messengers asked Merlin How
porrons nous che savoir?» Et Merlins dist: «Alés a la feme,
shall-be-able we this to-know And Merlin said Go to the woman
se li demandés por quoi ses sires pleure et fait si grand
so to-her ask for what her lord weeps and makes so great
duel. Et elle dira pour son fil qui est mors. Et vous li
grief And she will-say for her son who is dead And you to-her
dirés: «Dame, aussi bien sa je quels fieus il est que vous
will-say Lady as well know I whose son he is as you
faites. Il n'est pas ses fieus, ains est fieus a che prouvoire
do He not-is at-all his son rather is son to this priest
qui la chante, si que li prestres meismes le set bien.» Et
who there sings so that the priest himself it knows well And
que il meismes vous conta le terme que il fut engendrés.»
that he himself you told the term that he was begotten

Quant li message orent entendu chou que Merlins lour
When the messengers had heard this that Merlin to-them
a dit, si s'en alerent a la feme et li conterent
has said so themselves-thence went to the woman and to-her told
chou que Merlins lor avoit dit. Et quant la feme oi
this that Merlin to-them had said And when the woman heard
chou, si en fu moult espoentee, et lour dist: «Biau
this so thereof was very terrified and to-them said Fair
signour, por Dieu mierchi. Je sai bien que je ne le vous
lords for God mercy I know well that I not it you
puis celer, si vous en dirai tout le voir. Il est voirs
can conceal so you thereof shall-tell all the truth It is true
tout ensi que vous l'avés dit. Mais por Dieu nel dites pas
all thus as you it-have said But for God not-it tell at-all
mon signour, que il m'ochiroit se il le savoit.» Et quant
(to-)my lord for he me-would-kill if he it knew And when
cil oirent chou, si s'en vinrent et le disent a lour
those heard this so themselves-thence came and it told to their
compaignons. Lors dient entr'aus que il n'ot onques el
companions Then say-they among-them that it not-had ever in-the
monde millour devin. Ensi chevauchierent entre Merlin et
world better seer Thus rode between Merlin and
les messages, tant que il vinrent a une jornee près de
the messengers until that they came to a day's-journey near of
la ou Vertigiers estoit. Et lors disent li message: «Merlins,
there where Vortigern was And then said the messengers Merlin
tu nous deusses bien consillier, que nous porons bien dire
thou us oughtest well to-counsel for we shall-be-able well say
que nous t'avons trové, mais nous nous doutons por chou
that we thee-have found but we ourselves fear for this
que nous ne t'avons ochis que nous n'en aions son mal
that we not thee-have killed that we not-thereof may-have his ill

gré.» Quant Merlins oi chou, si sot bien que il voloient
will When Merlin heard this so knew well that they wished
son preu. Et lour dist: «Signour, faites le ensi que je vous
his profit And to-them said Lords do it thus as I you
loerai, si n'en averés ja blasme: alés a Vertigier et li
shall-advise so not-thereof will-have ever blame go to Vortigern and to-him
dites que vous m'avés trové. Et se li contés le voir que
say that you me-have found And so to-him tell the truth that
vous m'avés oi dire. Et li dites que je li mousterrai
you me-have heard say And to-him say that I to-him shall-show
bien por coi sa tours ne puet tenir, par covant qu'il face
well for what his tower not can hold by covenant that-he may-do
autretant des clers qui me voloient faire ochirre que
as-much with-the clerks who me wished to-make kill as
il voloient que on fesist de moi. Et quant vous li
they wished that one should-do with me And when you to-him
avrés che dit, si faites chou que il vous dira seurement.»
will-have this said so do this that he you will-say securely
Li message s'en tornerent et s'en alerent a
The messengers themselves-thence turned and themselves-thence went to
Vertigier. Et quant il les vit, si en fu moult liés. Et
Vortigern And when he them saw so thereof was very glad And
lor demanda: «Signour, comment avés vous esploitié?»
to-them asked Lords how have you sped
Et li message respondent: «Sire, au mieus que nous
And the messengers answer Lord at-the best that we
poons.» Lors apielerent Vertigier a conseil et li conterent
can Then called-they Vortigern to counsel and to-him told
toute l'uevre si comme il l'ont trouvee, et comment il
all the-work so as they it-have found and how they
trouverent Merlin, et se il vausist, il ne l'eussent jamais
found Merlin and if he had-wished they not him-would-have ever

trouvé. «Et il vint moult volentiers a vous.» Et li rois dist:
found And he came very willingly to you And the king said
«Dou quel Merlin dites vous dont? Ne deustes vous dont
Of-the which Merlin speak you then Not ought you then
querre l'enfant sans pere et me deviés vous aporter le sanc
to-seek the-child without father and me ought you to-bring the blood
de lui?» Et il respondent: «Sire, c'est icil Merlins que
of him And they answer Lord it-is that Merlin of-whom
nous disons qui est nés sans pere. Et saces bien que c'est
we speak who is born without father And know well that it-is
li plus sage et li mieudres devins qui onques fust en cest
the most wise and the best seer who ever was in this
siecle fors Dieus. Sire, tout ensi que vous le nous fesistes
world except God Lord all thus as you it us made
jurer que nous l'ochieriemes le nous dist il. Et dist bien que
swear that we him-would-kill it us said he And said well that
li clerc ne sevent riens pour coi votre tours chiet. Mais
the clerks not know anything for what your tower falls But
il le vous mousterra si que vous le verrés a vos ieus tout
he it you will-show so that you it will-see with your eyes all
apertement pour coi la tours chiet. De trop grans autres
openly for what the tower falls Of very great other
mierveilles nous a il dites. Et nous a envoiié pour savoir
marvels us has he told And us has sent for to-know
se vous volés parler a lui. Et se volés, nous l'ochirrons bien
if you wish to-speak to him And if you-wish we him-shall-kill well
la ou il est. Et doi de nos compaignons sont avoec lui
there where he is And two of our companions are with him
qui le gardent.» Et quant Vertigiers oi les messages ensi
who him guard And when Vortigern heard the messengers thus
parler, si dist a eus: «Signeur, se vous volés Merlin raplegier
speak so said to them Lords if you wish Merlin to-pledge

seur vos vies que il vous mousterra et moi pour coi ma
upon your lives that he you will-show and me for what my
tours chiet, je ne voel pas ore que il soit ochis.» Et li
tower falls I not wish at-all now that he be killed And the
message dient: «Nous le plegerons bien.» Et li rois dist:
messengers say We him shall-pledge well And the king said
«Et dont l'alés querre, car je voel moult volentiers parler a
And then him-go seek for I wish very willingly to-speak to
lui.» Lors s'en ralerent li message et li rois meismes
him Then themselves-thence went-back the messengers and the king himself
avoec iaus. Et quant Merlins vit venir les deus messages, si
with them And when Merlin saw come the two messengers so
rist, et lour dist: «Signour, vous m'avés plegié seur vos
laughed and to-them said Lords you me-have pledged upon your
vies.» Et il respondent: «Vous dites voir. Nous volons mieus
lives And they answer You say true We wish better
estre en aventure de mort que nous t'ochions. Et il nous
to-be in hazard of death than-that we thee-may-kill And it us
en convint l'un faire.» Et Merlins respont: «Signeur, je
thereof behooved the-one to-do And Merlin answers Lords I
vous en garderai bien, se Dieu plaist, de chou.» Ensi
you thereof shall-guard well if God please from this Thus
chevauchierent entre Merlin et les messages contre le roi
rode between Merlin and the messengers toward the king
tant que il encontrerent le roi. Et quant Merlins le vit,
until that they met the king And when Merlin him saw
si le salua et dist: «Vertigiers, parlés a moi en conseil.»
so him greeted and said Vortigern speak with me in counsel
Si se traist a une part et apiele les messages qui l'orent
So himself drew to one side and calls the messengers who him-had
amené. Et quant il furent a conseil, si dist Merlins au
brought And when they were in counsel so said Merlin to-the

roi: «Sire, vous m'avés fait querre pour vostre tour qui ne
king Lord you me-have made seek for your tower which not
puet tenir, et commandastes a chiaus qui me vinrent querre
can hold and commanded to those who me came to-seek
que il m'ochesissent la ou il me trouvaissent, par le
that they me-should-kill there where they me should-find by the
conseil des clers qui disoient que la tours ne porroit tenir
counsel of-the clerks who said that the tower not could hold
se il n'i avoit de mon sanc el mortier. Mais il vous
if it not-there had of my blood in-the mortar But they you
mentirent. Mais se il vous eussent dit que elle deust tenir
lied But if they you had said that it ought to-hold
par mon sens, il eussent voir dit. Et se vous me volés
by my sense they would-have true said And if you me wish
creanter que ferés autretant des clers que il voloient
to-promise that will-you-do as-much with-the clerks as they wished
que on fesist de moi, je vous mousterroie por coi vostre
that one should-do with me I you would-show for what your
tours ne puet tenir et vous ensegnerai, se vous le volés
tower not can hold and you shall-teach if you it wish
faire, comment elle tenra.» Et Vertigiers respont et dist
to-do how it will-hold And Vortigern answers and said
a Merlin: «Se tu me moustres chou que tu me dois
to Merlin If thou me showest this that thou me oughtest
moustrer, je feroie des clers chou que tu vaurroies.» Et
to-show I would-do with-the clerks this that thou wouldst-wish And
Merlins dist au roi: «Se jou en ment de parole tant
Merlin said to-the king If I thereof lie by word so-much
soit petite, si ne me creés ja mais. Alons, si faites
may-it-be little so not me believe ever more Let-us-go so make

venir les clers. Et je lor demanderai pour coi la tours
come the clerks And I them shall-ask for what the tower
chiet. Et vous orrés que il n'en savront raison rendre.»
falls And you will-hear that they not-thereof will-know reason to-render

The Two Dragons

X

The clerks confess they sought his death because they foresaw they would die by him. Merlin finds a water under the tower and two dragons beneath it, one white and one red, which fight all night, all day, and the next morning until noon, when the white burns the red. Merlin spares the clerks and explains that the red is Vortigern and the white Constans' sons, who will land at Winchester and burn him. They land, and Vortigern dies in his burning castle.

Ore dist li contes que ensi amena li rois Merlin dusques
Now says the tale that thus led the king Merlin until
a la tour qui se cheoit. Et li clerc furent mandé et
to the tower which itself fell And the clerks were summoned and
venu devant le roi. Et quant il furent venu, si lour
come before the king And when they were come so them
fist Merlins demander par un des messages qui l'avoient
made Merlin ask by one of-the messengers who him-had
amené, si lour dist: «Signour, pour coi dites vous que
brought so to-them said Lords for what say you that
ceste tours ne puet tenir?» Et li clerc respondent: «Nous
this tower not can hold And the clerks answer We
ne savons riens du cheoir. Mais nous avons dit le
not know anything of-the falling But we have said (to-)the
roi comment elle tenra.» Et li rois respont: «Vous en
king how it will-hold And the king answers You thereof

avés dit merveilles, que vous me commandastes a querre un
have said marvels for you me commanded to seek a
enfant qui soit nés sans pere. Mais je ne sai comment
child who may-be born without father But I not know how
il puist estre trouvés.» Et Merlins parole as clers et dist:
he may be found And Merlin speaks to-the clerks and said
«Signeur, vous tenés le roi pour fol de chou que vous li
Lords you hold the king for mad from this that you him
faites querre tel chose, et savés bien entre vous que par
make seek such thing and know well among you that by
cel enfant vous devés morir. Et pour chou faites vous le
that child you ought to-die And for this make you the
roi entendant que se il le faisoit occhirre por avoir de son
king understanding that if he him made kill for to-have of his
sanc pour metre ou mortier de la tour que elle terroit.
blood for to-put in-the mortar of the tower that it would-hold
Ensi pensastes vous que vous porriés faire l'enfant morir par
Thus thought you that you could make the-child die by
cui vous deviés morir.» Quant li clerc oirent que li enfes
whom you ought to-die When the clerks heard that the child
disoit voir et que il cuidoient que nus ne le seust, si
said true and that they thought that anyone not it knew so
en furent moult espoenté, et bien sorent que a morir les
thereof were very terrified and well knew that to die them
converroit. Et Merlins dist au roi: «Sire, or poés bien
would-behoove And Merlin said to-the king Lord now can-you well
savoir que cil clerc me voloient faire ochirre a l'ochoison
know that those clerks me wished to-make kill on the-occasion
de vostre tour. Mais pour chou que il avoient sorti que
of your tower But for this that they had divined that
il devoient morir par moi vous fisent il chou a entendre.
they ought to-die by me you made they this to understand

Et demandés leur, que il ne seront jamais si hardi que il
And ask them for they not will-be ever so bold that they
vous osent mentir.» Et li rois lor demande se il dist
you may-dare to-lie And the king to-them asks if he says
voir, et il respondent: «Certainnement, sire, il dist voir.
true and they answer Certainly lord he says true
Mais nous ne savons pas par cui il set ces nouvieles;
But we not know at-all by whom he knows these news
si te prions tant comme a nostre signour que tu nous
so thee pray-we so-much as to our lord that thou us
laisses tant vivre que nous puissons veoir se il dira voir
may-let so-long live that we may see if he will-say true
de ceste tour.» Et Merlins parole et dist: «Signeur, vous
of this tower And Merlin speaks and said Lords you
n'avés garde de morir tant que vous le voiiés.» Et li clerc
not-have fear of dying so-long as you it may-see And the clerks
l'en merchierent. Lors dist Merlins a Vertigier: «Veuls
him-thereof thanked Then said Merlin to Vortigern Wishest
tu savoir pour coi ta tours chiet et qui l'abat? Se tu
thou to-know for what thy tower falls and who it-strikes-down If thou
veuls faire chou que je te dirai, je le te mousterrai. Sés
wishest to-do this that I thee shall-tell I it thee shall-show Knowest
tu que il a desous ceste tour? Il i a une grant iaue.
thou what it has beneath this tower It there has a great water
Et desous cele iaue i a deus dragons qui ne voient
And beneath that water there has two dragons who not see
goute. Si est li uns blans et li autres rous. Et si sont
a-drop So is the one white and the other red And so are
desous deus grans pierres, et si i set moult bien li
beneath two great stones and so there knows very well the
uns l'autre, et sont moult grant et moult fort. Et quant
one the-other and are very great and very strong And when

il sentent que l'iaue et la terre s'apoise si durement
they feel that the-water and the earth itself-weighs so hard
sor els par la charge de la pierre dont on fait la tour,
upon them by the burden of the stone whereof one makes the tower
si se tornent et de si grant force que toute l'iaue
so themselves turn and with so great force that all the-water
en tournoie, et mainnent si grant bruit que quant qu'il
thereof whirls and make so great noise that whatever that-it
est desus couvient cheoir. Ensi chiet la tours por ces deus
is above behooves to-fall Thus falls the tower for these two
dragons. Et faites ens garder, et se vous ne le trouvés
dragons And make therein look and if you not it find
ensi que je vous ai dit, si me faites ochirre. Et se vous
thus as I you have said so me make kill And if you
le trouvés, si soient mi plege cuite et li clerc encoupé
it find so let-be my pledges quit and the clerks inculpated
ki de tout chou riens ne savoient.» Et Vertigiers respont
who of all this anything not knew And Vortigern answers
a Merlin et dist: «Se il en est ensi, dont es tu li
to Merlin and said If it thereof is thus then art thou the
plus sages dou monde. Or m'enseigne dont comment je
most wise of-the world Now me-teach then how I
ferai la terre oster.» Et Merlins dist: «Tu le feras oster
shall-make the earth remove And Merlin said Thou it wilt-make remove
a chevaus et a charetes et as hommes au col et
with horses and with carts and with-the men at-the neck and
porter loing.» Li rois fist tantost metre les ouvriers, et
carry far The king made at-once put the workmen and
les gens de la terre le tinrent a moult grant folie, se il
the folk of the land it held for very great folly if they
l'osaissent dire pour Vertigier. Et Merlins commanda bien
it-had-dared say for Vortigern And Merlin commanded well

les clers a garder. Ensi commenchierent li ouvrier l'uevre.
the clerks to guard Thus began the workmen the-work
Et tant ouvrerent que il trouverent l'iaue. Et quant il
And so-much worked that they found the-water And when they
l'orent trové, si la descouvrirent et le firent savoir au roi
it-had found so it uncovered and it made know to-the king
chou que il avoient trouvé. Et li rois i vint moult
this that they had found And the king there came very
liement pour la merveille esgarder. Et amena Merlin avoec
joyfully for the marvel to-look-at And brought Merlin with
lui. Et quant li rois vit l'iaue, se li sambla moult
him And when the king saw the-water so to-him seemed very
grans. Et apiela deus de ses consilliers et dist: «Moult est
great And called two of his counselors and said Very is
chis hom sages qui savoit ceste iaue desous ceste tour, et
this man wise who knew this water beneath this tower and
encore dist que desous ceste iaue a deus dragons. Mais
still said that beneath this water there-are two dragons But
il ne savra ja tant couster que je ne fache canqu'il
it not will-know-how ever so-much to-cost that I not may-do whatever-he
me dira, tant que je truise les deus dragons.» Lors apiela
me will-say until that I may-find the two dragons Then called
li rois Merlin et dist: «Merlins, tu as voir dit de ceste
the king Merlin and said Merlin thou hast true said of this
iaue. Mais je ne sai se tu dis voir des deus dragons.» Et
water But I not know if thou sayest true of-the two dragons And
Merlins dist au roy: «Tu ne le saveras dusques a tant
Merlin said to-the king Thou not it wilt-know until to so-much
que tu le voies.» Et Vertigiers dist a Merlin: «Merlins,
that thou it may-see And Vortigern said to Merlin Merlin

comment porrons ceste iaue oster?» Et Merlins dist: «Vous
how shall-we-be-able this water to-remove And Merlin said You
le ferés toute courre en boins fossés en mi les chans.»
it will-make all run in good ditches in mid the fields
Atant furent li fosset commandé a faire et l'iaue courut
Thereupon were the ditches commanded to make and the-water ran
hors. Et Merlins dist a Vertigier: «Cist dragon qui sont
out And Merlin said to Vortigern These dragons who are
desous ceste iaue, si tost comme il s'entresentiront,
beneath this water so soon as they themselves-will-sense-each-other
se combateront li uns a l'autre et s'entrochirront. Ore
themselves will-fight the one with the-other and each-other-will-kill Now
mande tous les preudommes de la terre pour veoir la bataille
summon all the worthy-men of the land for to-see the battle
des deus dragons. Et che iert moult grant senefiance.» Et
of-the two dragons And this will-be very great significance And
Vertigiers dist que il les fera moult volentiers mander.
Vortigern said that he them will-make very willingly summon
Lors fist li rois par toute sa terre mander les preudommes
Then made the king through all his land summon the worthy-men
et les clers et les lais. Et quant il furent tout venut, si
and the clerks and the laymen And when they were all come so
lour conta Vertigiers toutes les grans mierveilles que Merlins
to-them told Vortigern all the great marvels that Merlin
lour avoit dites et comment li doi dragon se devoient
to-them had said and how the two dragons themselves ought
combatre. Lors dist li uns a l'autre: «Che fera il boin a
to-fight Then said the one to the-other This will-make it good to
veoir.» Et il demandent au roy se Merlins a dit li quels
see And they ask to-the king if Merlin has said the which
vaintera. Et li rois respont qu'il ne li a pas dit encore.
will-conquer And the king answers that-he not to-him has at-all said yet

Lors firent li ouvrier courre l'iaue par les chans. Et quant
Then made the workmen run the-water through the fields And when
elle fu hors, si virent les deus pierres qui estoient ou fons
it was out so saw-they the two stones which were in-the bottom
de l'iaue desus les deus dragons. Et quant Merlins les vit,
of the-water above the two dragons And when Merlin them saw
si dist au roi: «Veés vous ces deus pierres?» Et li rois
so said to-the king See you these two stones And the king
respont: «Oil.» Et Merlins dist: «Desous ces deus pierres
answers Yes And Merlin said Beneath these two stones
sont cil doi dragon.» Et li rois li dist: «Comment en
are those two dragons And the king to-him said How thence
seront il gieté?» Et Merlins dist: «Moult bien. Il ne
will-be they cast And Merlin said Very well They not
se mouveront ja devant qu'il s'entresentiront. Et
themselves will-move ever before that-they themselves-will-sense-each-other And
tantost se combateront tant que l'un en couvenra
at-once themselves will-fight until that the-one thereof will-behoove
morir.» Et Vertigiers dist: «Merlins, me diras tu li quels
to-die And Vortigern said Merlin me wilt-tell thou the which
vaintera?» Et Merlins dist: «A lor vaintre et a lour
will-conquer And Merlin said In their conquering and in their
bataille a moult grant senefiance. Et chou que je t'en
battle has very great significance And this that I thee-thereof
porai dire en savras tu. Tant t'en dirai volentiers
shall-be-able say thereof wilt-know thou So-much thee-thereof shall-say willingly
a conseil, oiant de ces preudommes trois ou quatre.»
in counsel hearing of these worthy-men three or four

Atant apiela Vertigiers quatre des plus preudommes ou
Thereupon called Vortigern four of-the most worthy-men where
il se fioit plus, si lour a dit chou que Merlins lor
he himself trusted most so to-them has said this that Merlin to-them

ot dit. Et cil li loent que il li demande a conseil, et
had said And those him advise that he him may-ask in counsel and
que il li die ains que il le voie. Et lors dist Vertigiers
that he to-him may-say before that he it may-see And then said Vortigern
que il ont bien dit. «Et je m'i acort bien. Et il porroit
that they have well said And I me-there agree well And he could
apriès la bataille faire entendant chou que il vaurroit.» Lors
after the battle make understanding this that he would-wish Then
apiela li rois Merlin, se li demande: «Merlins, di moi des
called the king Merlin so him asks Merlin tell me of-the
deus dragons li quels sera vaincus.» Et Merlins dist: «Cist
two dragons the which will-be conquered And Merlin said These
quatre homme sont bien de ton conseil?» Et il respondent:
four men are well of thy council And they answer
«Voire.» Lors dist Merlins: «Dont le te dirai jou voiant
Truly Then said Merlin Then it thee shall-tell I seeing
iaus. Je voel bien que tu saces que li blans ochirra le
them I wish well that thou may-know that the white will-kill the
rous. Et saches que il avra moult grant painne avant
red And know that he will-have very great pain before
que il l'ait ochis. Et che que il l'ochirra sera grant
that he him-may-have killed And this that he him-will-kill will-be great
senefianche. Ne je ne vous en dirai plus jusques apriès
significance Nor I not you thereof shall-tell more until after
la bataille.» Lors furent illuec les gens assamblees. Et li
the battle Then were there the folk assembled And the
ouvrier vinrent as deus pierres, si les descauchierent et
workmen came to-the two stones so them dug-round and
trairent fors les deus pierres, si trouverent les deus dragons
drew out the two stones so found the two dragons
qui estoient si grant et si fier et si hideus, si en orent
who were so great and so fierce and so hideous so thereof had

moult grant paour et se traient tout arriere. Et virent
very great fear and themselves draw all back And saw
que li rous estoit plus grans et plus hideus et plus fors
that the red was more great and more hideous and more strong
que li blans. Et fu bien avis a Vertigier que cis grans
than the white And was well opinion to Vortigern that this great-one
deust vaintre l'autre. Lors dist Merlins: «Viertigiers, ore
ought to-conquer the-other Then said Merlin Vortigern now
doivent estre mi plege quite.» Et Vertigiers respont: «Si
ought to-be my pledges quit And Vortigern answers So
seront il.» Et lors traient les deus dragons l'un si priès
will-be they And then draw the two dragons the-one so near
de l'autre que il s'entresentirent. Et si tost conme li uns
of the-other that they each-other-sensed And so soon as the one
senti l'autre, si se tornerent et se prisent as
sensed the-other so themselves turned and themselves took with-the
dens et as piés, ne onques n'oistes que deus bestes
teeth and with-the feet nor ever not-heard-you that two beasts
se combatissent si cruelment que les deus dragons firent
themselves fought so cruelly as the two dragons did
toute nuit et toute jour et l'endemain jusques a miedi, si
all night and all day and the-next-day until to midday so
que toutes les gens que illuec estoient cuidoient bien que
that all the folk who there were thought well that
li rous deust ochirre le blanc. Et tant que au blanc sailli
the red ought to-kill the white And until that to-the white leapt
fus parmi la bouche et par les narrines, si arst le rous.
fire through the mouth and through the nostrils so burned the red
Et quant li rous dragons fu mors, si se traist li blans
And when the red dragon was dead so himself drew the white
dragons arriere, et se coucha, et ne vesqui puis que
dragon back and himself lay-down and not lived after but

trois jours. Et cil ki orent cele mervieille veue disent que
three days And those who had that marvel seen said that
onques mais tel mervieille ne vit nus hom. Et Merlins dist:
ever more such marvel not saw any man And Merlin said
«Vertigiers, ore pues faire la tour tele comme tu vaurras,
Vortigern now canst-thou make the tower such as thou wilt-wish
que ja ne le savras faire si haute que elle chiee plus.»
for ever not it wilt-know-how make so high that it may-fall more
Lors commanda Vertigiers que li ouvrier i fuissent mis, si
Then commanded Vortigern that the workmen there should-be put so
la fist si grant et si forte comme plus pot. Et demanda
it made so great and so strong as most he-could And asked
maintes fois Merlin la senefiance des deus dragons et
many times Merlin the significance of-the two dragons and
comment che pooit estre que li blans avoit ochis le rous
how this could be that the white had killed the red
et que si longement en avoit eut li rous le millour. Et
and that so long thereof had had the red the best And
Merlins respont: «Che sont toutes senefiances des choses
Merlin answers These are all significances of-the things
qui sont faites et de celes qui sont a avenir. Mais se
which are done and of those which are to come But if
je te disoie voir de chou que tu me demandes et tu
I thee told true of this that thou me askest and thou
m'asseuroies de chou que tu ne m'en feroies nul mal ne
me-wouldst-assure of this that thou not me-thereof wouldst-do any ill nor
ne soufferroies a faire, je te diroie toutes les senefiances
not wouldst-suffer to do I thee would-tell all the significances
et par devant tous les plus preudommes de ton conseil.»
and by before all the most worthy-men of thy council
Et il dist que il l'en fera toutes les seurtés que il
And he said that he him-thereof will-make all the assurances that he

vaurra. Et Merlins dist: «Or va, si fai ton conseil mander,
will-wish And Merlin said Now go so make thy council summon
si me fai venir les clers qui sortirent de ceste tour et qui
so me make come the clerks who divined of this tower and who
me vaurrent faire ochirre.» Et il si fist tantost. Quant ses
me wished to-make kill And he so did at-once When his
consaus fu venus et li clerc, si parla Merlins as clers
council was come and the clerks so spoke Merlin to-the clerks
et lour dist: «Signour, moult estes fol, quant vous volés
and to-them said Lords very are-you mad when you wish
ouvrer d'art, et vous n'estes mie si boin ne si loial comme
to-work by-art and you not-are at-all so good nor so loyal as
vous deussiés estre. Et par chou que vous estes fol et
you ought to-be And by this that you are mad and
mauvais fallés vous a chou que vous devés faire et querre
bad fail you in this that you ought to-do and seek
par la forche de l'autre art. Ens es elemens ne veistes
by the force of the-other art In in-the elements not saw
vous riens de chou que il vous avoit demandé, car vous
you anything of this that he you had asked for you
n'estes pas tel que vous le deussiés veoir. Mais vous veistes
not-are at-all such that you it ought to-see But you saw
mieus que j'estoie nés. Et cil qui moi vous moustra et
better that I-was born And he who me to-you showed and
qui le vous dist et vous fist samblant que vous deussiés
who it to-you said and you made semblance that you ought
par moi morir le fist de duel de chou que il m'a perdu,
by me to-die it did from grief of this that he me-has lost
et vausist bien que vous m'en fesissiés occhirre. Mais
and would-wish well that you me-thereof should-make kill But
jou ai tel signour qui bien m'en gardera, se lui plaist,
I have such lord who well me-thereof will-guard if to-him pleases

de lour engien, et je les ferai menchoingniers del
from their cunning and I them shall-make liars of-the
tout, car je ne ferai ja chose por coi vous muiriés, se
all for I not shall-do ever thing for which you may-die if
vous me creantés a faire chou que je vous demanderai.»
you me promise to do this that I you shall-ask

Quant li clerc oirent que il furent respité de mort,
When the clerks heard that they were respited from death
si en furent moult lié. Et disent: «Merlins, tu ne nous
so thereof were very glad And said Merlin thou not us
demanderas ja chose que nous ne fachons, se nous le
wilt-ask ever thing that we not may-do if we it
poons faire. Car nous veons bien et savons que tu iés li
can do For we see well and know that thou art the
plus sages hom qui soit en vie.» Et Merlins respont: «Vous
most wise man who may-be in life And Merlin answers You
m'avés creanté que vous ne vous entremeterés jamais de
me-have promised that you not yourselves will-concern ever with
tel art. Et por chou que vous en avés ouvret commanc
such art And for this that you thereof have worked command
jou que vous en soiiés confiès, et metés vos cors en tel
I that you thereof may-be confessed and put your bodies in such
subjection que vos ames ne soient dampnees. Et se vous me
subjection that your souls not may-be damned And if you me
creantés chou que je vous ai dit que vous le ferés, je vous
promise this that I you have said that you it will-do I you
en lairai aler.» Et li clerc l'en merchient, et li
thence shall-let go And the clerks him-thereof thank and to-him
creanterent que il le feront et tenront chou que il lour
promised that they it will-do and will-hold this that be to-them
a dit. En ceste maniere delivra Merlins les clers, et tout
has said In this manner delivered Merlin the clerks and all

cil qui virent que Merlins s'estoit si bien prouvés deviers
those who saw that Merlin himself-was so well proved toward
les clers si l'en sorent moult boin gré. Et Vertigiers
the clerks so him-thereof knew very good gratitude And Vortigern
et sen consaus vinrent a lui et dirent: «Merlins, tu me
and his council came to him and said Merlin thou me
dois dire la senefiance des deus dragons. Car de toutes
oughtest to-tell the significance of-the two dragons For of all
les autres choses que tu m'as dit as tu dit voir, et je
the other things that thou me-hast said hast thou said true and I
te tieng au plus sage del monde. Et pour chou te pri
thee hold for-the most wise of-the world And for this thee pray
jou que tu me dies des deus dragons la senefiance.» Et
I that thou me may-tell of-the two dragons the significance And
Merlins li dist: «Vertigiers, li rous dragons senefie toi,
Merlin to-him said Vortigern the red dragon signifies thee
et li blans senefie les fieus Constant.» Et quant Vertigiers
and the white signifies the sons (of-)Constans And when Vortigern
l'entent, si ot honte. Et Merlins s'en aperchiut, se
it-hears so had shame And Merlin himself-thereof perceived so
li dist: «Vertigiers, se tu veus, je m'en soufferrai de
to-him said Vortigern if thou wishest I me-thereof shall-forbear from
plus dire. Ne m'en saces or mie mau gré.» Et Vertigiers
more saying Not me-thereof know now at-all ill will And Vortigern
dist: «Chi n'a homme qui ne soit de mon conseil. Et je
said Here not-has man who not may-be of my council And I
voel que tu me dies outreement la senefiance, que tu ja
wish that thou me may-tell outright the significance that thou ever
de riens ne m'en espargnes.» Et Merlins dist: «Je t'ai
of anything not me-thereof may-spare And Merlin said I thee-have
dit que li rous dragons senefie toi, si te dirai por coi. Tu
said that the red dragon signifies thee so thee shall-tell for what Thou

sés bien que li fil Constant remesent petit enfant après
knowest well that the sons (of-)Constans remained small children after
la mort lour pere. Et si sés bien que se tu fuisses teus
the death (of-)their father And so knowest well that if thou hadst-been such
que tu deusses estre, tu deusses et garder et consillier
as thou oughtest to-be thou oughtest and to-guard and to-counsel
et desfendre aus contre tous chiaus dou monde. Et tu
and to-defend them against all those of-the world And thou
sés bien que de lour terre et de lour gent conquestas
knowest well that from their land and from their folk conqueredst
tu avoir, par coi tu eus l'amour des gens de lour regne.
thou wealth by which thou hadst the-love of-the folk of their realm
Et quant tu seus que les gens de la terre t'amoient, tu
And when thou knewest that the folk of the land thee-loved thou
te traisis arriere de lour afaire pour chou que tu seus
thyself drewest back from their affair for this that thou knewest
bien que il aroient disete de toi. Et quant les gens de la
well that they would-have need of thee And when the folk of the
terre vinrent a toi et il disent que li rois Moynes n'avoit
land came to thee and they said that the king Moine not-had
mestier d'estre rois et que tu le fuisses, tu lour respondis
need to-be king and that thou it shouldst-be thou to-them answeredst
malement que tu nel porroies estre tant que li rois
badly that thou not-it couldst be so-long as the king
Moynes vesquist. Ausi fainsis ta parole. Et cil a qui tu le
Moine should-live So feignedst thy word And those to whom thou it
desis entendirent que tu vausisses bien que il fust mors, et
saidst understood that thou wouldst-wish well that he were dead and
por chou l'ochisent il. Et quant il orent che fait, n'i
for this him-killed they And when they had this done not-there
demourerent que deus enfans qui s'en fuirent pour
remained but two children who themselves-thence fled for

paour de toi. Et tu fus rois et tiens encore les yritages.
fear of thee And thou wast king and holdest still the heritages
Et quant cil vinrent devant toi qui le roi Moyne avoient
And when those came before thee who the king Moine had
mort, tu les fesis ochirre pour faire samblant qu'il t'avoit
killed thou them madest kill for to-make semblance that-it thee-had
de sa mort pesé. Mais che ne fu mie boine samblance,
of his death weighed But this not was at-all good semblance
dès que tu presis lour terres et tiens encore. Et tu as
since that thou tookest their lands and holdest still And thou hast
fait ceste tour por toi garder de tes anemis. Mais la tours
made this tower for thee to-guard from thy enemies But the tower
ne te puet sauver, quant tu meismes ne te veuls sauver.»
not thee can save when thou thyself not thee wishest to-save

Vertigiers a bien oi et entendu que il dit voir, si dist
Vortigern has well heard and understood that he says true so said
a Merlin: «Je voi bien que tu iés li plus sages del monde.
to Merlin I see well that thou art the most wise of-the world
Ore te pri jou et requier que tu me conseilles contre ces
Now thee pray I and ask that thou me may-counsel against these
choses et que tu me dies, se toi plaist, de quel mort je
things and that thou me may-tell if to-thee please of what death I
morrai.» Et Merlins dist: «Se je ne te disoie la mort dont
shall-die And Merlin said If I not thee told the death whereof
vous devés morir, dont ne te diroie je mie la senefiance
you ought to-die then not thee would-tell I at-all the significance
des deus dragons. Mais je le te dirai. Saches que li rous
of-the two dragons But I it thee shall-tell Know that the red
dragons qui estoit si grans et si fiers senefie toi et ton
dragon which was so great and so fierce signifies thee and thy
mauvais corage, et chou que il estoit si poissans senefie
bad heart and this that he was so powerful signifies

ta force. Et li autres ki estoit blans senefie l'yretage as
thy force And the other which was white signifies the-heritage of-the
enfans qui s'en sont fui por toi. Et chou que il
children who themselves-thence are fled for thee And this that they
se combatirent si longuement senefie lour terre que tu
themselves fought so long signifies their land which thou
as tenue si lonc tans. Et chou que tu veis que li blans
hast held so long time And this that thou sawest that the white
arst le rous senefie que li enfant t'arderont. Ne ne quide
burned the red signifies that the children thee-will-burn Nor not think
pas ke la tours que tu as faite que elle te puist warandir
at-all that the tower which thou hast made that it thee can protect
que ensi ne t'en conviegne a morir.» Quant Vertigiers oi
that thus not thee-thereof may-behoove to die When Vortigern heard
ensi parler Merlin, si en fu moult irés et plourous et
thus speak Merlin so thereof was very angered and tearful and
li demande: «Ou sont il, cil enfant?» Et Merlins dist:
to-him asks Where are they those children And Merlin said
«Il sont en mer et ont porchacié grant gent et ont cargié
They are at sea and have gathered great folk and have loaded
lour nés et vienent pour faire justiche de toi. Et dient pour
their ships and come for to-do justice of thee And say for
voir que tu fesis lour frere ochirre, et autressi t'ochirront
true that thou madest their brother kill and likewise thee-will-kill
il. Et saches que arriveront d'ui en trois mois au port
they And know that will-they-arrive from-today in three months at-the port
de Wincestre.» Lors fu Vertigiers moult dolans quant il sot
of Winchester Then was Vortigern very sorrowful when he knew
ceste nouviele et il sot que cele gent venoient, si demanda a
this news and he knew that that folk came so asked to
Merlin: «Puet il estre autrement?» Et Merlins respont: «Il ne
Merlin Can it be otherwise And Merlin answers It not

puet estre que tu ne muires del feu as enfans Constant,
can be that thou not may-die of-the fire of-the children (of-)Constans
ensi comme tu veis le blanc dragon ardoir le rous.»
thus as thou sawest the white dragon burn the red

Ensi dist Merlins a Vertigier que li enfant Constant
Thus said Merlin to Vortigern that the children (of-)Constans
venoient et arriveroient d'ui en trois mois au port de
came and would-arrive from-today in three months at-the port of
Wincestre. Si fist semonre les soies gens au termine que
Winchester So made summon the his folk at-the term that
Merlins li avoit dit pour venir contre iaus a la riviere.
Merlin to-him had said for to-come against them at the shore
Et quant il furent tout venut ensamble, si ne sorent onques
And when they were all come together so not knew ever
pour coi il les ot mandés, fors cil qui avoient esté au
for what he them had summoned except those who had been at-the
conseil. Ne Merlins ne fu illuecques mie, car si tost que il
council Nor Merlin not was there at-all for so soon as he
ot dit pour coi sa tours cheoit et la senefianche des deus
had said for what his tower fell and the significance of-the two
dragons, il prist congié au roi, si s'en ala, et dist a
dragons he took leave of-the king so himself-thence went and said to
Vertigier que il avoit bien fait chou pour coi il estoit la
Vortigern that he had well done this for which he was there
venus. Et ensi s'en ala Merlins en Norhomberlande a
come And thus himself-thence went Merlin into Northumberland to
Blaise et li conta ces choses, et il les mist en escrit,
Blaise and to-him told these things and he them put in writing
et par son livre le savons nous encore. Et la fu Merlins
and by his book it know we still And there was Merlin
lonc tans, tant que li fil Constant le vinrent querre. Ensi
long time until that the sons (of-)Constans him came to-seek Thus

fu Vertigiers au port a tout grant gent et attendi le
was Vortigern at-the port with all great folk and awaited the
jour que Merlins li ot dit. Et a cel jour meismes
day that Merlin to-him had said And at that day very-same
au chief de trois mois virent cil de Wincestre les nés
at-the end of three months saw those of Winchester the ships
en la mer et moult grant estore que li enfant Constant
on the sea and very great fleet which the children (of-)Constans
amenerent. Quant Vertigiers les vit, si commanda sa gent
brought When Vortigern them saw so commanded his folk
a armer et son port deffendre. Et li fil Constant vinrent
to arm and his port to-defend And the sons (of-)Constans came
pour arriver. Et quant cil qui estoient a terre virent les
for to-arrive And when those who were on land saw the
confanons roiaus, si s'en esmervillierent, et tant que
banners royal so themselves-thereat marveled and until that
li vaissiel ou li fil Constant estoient prisent terre. Et
the vessels where the sons (of-)Constans were took land And
lor demanderent cil qui a terre estoient a cheus qui
to-them asked those who on land were to those who
estoient en la mer: «Signour, qui sont cil vaissiel?» Et
were on the sea Lords whose are those vessels And
cil respondent: «Elles sont a Pandragon et a Uter son
those answer They are to Pendragon and to Uther his
frere, ces deus fieus Constant, qui repairent en lour terre
brother these two sons (of-)Constans who return to their land
que Vertigiers tient comme faus et desloiaus et lonc tans
which Vortigern holds as false and disloyal and long time
a tenue, et fist ochirre lour frere, si en viennent faire
has held and made kill their brother so thereof come to-do
justice.» Et quant cil l'oirent qui estoient a terre que
justice And when those it-heard who were on land that

c'estoient li fil lor signour, si virent bien que il avoient
these-were the sons (of-)their lord so saw well that they had
la forche et que se contre iaus se combatoient que il
the force and that if against them themselves they-fought that it
lour en porroit bien venir maus. Si le dirent a Vertigier.
to-them thereof could well come ill So it said to Vortigern
Et quant Vertigiers vit que li plus de ses gens li failloient
And when Vortigern saw that the most of his folk him failed
et que il se tenoient ja deviers Pandragon, si ot
and that they themselves held already toward Pendragon so had
paour. Et dist a ses gens qui faillir ne li pooient, que
fear And said to his folk who fail not him could whom
Hanguis li Saisnes li avoit envoies, que il garnesissent
Hengist the Saxon to-him had sent that they should-furnish
bien le chastiel, et il le firent au mieus qu'il porent.
well the castle and they it did at-the best that-they could
Et tant que les nés arriverent. Et quant elles furent
And until that the ships arrived And when they were
arrivees, si issirent fors li chevalier tout armé et toutes
arrived so issued out the knights all armed and all
les autres gens. Et quant il furent fors, si alerent viers le
the other folk And when they were out so went toward the
chastiel. Et les gens qui virent venir lour signours vinrent
castle And the folk who saw come their lords came
contre iaus une grant partie et les rechiurent comme lour
to-meet them a great part and them received as their
signours. Et cil qui deviers Vertigier furent entrerent dedens
lords And those who toward Vortigern were entered inside
le chastiel, si se desfendirent au mieus qu'il porent.
the castle so themselves defended at-the best that-they could
Et cil defors les assaillirent moult durement. Ensi se
And those outside them assailed very hard Thus themselves

desfendirent les gens Vertigier, et tant que Pandragons mist
defended the folk (of-)Vortigern and until that Pendragon put
le fu ou chastiel et li fus le sousprit, si que il en
the fire in-the castle and the fire it seized so that it thereof
arst une grant partie. Et en cel feu fu ars Vertigiers.
burned a great part And in that fire was burned Vortigern

Pendragon Seeks Merlin

XI

Pendragon is made king and besieges Hengist's castle for half a year. Hearing of Merlin from Vortigern's old counselors, he sends messengers, whom Merlin meets as a ragged woodcutter, and then rides himself into Northumberland, where Merlin, as a herdsman, sends him to wait in a town. There a stranger brings word that Uther has killed Hengist, and Merlin at last shows himself, tells how he warned Uther in an old man's shape, and says he will test the king in many ways.

Ore dist li contes que ensi prisent li enfant Constant le
Now says the tale that thus took the children (of-)Constans the
chastiel, et firent savoir par tout le regne que il estoient
castle and made know through all the realm that they were
venu. Et quant li peuples le sot, si en ot grant joie, et
come And when the people it knew so thereof had great joy and
vinrent tout a l'encontre d'aus et les rechiurent comme lor
came all to the-meeting of-them and them received as their
signours. Ensi revinrent li doi frere en lour regne et firent
lords Thus returned the two brothers into their realm and made
roi de Pandragon. Et il lour fu moult bons rois et moult
king of Pendragon And he to-them was very good king and very
loiaus. Et li Saisne que Vertigiers ot mis en la terre tinrent
loyal And the Saxons whom Vortigern had put in the land held

lour chastiaus qui moult estoient fort, et guerrioient tous
their castles which very were strong and warred all
jours Pandragon et les crestiiens. Et tant le guerroiierent
days Pendragon and the Christians And so-much him they-warred
que maintes fois i perdirent et gaaignierent, et tant que
that many times there lost and won and until that
Pandragons fu assegiés devant le chastiel Hangus. Et tant
Pendragon was besieged before the castle (of-)Hengist And so-long
i sist que il i fu la moitié de l'an ou plus, tant que
there sat that he there was the half of the-year or more until that
Pandragons assambla son conseil et parlerent comment il
Pendragon assembled his council and they-spoke how they
porroient prendre che chastiel. Et tant que a che conseil
could take this castle And so-much that at this council
avoit cinq de chiaus qui avoient esté au conseil que
there-were five of those who had been at-the council that
Merlins avoit fait et dit a Vertigier et des dragons et
Merlin had made and said to Vortigern and of-the dragons and
des enfans et de sa mort. Si apielerent Pandragon et Uter
of-the children and of his death So called Pendragon and Uther
son frere, et lour disent ces merveilles que Merlins lour
his brother and to-them told these marvels that Merlin to-them
avoit contees, et que c'estoit li mieudres devins qui onques
had recounted and that it-was the best seer who ever
fust nés, et que se il le voloit dire, il diroit bien se cis
was born and that if he it wished say he would-say well if this
chastiaus seroit pris. Et quant Pandragons oi chou, si dist:
castle would-be taken And when Pendragon heard this so said
«Ou seroit il, li bons devins, trouvés?» Et cil dient: «Nous
Where would-be he the good seer found And those say We
ne savons en quel terre, mais tant savons nous bien que
not know in which land but so-much know we well that

nous avons parlet a lui, et se savons bien qu'il est en cest
we have spoken to him and so know well that-he is in this
pais.» «Dont sera il trouvés,» dist Pandragons, «se il i est.»
country Then will-be he found said Pendragon if he there is

Lors envoia Pandragons ses messages par toute la terre
Then sent Pendragon his messengers through all the land
pour Merlin. Et Merlins qui che sot si vint au plus tost
for Merlin And Merlin who this knew so came at-the most soon
qu'il pot dès qu'il ot parlet a Blaise, si se traist
that-he could as-soon-as that-he had spoken to Blaise so himself drew
viers une ville ou il sot que li message estoient qui le
toward a town where he knew that the messengers were who him
queroient. Et vint en la ville comme uns boskillons, une
sought And came into the town as a woodcutter an
cuingnie a son col, uns grans housiaus cauchiés et en une
axe on his neck some great boots shod and in a
cotele toute despanee, et fu moult hurepés et ot moult
tunic all torn and was very shaggy and had very
longue barbe et sambla homme sauvage. Et ensi vint en
long beard and seemed man wild And thus came into
une maison ou li message estoient. Et quant il le virent,
a house where the messengers were And when they him saw
il le regarderent a merveilles. Et dist li uns a l'autre:
they him looked-at in marvel And said the one to the-other
«Cil hom samble bien mal homme.» Et Merlins ala avant,
That man seems well bad man And Merlin went forward
si lour dist: «Signour message, vous ne faites mie bien le
so to-them said Lords messengers you not do at-all well the
besoingne vostre signour, que il vous commanda a querre le
business (of-)your lord for he you commanded to seek the
devin qui a a non Merlins.» Et quant li message oirent
seer who has as name Merlin And when the messengers heard

chou, si dist li uns a l'autre: «Qués dyables a che dit
this so said the one to the-other What devil has this said
a che vilain?» Et il respont: «Se jou l'eusse aussi a querre
to this churl And he answers If I him-had also to seek
que vous avés, je l'eusse plus tost trouvé que vous n'avrés.»
as you have I him-had more soon found than you will-have
A tant se traient li message tout entour de lui et li
At that themselves draw the messengers all around of him and him
demandent se il savoit le devin qui a non Merlins. Et il
ask if he knew the seer who has name Merlin And he
respont: «Je sai bien son repaire et il set bien que vous
answers I know well his lair and he knows well that you
le querés; mais vous ne le trouverés mie se il ne veult.
him seek but you not him will-find at-all if he not wishes
Mais tant me dist il que je vous desisse que pour nient
But so-much me said he that I to-you should-say that for nothing
vous travilliés vous de lui querre. Et se vous le trouviés,
you trouble you of him to-seek And if you him found
ne s'en iroit il mie avoec vous. Et dites a chiaus
not himself-thence would-go he at-all with you And say to those
qui disent vostre signour le roi que li devins estoit en
who told your lord the king that the seer was in
chel pais que il disent voir. Et quant vous verrés arriere,
that country that they said true And when you will-come back
si dites vostre signour que il ne prendera mie le chastiel
so say (to-)your lord that he not will-take at-all the castle
devant que Hangus soit mors. Et sachiés que de ceus qui
before that Hengist be dead And know that of those who
vous disent que il connoissoient Merlin n'a que cinq
you told that they knew Merlin not-there-has but five
en l'ost, et quant vous i verrés, vous n'en trouverés
in the-host and when you there will-come you not-of-them will-find

que les trois. Et che dites a vostre signour et a sen conseil
but the three And this say to your lord and to his council
que se il venoient en ceste terre et que fussent par
that if they came into this land and that were through
che foriest, il trouveroient Merlin, mais se li rois meismes
this forest they would-find Merlin but if the king himself
n'i vient il ne troveront ja homme qui l'en amaint.»
not-there comes they not will-find ever man who him-thence may-bring
Ensi ont li message bien entendu chou que Merlins lour
Thus have the messengers well heard this that Merlin to-them
a dit. Et il s'en torne, et au torner l'orent perdu.
has said And he himself-thence turns and at-the turning him-had lost
Et li message se saingnent et dient: «Nous avons
And the messengers themselves cross and say We have
parlet a un dyable; que ferons nous de chou que il nous a
spoken to a devil what shall-do we of this that he us has
dit?» Atant parlerent ensamble et disent: «Nous en irons
said Thereupon spoke together and said We thence shall-go
arriere et dirons a no signour et a chiaus qui cha nous
back and shall-tell to our lord and to those who hither us
envoiierent ceste mierveille. Et se savrons se li dui en
sent this marvel And so shall-we-know if the two of-them
sont mort.» Ensi s'en revinrent li message, et tant
are dead Thus themselves-thence returned the messengers and so-much
chevaucierent que il vinrent la ou li rois estoit. Et quant
rode that they came there where the king was And when
li rois les vit, si lour dit: «Signour, avés trouvé Merlin?»
the king them saw so to-them says Lords have-you found Merlin
Et il dient: «Sire, nous vous dirons une chose qui avenue
And they say Lord we to-you shall-tell a thing which happened
nous est. Mandés vostre conseil et ciaus qui che devin vous
to-us is Summon your council and those who this seer to-you

ensegnierent.» Et li rois les fait mander. Et quant il furent
showed And the king them makes summon And when they were
venu, si se traisent a une part a conseil. Et li message
come so themselves drew to one side to counsel And the messengers
lor conterent le mierveille que avenue lour estoit et
to-them told the marvel which happened to-them was and
toutes les choses que li vilains lour avoit dites, et de ces
all the things that the churl to-them had said and of these
deus que il dist que il seroient mort ains que il fuissent
two whom he said that they would-be dead before that they were
retorné en l'ost. Et li message en demanderent noveles.
returned into the-host And the messengers thereof asked news
Et on lour dist que il estoient mort sans faille. Et quant
And one to-them said that they were dead without fail And when
il oirent chou, si s'en esmiervillierent moult de si
they heard this so themselves-thereat marveled much of so
lait homme et de si hideus, dont li message parloient, qui
ugly man and of so hideous of-whom the messengers spoke who
il pooit estre. Car il ne savoient mie que Merlins peust
he could be For they not knew at-all that Merlin could
prendre autre forme que la soie ne autre samblance, mais
take other form than the his-own nor other semblance but
il leur estoit bien avis que nus ne pot faire che que il
it to-them was well opinion that anyone not could do this that he
faisoit se il non. «Sire,» dirent il au roi, «nous cuidons
did if he not Lord said they to-the king we think
que che soit bien Merlins meismes qui ait parlé a iaus. Car
that this be well Merlin himself who has spoken to them For
nus ne peust la mort de nos compaignons se il non dire
anyone not could the death of our companions if he not tell
ne de la mort Hangus fors que il.» Lors demandent li
nor of the death (of-)Hengist except that he Then ask the

message en quel vile che fu que il le trouverent, et il
messengers in which town this was that they him found and they
dient: «En Norhomberlande, la ou il vint a nostre hostel.»
say In Northumberland there where he came to our lodging
Adont dient li troi homme tout vraiement que che a
Then say the three men all truly that this has
esté Merlins, et il dist que li rois meismes i voist. Lors
been Merlin and he said that the king himself there should-go Then
dist li rois que il lairoit son siege a Uter son frere et
said the king that he would-leave his siege to Uther his brother and
que il iroit en Norhomberlande et cerqueroit les forès que
that he would-go into Northumberland and would-search the forests that
cil li avoit dites. Ensi atorna li rois son oirre et vint
those to-him had told Thus arranged the king his journey and came
en Norhomberlande. Et mena chiaus avoec li qu'il cuidoit
into Northumberland And led those with him whom-he thought
qui conneussent Merlin. Et quant il vint la, si demanda
who might-know Merlin And when he came there so asked
nouvieles de Merlin. Mais li rois ne trouva onques qui
news of Merlin But the king not found ever who
novieles l'en seust dire. Et quant li rois oi que on
news to-him-thereof might-know tell And when the king heard that one
n'en porroit oir nouvieles, si dist que il l'iroit querre
not-thereof could hear news so said that he him-would-go seek
par le foriest. Lors chevaucha par les forès pour querre
through the forest Then rode through the forests for to-seek
Merlin. Si avint chose que li uns de chiaus qui estoient
Merlin So happened thing that the one of those who were
avoec li trova une grant plenté de bestes et un homme
with him found a great plenty of beasts and a man
moult lait et moult contrefait qui ces bestes gardoit. Et
very ugly and very misshapen who these beasts kept And

chis qui le trouva li demanda qui il estoit. Et il disoit
this-one who him found him asked who he was And he said
que il estoit de Norhomberlande, serjans a un preudomme.
that he was of Northumberland servant to a worthy-man
Et cil li demanda: «Me savroies tu a dire nouvieles
And that-one him asked Me wouldst-know thou to tell news
d'un homme qui a non Merlin?» Et cil qui gardoit les
of-a man who has name Merlin And that-one who kept the
biestes dist: «Nenil, mais je vi ersoir un homme qui me
beasts said No but I saw last-evening a man who me
dist que li rois le verroit querre par ces forès. Savés
said that the king him would-come seek through these forests Know
vous ent riens?» Et il respont que il est voirs que li rois
you thereof anything And he answers that it is true that the king
le quiert. «Saveroies tu ent riens et le nous saveroies tu
him seeks Wouldst-know thou thereof anything and it us wouldst-know thou
ensegnier?» Et il dist: «Je diroie le roi tel chose que je ne
show And he said I would-tell the king such thing that I not
vous diroie mie.» Et cil respont: «Vien, je t'i menrai
to-you would-tell at-all And that-one answers Come I thee-there shall-lead
la ou il est.» Et il dist: «Dont garderoie je malvaisement
there where he is And he said Then would-keep I badly
mes bestes. Ne je n'ai mie besoing de lui, mais il a
my beasts Nor I not-have at-all need of him but he has
besoing de moi. Je li diroie bien comment il trouveroit
need of me I to-him would-tell well how he would-find
celui que il va querant.» Et il dist: «Je le t'amerrai.»
him whom he goes seeking And he said I him to-thee-shall-bring
Lors se parti de lui et quist le roi tant que il
Then himself parted from him and sought the king so-much that he
le trouva. Lors li conta che que il avoit trové. Et li
him found Then to-him told this that he had found And the

rois dist: «Mainne m'i.» Et lors le mena cil la ou
king said Lead me-there And then him led that-one there where
il avoit l'omme trouvé, se li dist: «Veschi le roi que je
he had the-man found so to-him said Here-is the king whom I
t'amainne. Ore li di chou que tu me desis que tu li
to-thee-bring Now to-him say this that thou to-me saidst that thou to-him
diroies.» Et il dist au roi: «Je sai bien que vous querés
wouldst-tell And he said to-the king I know well that you seek
Merlin, mais vous ne le poés ensi trouver devant che que
Merlin but you not him can thus find before that that
il meismes voelle. Mais alés vous ent en une de vos boines
he himself may-wish But go you thence into one of your good
viles près de chi. Et il verra a vous, quant il savra
towns near of here And he will-come to you when he will-know
que vous l'atenderés.» Lors dist li rois: «Comment savrai
that you him-will-await Then said the king How shall-I-know
que tu me dis voir?» Et chis respont: «Se vous ne
that thou to-me sayest true And this-one answers If you not
m'en creés, si n'en faites nient. Car c'est folie de croire
me-thereof believe so not-thereof do anything For it-is folly to believe
mauvais conseil.» Et quant li rois l'oi, se dist: «Dis tu
bad counsel And when the king it-heard so said Sayest thou
dont que tes consaus est mauvais?» Et il dist: «Naje, mais
then that thy counsel is bad And he said Not-I but
vous le dites. Et tant sachiés vous bien que je vous en
you it say And so-much know you well that I you thereof
consillerai mieus que vous ne me savrés consillier.» Ensi
shall-counsel better than you — me will-know-how counsel Thus
ala li rois a une de ses villes au plus près que il pot
went the king to one of his towns at-the most near that he could
de la forest. Et entrues que il sejornoit illuec, si avint un
of the forest And while that he sojourned there so happened one

jour que uns preudom vint en l'ostel le roi moult bien
day that a worthy-man came into the-lodging (of-)the king very well
atornés et bien vestus et cauciés. Et dist a un chevalier:
arrayed and well clothed and shod And said to a knight
«Sire, menés moi devant le roi.» Et il l'i mena. Et
Lord lead me before the king And he him-there led And
quant il fu venus devant lui, se li dist: «Sire, Merlins
when he was come before him so to-him said Lord Merlin
vous salue et si m'envoie a vous. Et se vous mande que
you greets and so me-sends to you And so you sends-word that
che fu il que vous trouvastes ou bois les bestes gardant, a
this was he whom you found in-the wood the beasts keeping by
ces enseignes que il vous dist que il verroit a vous, et il
these tokens that he you told that he would-come to you and he
dist voir; mais vous n'en avés pas encore grant mestier.»
said true but you not-thereof have at-all yet great need
Li rois respont: «J'ai tout dis bien mestier de lui. Ne je
The king answers I-have all days well need of him Nor I
n'euc onques si grant envie en nul homme veoir conme de
not-had ever so great desire in any man to-see as of
lui.» Et il respont: «Dès que vous che dites, il vous mande
him And he answers Since that you this say he you sends
par moi unes novieles.» Et li rois demande quels novieles
by me a news And the king asks what news
che sont. Et il dist que Hangus est mors: «Et Uters vostre
these are And he said that Hengist is dead And Uther your
freres l'a ochis.» Et quant li rois l'ot oi, si s'en
brother him-has killed And when the king it-had heard so himself-thereat
esmiervilla moult et dist: «Puet chou estre voirs que tu me
marveled much and said Can this be true that thou to-me
dis?» Et chis respont: «Il ne m'en commanda nient plus
sayest And this-one answers He not me-thereof commanded anything more

a dire. Mais vous faites que fols que ne le creés tant que
to say But you do as fool that not it believe until that
vous l'aiiés assaiié. Envoiiés savoir se c'est voirs, et puis
you it-may-have tested Send to-know if it-is true and then
se le creés.» Et li rois dist: «Vous dites voir.» Lors prist li
so it believe And the king said You say true Then took the
rois deus messages et les fist monter sour les deus millours
king two messengers and them made mount upon the two best
chevaus que il avoit, si lor commande que il aillent au
horses that he had so to-them commands that they go at-the
plus tost que il pueent et sachent se Hangus est mors.
most soon that they can and know if Hengist is dead
Et li message se partent dou roi et chevaucent au
And the messengers themselves part from-the king and ride at-the
plus tost qu'il pueent. Et encontrerent les messages Uter
most soon that-they can And met the messengers (of-)Uther
qui venoient dire les nouvieles que Hangus estoit mors.
who came to-tell the news that Hengist was dead

Quant li message se furent entrecontré, si s'entredient
When the messengers themselves were met-each-other so to-each-other-say
les nouvieles et tornerent arriere au roi. Et cil s'en
the news and turned back to-the king And that-one himself-thence
fu alés qui son message avoit dit au roi de Merlin. Et li
was gone who his message had told to-the king of Merlin And the
message qui retornerent et cil qui venoient furent devant le
messengers who returned and those who came were before the
roi et li conterent a conseil comment Uters avoit mort
king and to-him told in counsel how Uther had killed
Hangus. Et quant li rois l'oi, si desfendi as messages
Hengist And when the king it-heard so forbade to-the messengers
que il de ceste chose ne parlaissent. Ensi remest. Et moult
that they of this thing — should-speak Thus remained And much

s'esmervilla li rois comment Merlins avoit seu ceste chose.
himself-marveled the king how Merlin had known this thing
Ensi attendi li rois en la ville pour savoir se Merlins
Thus awaited the king in the town for to-know if Merlin
verroit, et pensa en son cuer que si tost que Merlins
would-come and thought in his heart that so soon as Merlin
verroit, il li demanderoit comment Hangus fu mors, car
would-come he him would-ask how Hengist was dead for
gaires de gent ne savoient sa mort. Ensi attendi li rois
much of folk not knew his death Thus awaited the king
tant que un jour avint que il revenoit dou moustier,
so-long that one day happened that he returned from-the minster
si vint devant lui uns moult biaus preudom bien viestus
so came before him a very handsome worthy-man well clothed
et moult bien sambla preudom. Et vint devant le roi et
and very well seemed worthy-man And came before the king and
le salua et li dist: «Sire, k'atendés vous en ceste vile?»
him greeted and to-him said Lord what-await you in this town
Et li rois se li dist: «Je attendoie que Merlins venist
And the king so to-him said I awaited that Merlin should-come
parler a moi.» Et li preudom li dist: «Sire, vous n'estes
to-speak to me And the worthy-man to-him said Lord you not-are
mie si sages que vous le puissiés connoistre quant il parole
at-all so wise that you him may know when he speaks
a vous. Et apielés cheus qui vous avés amené qui Merlin
to you And call those whom you have brought who Merlin
doivent connoistre; si lor demandés si je porroie icil
must know so to-them ask if I could that-same
Merlins estre.» Et li rois s'esmierveilla moult et fist icheus
Merlin be And the king himself-marveled much and made those
apieler et lor dist: «Signour, nous attendons Merlin, mais
call and to-them said Lords we await Merlin but

il n'i a celui a mon ensient qui le connoisse. Et se
it not-there has that-one to my knowledge who him may-know And if
vous le connissiés, si le dites.» Et il respondent au roi:
you him knew so it say And they answer to-the king
«Sire, il ne porroit estre que se nous le veions, nous ne le
Lord it not could be that if we him saw we not him
connissions bien.» Et li preudom qui fu devant le roi dist:
should-know well And the worthy-man who was before the king said
«Signeur, puet il mais connoistre autrui qui soi meismes
Lords can he ever know another who himself even
ne connoist mie bien?» Et il respondent: «Nous ne disons
not knows at-all well And they answer We not say
pas que nous le connissons de tous ses affaires, mais nous
at-all that we him know of all his affairs but we
le connisterons bien, se nous le veions.» Et li preudom
him shall-know well if we him see And the worthy-man
respont: «Il ne connoist pas bien homme qui ne connoist
answers He not knows at-all well man who not knows
sa faiture, et sel vous mousterrai ore.» Lors apiela le roi
his make and so-it to-you shall-show now Then called the king
en une cambre a conseil tout seul et li dist: «Sire, je
into a chamber in counsel all alone and to-him said Lord I
voel estre moult bien de vous et de Uter vostre frere. Et
wish to-be very well with you and with Uther your brother And
sachés que je sui cil Merlins que vous estes venu querre.
know that I am that Merlin whom you are come to-seek
Mais ceste gent qui me cuident connoistre ne sevent riens
But these folk who me think to-know not know anything
de mon estre. Et se le vous mousterrai ja. Alés la hors et
of my being And so it to-you shall-show now Go there outside and
si m'amenés cheus qui che dient que bien me connoissent.
so me-bring those who this say that well me know

Et si tost comme il me verront, il diront qu'il m'aront
And so soon as they me will-see they will-say that-they me-will-have
trouvé, et se je voloie jamais ne me connisteroient.»
found and if I wished ever not me would-know
Quant li rois oi chou, si en fu moult liés, et dist:
When the king heard this so thereof was very glad and said
«Merlins, je ferai canques tu vourras.» Et lors issi li rois
Merlin I shall-do whatever thou wilt-wish And then issued the king
fors de sa chambre et ala en la sale au plus tost qu'il
out of his chamber and went into the hall at-the most soon that-he
puet, et amena cheus. Et quant il furent venu en la
can and brought those And when they were come into the
chambre, si ot Merlins pris samblanche tele ou il l'avoient
chamber so had Merlin taken semblance such as they him-had
premiers veu. Et quant il le virent, si disent au roi:
first seen And when they him saw so said to-the king
«Sire, nous disons certainnement que c'est Merlins.» Et
Lord we say certainly that it-is Merlin And
Merlins dist au roi: «Sire, il vous dient voir. Or me
Merlin said to-the king Lord they you tell true Now me
dites vostre plaisir.» Et li rois dist: «Merlins, je te vaurroie
tell your pleasure And the king said Merlin I thee would-wish
moult priier, se il te plaisoit, que tu me dies se je parlai
much to-pray if it thee pleased that thou me tell if I spoke
puis a toi que je ving en ceste part pour toi querre.» Et
since to thee that I came into this part for thee to-seek And
Merlins dist: «Sire, je sui li hom a qui tu parlas ou
Merlin said Lord I am the man to whom thou spokest in-the
bois, qui gardoit les bestes, et sui cil qui vous dist que
wood who kept the beasts and am he who you told that
Hangus estoit mors.» Quant li rois oi Merlin et cil qui
Hengist was dead When the king heard Merlin and those who

avoec lui estoient parler, si s'esmervillierent moult. Lors dist
with him were speak so themselves-marveled much Then said
li rois: «Signour, vous connissiés malvaisement Merlin, quant
the king Lords you know badly Merlin when
il entra devant vous et si nel peustes connoistre.» Et
he entered before you and so not-him could know And
cil dient: «Nous ne le veismes onques mais tel chose faire.
those say We not him saw ever more such thing do
Mais, sire, nous creons bien que il puet chou moult bien
But lord we believe well that he can this very well
faire que nus autres hom ne porroit faire.» Lors demanda
do which any other man not could do Then asked
li rois a Merlin: «Merlins, comment seustes vous de la
the king of Merlin Merlin how knew you of the
mort Hangus?» «Sire, je le seuch quant vous fustes cha
death (of-)Hengist Lord I it knew when you were hither
venus, que Hangus vaut vostre frere ochirre. Et jou alai a
come that Hengist wished your brother kill And I went to
vostre frere, se li dis. Et la merchi de Dieu et la soie
your brother so to-him told And the mercy of God and the his-own
il m'en crut bien, si se garda de lui. Et je li dis
he me-thereof believed well so himself guarded from him And I to-him told
bien la forche et la viertu de lui. Car il devoit tous seuls
well the strength and the might of him For he must all alone
venir au pavillon vostre frere pour li occhirre. Et vostre
come to-the pavilion (of-)your brother for him to-kill And your
freres quant je li avoie che dit, il ne m'en crei pas.
brother when I to-him had this said he not me-thereof believed at-all
Mais tant fist il que il veilla cele nuit tous seus, que
But so-much did he that he watched that night all alone so-that
onques a nului ne le dist, et s'arma que onques nus
ever to anyone not it told and himself-armed so-that ever anyone

ne le sot. Ensi garda vostre freres la nuit son paveillon
not it knew Thus guarded your brother the night his pavilion
tant que Hangus vint. Et quant il fu venus au paveillon,
until that Hengist came And when he was come to-the pavilion
si entra et cerka vostre frere ou il le cuida trouver.
so entered and searched-for your brother where he him thought to-find
Mais non fist, si vaut issir hors. Et vostre freres li
But not did so wished to-go out And your brother to-him
vint au devant, si se combati a lui et l'ot tost
came to-the front so himself fought with him and him-had soon
mort, car il estoit desarmés. Car Hangus n'i estoit venus
killed for he was unarmed For Hengist not-there was come
se pour vostre frere non occhirre en dormant et por tost
if for your brother not to-kill in sleeping and for soon
fuir arriere, se mestier li fust.» Quant li rois oi cele
to-flee back if need to-him were When the king heard that
merveille que Merlins li dist, se li demande: «Merlins,
marvel that Merlin to-him told so to-him asks Merlin
en quele samblance estiés vous quant vous parlastes a mon
in which semblance were you when you spoke to my
frere? Car je m'esmierveille moult quant il vous crei.» Et
brother For I myself-marvel much when he you believed And
Merlins dist: «Sire, je pris le samblance d'un homme viel
Merlin said Lord I took the semblance of-a man old
et chenu, si parlai a vostre frere a conseil, se li dis
and white-haired so spoke to your brother in counsel so to-him told
bien que cele nuit, se il ne s'i gardoit, le converroit
well that that night if he not himself-there guarded him would-behoove
morir.» Et li rois li demande: «Li desistes que vos estiés
to-die And the king to-him asks Him told-you that you were
Merlins?» «Sire, encore ne set vostre freres qui li a dit,
Merlin Lord still not knows your brother who to-him has said

ne il ne le savra devant chou que vous li dirés. Et pour
nor he not it will-know before this that you him will-tell And for
chou vous mandai ge par vos honmes que vous n'avriés
this you sent-word I by your men that you not-would-have
le chastiel devant chou que Hangus fust mors.» Et li rois
the castle before this that Hengist were dead And the king
dist: «Merlins, biaus amis chiers, verrés vous ent avoecques
said Merlin fair friend dear will-come you thence with
moi? car je ai grant mestier de vous et de vostre aide.»
me for I have great need of you and of your aid
Et Merlins dist: «Sire, et plus tost iroie et plus tost
And Merlin said Lord and more soon would-I-go and more soon
se courcheroient vostre honme de chou que il verroient
themselves would-anger your men of this that they would-see
que vous me querriés. Mais se vous i veés vostre preu
that you me would-believe But if you there see your profit
et vous estes sages, vous ne lairés ja por iaus que vous
and you are wise you not will-leave ever for them that you
ne m'en creés por vostre besoigne faire et de vostre anui
— me-thereof believe for your business to-do and of your trouble
destorner.» Et li rois dist: «Merlins, vous m'avés ja tant
to-turn-aside And the king said Merlin you me-have already so-much
fait et dit, que se chou est voir que vous aiiés mon frere
done and said that if this is true that you may-have my brother
garandi de mort, si comme vous dites, que je ne vous doi
protected from death so as you say that I not you must
jamais douter ne mescroire.» Et Merlins dist au roi: «Sire,
ever doubt nor disbelieve And Merlin said to-the king Lord
vous en irés et demanderés a vostre frere qui li dist
you thence will-go and will-ask of your brother who to-him said
chou que je vous ai dit. Et se il ne le vous set a dire,
this that I to-you have said And if he not it to-you knows to tell

si ne me creés jamais de chose que je vous die. Et bien
so not me believe ever of thing that I to-you may-say And well
sachés que je vaurrai que vous me connissiés quant je parlerai
know that I shall-wish that you me know when I shall-speak
a vostre frere en tele samblance quant je li dis de la
to your brother in such semblance as I to-him told of the
mort Hangus.» Et li rois dist: «Merlins, pour Diu, plaist il
death (of-)Hengist And the king said Merlin for God pleases it
a vous que je le sache, quant mes freres parlera a vous?»
to you that I it may-know when my brother will-speak to you
Et Merlins respont: «Vous le saverés moult volentiers, mais
And Merlin answers You it will-know very willingly but
gardés si cier comme vous vous avés que vous nel dites a
guard so dear as you yourself hold that you not-it tell to
autrui. Car se je vous prendoie a ceste menchoigne, je ne
another For if I you took in this lie I not
vous querroie jamais une autre fois, et vous i avriés
you would-believe ever one other time and you there would-have
gringnour damage que je.» Li rois li dist: «Ja puis ke
greater harm than I The king to-him said Ever after that
je vous avrai une fois menti, si ne me creés jamais.»
I you shall-have one time lied so not me believe ever
Merlins dist: «Sire, je vous essaierai, che vous di je bien,
Merlin said Lord I you shall-test this to-you say I well
en mainte maniere.» Et li rois dist: «Che voel je bien.» «Et
in many-a manner And the king said This wish I well And
voel bien,» fait Merlins, «que vous saichiés que je parlerai
wish well says Merlin that you know that I shall-speak
a vostre frere a l'onsime jour que vous parlerés a lui.»
to your brother on the-eleventh day that you will-speak to him

Merlin and the Two Brothers

XII

Pendragon tells Uther that the old man who saved him from Hengist will speak to him in eleven days. That day Merlin comes as a boy with a letter from Uther's beloved, then in the evening as the old man, and turns back into the boy while Uther fetches the king. Uther cannot believe one man is both. Merlin agrees to stay near the brothers and counsel them, though at times he must keep away from people.

Ore dist li contes que ensi s'acointa Merlins au roi
Now says the tale that thus himself-acquainted Merlin with-the king
Pandragon et prist congié a lui, si s'en ala a son
Pendragon and took leave of him so himself-thence went to his
maistre Blaise et li redist toutes ces choses, et Blaises
master Blaise and to-him retold all these things and Blaise
le mist en escrit et par lui le savons nous. Et Pandragons
it put in writing and by him it know we And Pendragon
s'en vint par ses jornees tant que il vint la ou
himself-thence came by his days'-journeys until that he came there where
ses freres estoit. Et quant Uter vit Pandragon, si en fu
his brother was And when Uther saw Pendragon so thereof was
moult liés. Et Pandragons, si tost comme il se furent
very glad And Pendragon so soon as they themselves were
entresalué, si traist son frere a une part et li conte de
greeted so drew his brother to one side and to-him tells of
la mort de Hangus, si comme Merlins li ot conté, et
the death of Hengist so as Merlin to-him had told and
li demanda se il avoit voir dit: «Je ne sai,» dit Uter, «qui
him asked if he had true said I not know said Uther who
le vous a dit, mais si m'ait Dieus, vous m'avés tel chose
it to-you has said but so me-help God you me-have such thing

dite que je ne cuidoie que nus seust fors Dius et uns
said that I not thought that anyone knew except God and a
preudoms moult vieus qui en conseil le dist a moi, mais
worthy-man very old who in counsel it said to me but
je ne cuidoie que nus hom le seust ne le peust savoir.» Et
I not thought that any man it knew nor it could know And
Uters dist au roi: «Sire, pour Dieu, dirés moi qui vous a
Uther said to-the king Lord for God tell me who you has
ore che dit. Car moult m'esmerveil comment vous le savés.»
now this said For much I-marvel how you it know
Et il dist: «Je le sai bien, mais je vous pri que vous me
And he said I it know well but I you pray that you me
dites ki li preudom fu qui vous sauva de mort. Car il
tell who the worthy-man was who you saved from death For it
m'est bien avis de tant que j'en ai apris que, se il ne
to-me-is well opinion of so-much that I-thereof have learned that if he not
fust, Hangus vous eust ochis.» Et Uter li dist: «Sire,
were Hengist you would-have killed And Uther to-him said Lord
par la foi que je vous doi je ne sai que il fu. Mais moult
by the faith that I you owe I not know who he was But much
me sambla preudom et sages. Et pour chou que il me
me seemed worthy-man and wise And for this that he me
sambloit, le crei jou, car il ne me dist chose dont je nel
seemed him believed I for he not me told thing of-which I not-it
deusse bien croire.» Et dist: «Moult fist grant hardement
should well believe And said Very did great boldness
qui en nostre ost et en mon pavillon me vaut ochirre.»
who in our host and in my pavilion me wished to-kill
Et Pandragons dist: «Connisteriés vous jamais cel homme
And Pendragon said Would-know you ever that man
se vous le veiiés?» Et Uters dist: «Sire, je le connisteroie
if you him saw And Uther said Lord I him would-know

bien, che m'est il avis.» Et Pandragons dist: «Je vous faich
well this to-me-is it opinion And Pendragon said I you make
bien a savoir que il parlera a vous d'ui en onze jours.
well to know that he will-speak to you from-today in eleven days
Mais tant faites pour l'amour de moi que vous ne soiés a
But so-much do for the-love of me that you not be on
cel jor fors que entour moi, tant que li jors soit passés, si
that day except that about me until that the day be passed so
que je voie cheus qui a vous parleront chelui jour.» Ensi
that I may-see those who to you will-speak that-same day Thus
l'ont pris li doi frere que il seront ensamble a cel jour.
it-have taken the two brothers that they will-be together on that day
Et Merlins qui toutes ces choses savoit, por aus acointier
And Merlin who all these things knew for them to-acquaint
et estre de bon acomplissement et de boine compaignie,
and to-be of good accomplishment and of good company
a dit a Blaise comment li doi frere ont parlé de lui et
has said to Blaise how the two brothers have spoken of him and
comment li rois le veult essaiier. Et Blaises li demande:
how the king him wishes to-test And Blaise him asks
«Que vaurrés contre ces choses faire?» Et Merlins respont:
What will-you-wish against these things do And Merlin answers
«Il sont jovle homme et joli, et je ne les porroie en nule
They are young men and merry and I not them could in any
maniere si bien traire a amour comme par faire et par
manner so well draw to love as by doing and by
dire une partie de leur volenté et par aus metre en joie
saying a part of their will and by them to-put in joy
et par bieles risees. Je sai,» dist Merlins, «une dame que
and by fair laughter I know said Merlin a lady whom
Uters aimme, si verrai a lui, se li aporterai unes lettres
Uther loves so shall-come to him so to-him shall-bring a letter

de par li, que vous me ferés, en tele maniere que il me
on behalf-of her that you me will-make in such manner that he me
croie de che que je li dirai. Ensi passerai cel onsime
may-believe of this that I to-him shall-say Thus shall-I-pass that eleventh
jour que il me verront ambedui et si ne me connisteront.
day that they me will-see both and so not me will-know
Et quant venra l'endemain, je m'i acointerai d'aus
And when will-come the-next-day I myself-there shall-acquaint with-them
deus ensamble, si m'en savront gringneur gré.» Ensi que
two together so me-thereof will-know greater thanks Thus as
Merlins le dist, le fist Blaises. Et Merlins vint a l'onsime
Merlin it said it did Blaise And Merlin came on the-eleventh
jour, et ot prise la samblance d'un garchon a l'amie Uter.
day and had taken the semblance of-a boy of the-beloved (of-)Uther
Et vint en la place la ou il le vit devant son frere, et
And came into the place there where he him saw before his brother and
li dist: «Sire, ma dame vous salue et vous envoie ces
to-him said Lord my lady you greets and you sends this
lettres.» Et Uters les prist qui en ot moult grant joie et
letter And Uther it took who thereof had very great joy and
cuide bien vraiement que s'amie li ait envoiié, si les fait
thinks well truly that his-beloved to-him has sent so it makes
lire a un clerc. Et les lettres disoient que il le creist
read to a clerk And the letter said that he him should-believe
de canques il disoit. Et Merlins dist chou que Uters plus
of whatever he said And Merlin said this that Uther most
volentiers ooit. Ensi fu Uters cel onsime jour devant son
willingly heard Thus was Uther that eleventh day before his
frere. Et Uters fist moult grant joie a chelui qui les lettres
brother And Uther made very great joy to that-one who the letter
avoit apportees, et fu moult liés toute jour de la boine
had brought and was very glad all day of the good

nouviele que il avoit oie de s'amie. Et quant vint vers le
news that he had heard of his-beloved And when came toward the
viespre, si s'esmiervilla moult Pandragons de Merlin qui li
evening so himself-marveled much Pendragon at Merlin who to-him
ot en couvent a cel jour que il verroit parler a Uter.
had in covenant on that day that he would-come to-speak to Uther
Ensi atendirent entre Pandragon et Uter son frere
Thus waited between Pendragon and Uther his brother
tant que viespres furent passees. Et quant il fu bien
until that vespers were passed And when it was well
avespré, Uters et Pandragons se traisent a une part et
evening Uther and Pendragon themselves drew to one side and
commenchierent a parler ensamble. Et Merlins se traist
began to speak together And Merlin himself drew
a une part et prist la samblance que il avoit lors quant il
to one side and took the semblance that he had then when he
parla a Uter. Et s'en vint a sa herberge et demanda
spoke to Uther And himself-thence came to his lodging and asked-for
Uter, et l'en li dit qu'il est au roi, et il l'envoie
Uther and one to-him says that-he is with-the king and he him-sends
querre par un message qui li dit veiant son frere que
to-seek by a messenger who to-him says in-sight-of his brother that
uns moult biaus preudom le demande a son pavillon Et
a very handsome worthy-man him asks-for at his pavilion And
li rois li dist: «Je cuit ce soit Merlins.» Et dist a Uter
the king to-him said I think it be Merlin And said to Uther
que il l'alast querre. Et cil si fist et dist: «Sire, veés
that he him-should-go seek And he so did and said Lord see
le chi.» Et quant li rois le vit, si demanda a Uter, se
him here And when the king him saw so asked of Uther if
li prodom venoit qui de mort l'avoit garandi, que il li
the worthy-man came who from death him-had protected that he to-him

desist. Et il li dist que si feroit il sans faille. Ensi
should-say And he to-him said that so would-do he without fail Thus
vint Uters a son pavillon et trouva le preudomme qui de
came Uther to his pavilion and found the worthy-man who from
mort l'avoit garandi. Et il le vit et le connut moult bien
death him-had protected And he him saw and him knew very well
et li fist moult grant joie et parla a lui de pluseurs
and to-him made very great joy and spoke with him of several
choses et li dist: «Sire, vous m'avés sauvé de mort. Mais
things and to-him said Lord you me-have saved from death But
de chou m'esmierveille jou que me sires m'a tout conté
of this myself-marvel I that my lord me-has all told
canques vous me desistes et chou que je fis quant vous
whatever you to-me said and this that I did when you
fustes de moi partis. Et me dist que vous deviés hui venir,
were from me parted And me told that you were-to today come
et m'a prié et commandé que se vous veniés que je li
and me-has prayed and commanded that if you came that I to-him
fesisse savoir. Et me dist ore que se vous estiés che
should-make know And me told now that if you were this-one
que je l'alaisse querre; mais moult m'esmerveil comment il
that I him-should-go seek but much I-marvel how he
sot chou que vous m'aviés dit.» Et Merlins dist: «Il ne le
knew this that you me-had said And Merlin said He not it
peust savoir se on ne li eust dit. Alés le querre, se li
could know if one not to-him had said Go him seek so him
demandés devant moi qui li dist.» Atant s'en torna
ask before me who to-him said Thereupon himself-thence turned
Uters pour aler querre le roi et commanda a chiaus qui
Uther for to-go seek the king and commanded to those who
furent fors dou pavillon qu'il gardaissent bien que nus
were outside of-the pavilion that-they should-guard well that anyone

n'entrast laiens. Et Merlins, si tost que Uters fu fors, prist
not-entered in-there And Merlin so soon as Uther was out took
la samblance dou garchon qui avoit aporté les lettres. Et
the semblance of-the boy who had brought the letter And
quant Uters et Pandragon cuidierent trouver le preudomme
when Uther and Pendragon thought to-find the worthy-man
el pavillon, si trouverent le garchon. Et quant Uters le
in-the pavilion so found the boy And when Uther him
vit, si dist: «Sire, je voi merveilles, que je laissai ore chi le
saw so said Lord I see marvels for I left now here the
preudomme que je vous avoie dit, et ore n'i truis que
worthy-man whom I to-you had told and now not-there find but
ce varlet. Tenés vous chi, et je demanderai ces gens se il
this lad Hold you here and I shall-ask these folk if they
le virent issir ne che vallet entrer çaiens.» Ensi s'en
him saw go-out nor this lad enter in-here Thus himself-thence
issi Uters dou pavillon. Et li rois commencha a rire
issued Uther from-the pavilion And the king began to laugh
moult durement. Et Uters demanda a chiaus defors: «Veistes
very hard And Uther asked of those outside Saw
vous nului entrer chaiens puis que je alai querre mon
you anyone enter in-here since that I went to-seek my
frere?» Et il dient que nennil. Lors vint Uters au roi
brother And they say that no Then came Uther to-the king
arriere, se li dist: «Sire, je ne sai que che puet estre.»
back so to-him said Lord I not know what this can be
Lors demanda Uters au garchon: «Et tu quant venis tu
Then asked Uther of-the boy And thou when camest thou
chaiens?» Et il dist: «Jou i estoie quant vous en alastes
in-here And he said I there was when you thence went
et vous parlastes au preudomme.» Et Uters se saigne
and you spoke to-the worthy-man And Uther himself crosses

et dist au roi: «Si m'ait Dieus, je sui tous enchantés, ne
and said to-the king So me-help God I am all enchanted nor
onques mais che n'avint a homme que avenu m'est.» Et
ever more this not-happened to man which happened to-me-is And
quant li rois ot ensi parler Uters, si rist, et sot bien
when the king heard thus speak Uther so laughed and knew well
en son cuer que c'estoit Merlins qui tout che faisoit. Lors
in his heart that it-was Merlin who all this did Then
dist li rois: «Biau frere, je ne cuidoie pas que vous me
said the king Fair brother I not thought at-all that you me
mentesissiés.» Et Uters respont: «Je sui si esbahis que je
would-lie And Uther answers I am so amazed that I
ne sai que je doi dire.» Et li rois demande: «Qui est chis
not know what I must say And the king asks Who is this
varlès?» Et Uters dist: «C'est li vallès qui m'aporta les lettres
lad And Uther said It-is the lad who me-brought the letter
devant vous.» Et li rois demande: «Connissiés le vous?»
before you And the king asks Know him you
Et il dist: «Oil bien.» Et li rois si dist: «Uters, vous est
And he said Yes well And the king so said Uther to-you is
il avis que che puet estre li preudom por coi vous me
it opinion that this can be the worthy-man for which you me
venistes querre?» Et Uters dist: «Che ne porroit pas estre.»
came to-seek And Uther said This not could at-all be
Et li rois li dist: «Or alons entre moi et vous la fors.
And the king to-him said Now let-us-go between me and you there outside
Et se il veult que nous le trouvons, nous le trouverons
And if he wishes that we him find we him shall-find
bien.» Atant s'en issirent dou pavillon et esturent
well Thereupon themselves-thence issued from-the pavilion and stood
une pieche. Et puis dist li rois a un de ses chevaliers:
a while And then said the king to one of his knights

«Alés veoir qui est laiens.» Et cil i va et trueve le
Go see who is in-there And that-one there goes and finds the
preudomme qui seoit en un lit. Et revint arriere et lour
worthy-man who sat on a bed And came back and to-them
dist. Et quant Uters l'oi, si en ot moult grant merveille
said And when Uther it-heard so thereof had very great marvel
et dist: «Dieus aie! Or voi je che que je ne cuidoie mie
and said God help Now see I this that I not thought at-all
que nus hom peust veoir. Sire, veschi le preudoume sans
that any man could see Lord here-is the worthy-man without
faille qui me garandi de mort.» Quant li rois oi chou,
fail who me protected from death When the king heard this
si ot grant joie et dist que bien fust il venus. Et li rois
so had great joy and said that well were he come And the king
li dist: «Sire, volés vous que je le die mon frere qui
to-him said Lord wish you that I it tell (to-)my brother who
vous estes?» Et Merlins dist: «Je voel bien que il le sache.»
you are And Merlin said I wish well that he it may-know
Atant dist li rois a Uter: «Biau frere, moult connissiés
Thereupon said the king to Uther Fair brother very know-you
mal les affaires de cel preudomme. Et ou est il li
ill the affairs of that worthy-man And where is he the
garchons qui vous aporta les lettres?» Et Uters li dist:
boy who you brought the letter And Uther to-him said
«Sire, il estoit ore chi; k'en volés or faire?» Et li rois
Lord he was now here what-thereof wish-you now do And the king
et Merlins commenchierent a rire. Et Merlins apiele le roi
and Merlin began to laugh And Merlin calls the king
a conseil, se li conte chou que il avoit dit a Uter de
to counsel so to-him tells this that he had said to Uther of
s'amie. Et li commande que il li redie devant lui. Lors
his-beloved And him commands that he to-him retell before him Then

apiela li rois Uter tout en riant et li dist: «Biaus frere,
called the king Uther all in laughing and to-him said Fair brother
ou avés perdut le varlet qui vous aporta les lettres?» Et
where have-you lost the lad who you brought the letter And
quant Uters l'ot, si s'en esmierveilla moult et dist au
when Uther it-hears so himself-thereat marveled much and said to-the
roi: «Pour coi, sire, me ramentevés vous che vallet?» Et li
king For what lord me remind you this lad And the
rois dist: «Pour les boines novielles que il vous a aportees
king said For the good news that he you has brought
de la dame que vous savés.» Et se li dist: «Je vous en
of the lady whom you know And so to-him said I you thereof
dirai chou que j'en sai devant che preudomme.» Et Uters
shall-tell this that I-thereof know before this worthy-man And Uther
respont: «Je le voel bien.» Et il li otroie, pour chou que
answers I it wish well And he to-him grants for this that
il ne cuidoit pas que nus hom le seust fors cil qui li
he not thought at-all that any man it knew except he who to-him
avoit dit. Et li rois li conta tout mot a mot canques li
had said And the king to-him told all word by word whatever the
varlès li avoit dit. Quant Uters oi chou, si s'esmiervilla
lad to-him had said When Uther heard this so himself-marveled
moult et li dist: «Dites moi comment vous le savés.»
much and to-him said Tell me how you it know
Et li rois li respont: «Si ferai jou, se chis preudom
And the king to-him answers So shall-do I if this worthy-man
veult qui chi est.» Et Uters dist: «Sire, k'en tient il
wishes who here is And Uther said Lord what-thereof holds he
a che preudomme?» Et li rois dist: «Je nel puis faire
to this worthy-man And the king said I not-it can do
se il ne le me commande.» Et quant Uters oi chou, si
if he not it to-me commands And when Uther heard this so

s'esmervilla moult et commencha a regarder le preudomme
himself-marveled much and began to look-at the worthy-man
et li dist: «Sire, je vous pri que vous commandés a
and to-him said Lord I you pray that you command to
mon frere que il le die si comme il set, et qui li
my brother that he it tell so as he knows and who to-him
dist.» Et Merlin dist a Uter que il veut bien que il le die.
said And Merlin said to Uther that he wishes well that he it tell
Adont dist li rois: «Biau frere, vous ne savés qui chis
Then said the king Fair brother you not know who this
preudom est. Mais tant voel jou bien que vous sachiés que
worthy-man is But so-much wish I well that you may-know that
c'est li plus sages hom et li plus preudom dou monde,
it-is the most wise man and the most worthy of-the world
et dont nous avons grignour mestier, de son conseil et
and of-whom we have greater need of his counsel and
de s'aide; et tant saichiés vous bien que il a tel pooir
of his-aid and so-much know you well that he has such power
comme je vous dirai, ne nus autres garchons ne vous aporta
as I to-you shall-tell nor any other boy not you brought
les lettres se il non. Et se est cil qui vous a dit les
the letter if he not And so is he who you has told the
privees paroles de vostre amie.» Et quant Uters oi chou,
private words of your beloved And when Uther heard this
si en fu moult esbahis et dist au roi: «Sire, comment
so thereof was very amazed and said to-the king Lord how
porroie jou chou croire? Car ce seroit la gringnour mierveille
could I this believe For it would-be the greatest marvel
dou monde se che pooit estre voirs.» «Biau frere,» dist li
of-the world if this could be true Fair brother said the
rois, «vraiement le poés croire.» Et Uters respont: «Sire,
king truly it can-you believe And Uther answers Lord

che ne porroie jou croire se je nel veoie autrement que
this not could I believe if I not-it saw otherwise than
par vostre dire.» Lors pria li rois Merlin que il l'en
by your saying Then prayed the king Merlin that he to-him-thereof
fache auchune demoustrance. Et Merlins dist: «Je l'en
make some showing And Merlin said I to-him-thereof
ferai assés.» Et lors dist Merlins au roi: «Sire, alés
shall-make enough And then said Merlin to-the king Lord go
un peu la fors et je li mousterrai la samblance d'un
a little there outside and I to-him shall-show the semblance of-a
garchon.» Et quant il l'ot prise, si apiela Uter et li
boy And when he it-had taken so called Uther and to-him
dist: «Sire, je m'en voel aler, et si commandés chou que
said Lord I myself-thence wish to-go and so command this that
vous vaurrés.» Et Uters le commande a Dieu. Et lors vint
you will-wish And Uther him commends to God And then came
li rois a son frere, se li dist a conseil et li demande:
the king to his brother so to-him said in counsel and him asks
«Que vous est il avis de che vallet? A painnes querriés
What to-you is it opinion of this lad At pains would-believe
vous que che fust il qui parla ore a vous.» Et Uters dist:
you that this were he who spoke now to you And Uther said
«Je sui si esbahis que je ne sai que je doie vous dire.»
I am so amazed that I not know what I must to-you say
Et li rois dist: «Soiés tous certains que c'est chius qui fist
And the king said Be all certain that it-is he who made
que Hangus ne vous ochist mie, et que c'est cil que j'alai
that Hengist not you killed at-all and that it-is he whom I-went
querre en Norhomberlande, et que il a tel pooir qu'il set
to-seek in Northumberland and that he has such power that-he knows
toutes les choses faites, dites et alees, et des choses qui
all the things done said and gone and of-the things which

sont a avenir une grant partie. Pour coi nous li deverions
are to come a great part For which we him should
bien priier que il fust bien acointes de nous, et que nous
well to-pray that he were well acquainted with us and that we
fesissiens par lui tous nous affaires.» Et Uters respont: «Sire,
should-do by him all our affairs And Uther answers Lord
se il li plaisoit, teuls hom nous averoit boin mestier.»
if it him pleased such man to-us would-have good need

Atant priierent li frere ambedoi Merlin que por Dieu
Thereupon prayed the brothers both Merlin that for God
et pour che que il le querroient de canques il vaurroit
and for this that they him would-believe of whatever he would-wish
que il remaingne entour aus. Et Merlins respont: «Signeur,
that he remain about them And Merlin answers Lords
vous devés savoir ambedoi que je sai toutes les choses
you must know both that I know all the things
celees que je voel savoir. Et vous, sire,» fait Merlins au
hidden that I wish to-know And you lord says Merlin to-the
roi, «ne savés vous bien que je vous ai dit voir de toutes
king not know you well that I you have told true of all
les choses que vous m'avés demandees?» Et li rois respont:
the things that you me-have asked And the king answers
«Je ne te trouvai onques en nule menchoigne.» «Et vous,
I not thee found ever in any lie And you
Uters, et ne vous ai jou voir dit de vostre amie de chou
Uther and not to-you have I true told of your beloved of this
que vous cuidiés que nus hom peust savoir?» Et Uters
which you thought that any man could know And Uther
respont: «Vous m'avés tant dit que mais a nul jour ne
answers You me-have so-much told that ever on any day not
vous mesquerrai. Et pour chou que je sai que vous estes
you shall-I-disbelieve And for this that I know that you are

si preudom et si sages vaurroie jou que vous fuissiés entour
so worthy and so wise would-wish I that you were about
nous.» Et Merlins respont: «Je i serai moult volentiers.
us And Merlin answers I there shall-be very willingly
Mais je voel que vous sachiés entre vous deus priveement
But I wish that you may-know between you two privately
mon affaire. Si sachiés que il m'en convient par force, par
my affair So know that it me-thereof behooves by force at
fies, eskiver de la gent. Mais tant sachiés vous bien que
times to-shun of the folk But so-much know you well that
en tous les lius u je serai serai je plus ramembrés de
in all the places where I shall-be shall-be I more mindful of
vos oevres que d'autrui. Et ja ne savrai que vous soiiés
your works than of-another's And ever not shall-I-know that you be
encombrés de nule chose que je ne vous viegne aidier a
encumbered of any thing that I not you may-come to-aid to
mon pooir. Mais tant vous pri jou que se vous volés avoir
my power But so-much you pray I that if you wish to-have
ma compaignie que vous n'en caille quant je m'en
my company that you not-thereof may-care when I myself-thence
irai. Et toutes les fois quant je revenrai, si me faites grant
shall-go And all the times when I shall-return so me make great
joie devant la gent. Si m'en ameront mieus li preudonme.
joy before the folk So me-thereof will-love better the worthy-men
Et li mauvais, cil qui ne vous ameront riens, me harront.
And the bad those who not you will-love anything me will-hate
Et se vous me moustrés biele chiere, il n'en oseront
And if you me show fair face they not-thereof will-dare
ja faire samblant. Et sachiés que je ne me mouverai pas
ever make semblance And know that I not myself shall-move at-all
en pieche de ma samblance, se a vous non priveement
in a-while from my semblance if to you not privately

ne me mousterrai. Et verrai ja devant vous a vostre
not myself shall-show And shall-come now before you at your
ostel. Et cil qui autre fois m'avront veu vous courront dire
lodging And those who another time me-will-have seen to-you will-run to-say
que je suis venus. Et si tost coume vous l'orrés, si faites
that I am come And so soon as you it-will-hear so make
samblant que vous en soiiés moult liés. Et il vous diront
semblance that you thereof be very glad And they to-you will-say
que je sui moult bons devins. Et vous demanderés tout
that I am very good seer And you will-ask all
seurement canques vostre consaus vous loera, et je vous
surely whatever your council you will-advise and I you
consillerai de toutes les choses que vous me demanderés.»
shall-counsel of all the things that you me will-ask

The Threefold Death

XIII

Merlin counsels the king to let the besieged Saxons leave the land in his ships. A baron who envies Merlin feigns sickness three times, twice in disguise, and Merlin foretells that he will break his neck, hang, and drown. Long after, the baron's palfrey falls on a wooden bridge, and he breaks his neck and hangs from a stake with his head in the water. Merlin says he will now speak only darkly.

Chi endroit dist li contes que Merlins prist congiet a
Here in-place says the tale that Merlin took leave of
Pandragon et a Uter pour prendre samblance a quoi les
Pendragon and of Uther for to-take semblance by which the
gens de la terre le reconneussent. Quant Merlins s'en
folk of the land him might-recognize When Merlin himself-thence
parti d'aus, si vint a cheus qui avoient esté dou conseil
parted from-them so came to those who had been of-the council

Vertigier. Et quant cil le virent, si en furent moult lié,
(of-)Vortigern And when those him saw so thereof were very glad
et maintenant coururent dire au roy que Merlins estoit
and at-once ran to-tell to-the king that Merlin was
venus. Et quant li rois l'oi, si en fu moult liés et ala
come And when the king it-heard so thereof was very glad and went
a l'encontre de li. Et cil qui amoient Merlin li disent:
to the-meeting of him And those who loved Merlin to-him said
«Merlins, veschi le roi qui vient encontre vous.» Grans fu
Merlin here-is the king who comes to-meet you Great was
la joie que li rois fist de Merlin, si l'en mena a son
the joy that the king made of Merlin so him-thence led to his
hostel. Et si tost comme il fu laiens, les gens dou conseil
lodging And so soon as he was in-there the folk of-the council
le roi le traisent a une part, se li disent: «Sire, veschi
(of-)the king him drew to one side so to-him said Lord here-is
Merlin qui est li mieudres devins qui soit. Mais priiés li
Merlin who is the best seer who may-be But pray him
que il vous die comment vous prenderés cel chastiel et que
that he you tell how you will-take that castle and that
il vous die a quoi la guerre des Saisnes et de vous venra.
he you tell to what the war of-the Saxons and of you will-come
Et saichiés, se il veult, il le vous dira bien.» Et li rois
And know if he wishes he it to-you will-tell well And the king
dist que il li demandera moult volentiers. Lors laissierent
said that he him will-ask very willingly Then left-off
atant ester pour chou que li rois voloit Merlin moult
thereupon to-be for this that the king wished Merlin much
honnerer. Et quant vint au tierch jour apriès, si fu tous
to-honor And when came to-the third day after so was all
li consaus le roi assamblés. Lors mist li rois Merlin
the council (of-)the king assembled Then put the king Merlin

a conseil de che que ses consaus li avoit dit: «Merlins,
to counsel of this that his council to-him had said Merlin
biaus dous amis, jou ai oi dire que vous estes moult
fair sweet friend I have heard say that you are very
sages, si vous pri et requier que vous me dites comment
wise so you pray and ask that you me tell how
je porrai cel chastiel avoir, et de ces Saisnes qui sont
I shall-be-able that castle have and of these Saxons who are
en ceste terre, se je les en porrai cachier ou non.» Et
in this land if I them thence shall-be-able chase or not And
Merlins dist: «Sire, or poés essaiier se je sui sages; je voel
Merlin said Lord now can-you test if I am wise I wish
bien que vous sachiés que dès lors que il orent perdu
well that you may-know that since then that they had lost
Hangus, il ne beerent onques puis fors a guerpir la terre
Hengist they not aimed ever since except to abandon the land
et a fuir. Et si le saichiés demain par vos messages, et les
and to flee And so it know tomorrow by your messengers and them
envoierés laiens por querre trives. Et lors vous manderont
will-send in-there for to-seek truces And then you will-send-word
qu'il vous lairont la terre qui vostre pere fu, et les
that-they you will-leave the land which your father's was and them
ferés conduire fors, et lour baillerés vostres vaissiaus en
will-make conduct out and to-them will-deliver your vessels in
quoi il s'en poront aler.» Et li rois dist: «Merlins,
which they themselves-thence can go And the king said Merlin
tu as bien dit. Et je lour ferai a savoir avant en
thou hast well said And I to-them shall-make to know before in
autre maniere, que je lour ferai requerre trives pour oir
other manner for I them shall-make request truces for to-hear
que il diront sans plus.» Lors i envoia li rois Ursin,
what they will-say without more Then there sent the king Ursin

un sien consillier, et deus avoec li. Et lors chevaucierent
a his-own counselor and two with him And then rode
tant que il vinrent au chastiel. Et quant il les virent
so-much that they came to-the castle And when they them saw
venir, si lor vont a l'encontre et dient: «Que voelent cil
come so to-them go to the-meeting and say What wish these
chevalier?» Et Ursins lor dist: «Signour, trives demandons
knights And Ursin to-them said Lords truces we-ask
de par le roi jusques a trois moys.» «Et nous nous en
on behalf-of the king until to three months And we ourselves thereof
consillerons,» dient li Saisne. Si se traient a une part a
shall-take-counsel say the Saxons So themselves draw to one side to
conseil et dient communaument: «Nous sonmes tout aggrevé
counsel and say in-common We are all aggrieved
de Hangus qui est mors. Ne nous n'avons point de vitaille
of Hengist who is dead Nor we not-have a-whit of victual
pour chaiens estre tant comme li rois trives demande.
for in-here to-be so-long as the king truces asks
Mais mandons lui que il s'en voist et nous laist le
But let-us-send-word him that he himself-thence go and us leave the
chastiel, et nous le terrons de lui et treu l'en donrons
castle and we it shall-hold of him and tribute him-thence shall-give
chascun an dis chevaliers et dis damoisieles et dis faucons
each year ten knights and ten damsels and ten falcons
et dis levriers et cent palefrois.» Et a che est venus lor
and ten greyhounds and hundred palfreys And to this is come their
consaus, ensi sont il acordé. Et le dient as messages
counsel thus are they agreed And it say to-the messengers
ensi conme il l'orent devisé. Et li message s'en
thus as they it-had devised And the messengers themselves-thence
revinrent arriere au roi et li dient et a Merlin et as
returned back to-the king and to-him tell and to Merlin and to-the

autres barons. Et quant li rois entendi chou, si demanda
other barons And when the king heard this so asked
Merlin que il en feroit. Et Merlins respont que il ne
Merlin what he thereof would-do And Merlin answers that he not
s'en mesleroit ja, car grans maus en venroit encore
himself-thereof would-meddle ever for great ills thereof would-come still
en la terre et el pais. «Mais mandés lor orendroit sans
in the land and in-the country But send-word them now without
plus attendre que il issent dou chastiel, car il n'ont
more to-wait that they go-out of-the castle for they not-have
que mengier, si le feront volentiers, et que jamais trives
what to-eat so it will-do willingly and that ever truces
n'avront se il n'issent fors. Et vous leur baillerés vaissiaus
not-will-have if they not-go out And you to-them will-deliver vessels
et nés en quoi il s'en poront aler. Et se il ne
and ships in which they themselves-thence can go And if they not
voelent che faire, n'en prendés ja tant d'aus que vous
wish this to-do not-of-them take ever so-many of-them that you
ne les fachiés de male mort morir. Et je vous sui pleges
not them make of evil death die And I to-you am pledge
que quant vous les en lairés aler sauves lour vies que il
that when you them thence will-let go safe their lives that they
n'orent onques si grant joie, car il cuident tout morir.»
not-had ever so great joy for they think all to-die

Ensi comme Merlins l'ot devisé, ensi le fist li rois
Thus as Merlin it-had devised thus it made the king
au matin faire. Lors envoia ses messages pour faire ceste
in-the morning do Then sent his messengers for to-make this
requeste. Et quant cil ki estoient ou chastiel l'oirent,
request And when those who were in-the castle it-heard
et il sorent que il s'en porront aler sauves lor
and they knew that they themselves-thence will-be-able go safe their

vies, si ne furent onques si lié. Car il ne savoient mais
lives so not were ever so glad For they not knew more
por coi il deussent recouvrer dès que il avoient perdu
for what they should recover since that they had lost
Hangus. Ensi le firent a savoir par toute la terre, et les
Hengist Thus it made to know through all the land and them
fist li rois conduire et mener au port, et lour donna
made the king conduct and lead to-the port and to-them gave
vaissiaus en quoi il s'en alerent. En ceste maniere
vessels in which they themselves-thence went In this manner
que vous avés oi sot Merlins le corage des Saisnes, et
that you have heard knew Merlin the heart of-the Saxons and
ensi les envoia li rois par le conseil Merlin, et ensi
thus them sent the king by the counsel (of-)Merlin and thus
s'en alerent li Saisne fors de la terre Pandragon,
themselves-thence went the Saxons out of the land (of-)Pendragon
et ensi remest Merlins tous sires dou conseil le roi,
and thus remained Merlin all lord of-the council (of-)the king
et si i fu lonc tans, tant que il ot un jour parlé au
and so there was long time until that he had one day spoken to-the
roi d'un grant afaire, si em pesa a un de ses barons, si
king of-a great affair so thereof weighed to one of his barons so
vint au roi et li dist: «Sire, vous faites grant merveille
came to-the king and to-him said Lord you make great marvel
de cest homme que vous creés. Et bien sachiés que tout
of this man whom you believe And well know that all
le sens qu'il a vint de par le dyable. Et s'il vous
the sense that-he has came from on-behalf-of the devil And if-it you
plaisoit, je l'assaieroie en tel maniere que vous le verriés
pleased I him-would-test in such manner that you it would-see
tout en apert.» Et li rois respont: «Je vueil bien que vous
all in open And the king answers I wish well that you

l'essaiés en tel maniere que vous nel courchiés point.»
him-test in such manner that you not-him anger at-all
Et il dist: «Sire, je ne li dirai ja chose qui anuiier
And he said Lord I not to-him shall-say ever thing which annoy
lui doive ne ne ferai.» Ensi li otria li rois. Et quant il
him must nor not shall-do Thus to-him granted the king And when he
ot congiet dou roi, si en fu moult liés. Et cil estoit
had leave from-the king so thereof was very glad And he was
a la veue dou siecle moult sages et plains de felonnie et
to the sight of-the world very wise and full of felony and
poestis hom de grant riqueche et de parens. Unc jour vint
powerful man of great wealth and of kin One day came
a Merlin en la court, si le vit, et li fist moult grant
to Merlin in the court so him saw and to-him made very great
joie et moult biel samblance, si l'apiela devant le roi a
joy and very fair semblance so him-called before the king to
conseil a une part. A che conseil n'ot que cinq hommes,
counsel to one side At this council not-had but five men
et chis dist au roi: «Sire, veés chi un des plus sages
and this-one said to-the king Lord see here one of-the most wise
hommes dou monde. Et j'ai oi dire que il dist Vertigier
men of-the world And I-have heard say that he told Vortigern
sa mort et que il morroit de vostre feu, et il si fist. Et
his death and that he would-die of your fire and he so did And
pour chou vous pri jou a tous pour Dieu, que vous savés
for this you pray I to all for God for you know
bien que je sui malades, que vous li priiés que il vous
well that I am sick that you him pray that he you
die se il set de quel mort je morrai, car je sai bien, se
tell if he knows of what death I shall-die for I know well if
il veut, il le savra bien dire.» Et li rois et li autre em
he wishes he it will-know well tell And the king and the others thereof

prient tout Merlin. Lors respont Merlins, qui toute la parole
pray all Merlin Then answers Merlin who all the speech
de chelui ot entendue, et set bien l'envie et le mauvais
of that-one had heard and knows well the-envy and the bad
cuer que il portoit, se li dist: «Sire,» fait il au roi,
heart that he bore so to-him said Lord says he to-the king
«vous m'avés priié que je vous die de sa mort. Je le vous
you me-have prayed that I to-you tell of his death I it to-you
dirai. Or sacés bien le jour que il morra il kerra de son
shall-tell Now know well the day that he will-die he will-fall from his
cheval et brisera le col. Et ensi partira le jour de vie.»
horse and will-break the neck And thus will-depart the day from life

Quant cil l'entendi, si dist au roi: «Sire, vous oés
When that-one it-heard so said to-the king Lord you hear
bien que il m'a dit, et Dieus m'en gart.» Lors apiela
well what he me-has said and God me-thereof guard Then called
le roi a conseil d'une part, se li dist: «Sire, or vous
the king to counsel at-one side so to-him said Lord now you
souviegne bien que Merlins a dit, et je revenrai encore
may-remember well what Merlin has said and I shall-come-back still
a lui en autre maniere, si l'essaierai.» Ensi s'en ala
to him in other manner so him-shall-test Thus himself-thence went
cil en son pais et se mist en diviers abit. Et quant
that-one into his country and himself put into different habit And when
il s'i fu mis, si revint au plus tost qu'il pot
he himself-therein was put so came-back at-the most soon that-he could
et se fist malades. Et manda le roi a conseil que
and himself made sick And sent-word-to the king in counsel that
il amenast Merlin avoec lui en tel maniere que Merlins
he should-bring Merlin with him in such manner that Merlin
ne le seust pas. Et li rois li manda que il iroit
not it should-know at-all And the king to-him sent-word that he would-go

volentiers, ne que ja Merlins par lui ne le savroit. Lors
willingly nor that ever Merlin by him not it would-know Then
vint li rois a Merlin, se li dist: «Merlins, alons moi et
came the king to Merlin so to-him said Merlin let-us-go me and
vous veoir un malade en tele vile.» Et Merlins respont en
you to-see a sick-man in such town And Merlin answers in
riant: «Sire, nus rois ne doit aler si seuls qu'il n'ait avoec
laughing Lord any king not must go so alone that-he not-have with
lui au moins vint hommes.» Lors apiela li rois chiaus
him at-the least twenty men Then called the king those
qu'il vaut qui avoec lui alaissent, et alerent veoir chelui.
whom-he wished who with him should-go and went to-see that-one
Quant li rois et sa compaignie vinrent la, li malades ot
When the king and his company came there the sick-man had
apparillie sa feme qui se laissa cheoir as piés le roi
prepared his wife who herself let fall at-the feet (of-)the king
et li dist: «Sire, por Dieu, faites moi dire a vostre devin
and to-him said Lord for God make me tell to your seer
de mon signeur se il garira.» Et li rois en fist moult
of my lord if he will-recover And the king thereof made very
simple chiere et regarda Merlin, se li dist: «Merlins,
simple face and looked-at Merlin so to-him said Merlin
porriés vous savoir que ceste feme dist? Elle demande de
could you know what this woman says She asks of
son signour.» «Sire,» fait Merlins, «je voel bien que vous
her lord Lord says Merlin I wish well that you
sachiés que chis malades qui chi gist ne morra mie de ceste
may-know that this sick-man who here lies not will-die at-all of this
maladie.» Et li malades s'esforcha de parler par samblant
sickness And the sick-man himself-strained to speak by semblance
et demanda Merlin: «Sire, de quel mal morrai je dont?» Et
and asked Merlin Lord of what ill shall-die I then And

Merlins respont: «Le jour que tu morras seras tu trouvés
Merlin answers The day that thou wilt-die wilt-be thou found
pendus.» A ceste parole s'en torne Merlins de devant
hanged At this word himself-thence turns Merlin from before
lui et fist samblant que il fust courechiés, si laissa le roi
him and made semblance that he were angered so left the king
en la maison. Et che fist il pour chou que il voloit que li
in the house And this did he for this that he wished that the
malades parlast au roi. Quant li malades le sot, si dist
sick-man should-speak to-the king When the sick-man it knew so said
au roi: «Sire, or poés bien savoir se chis hom est faus
to-the king Lord now can-you well know if this man is false
et se il ment de chou qu'il m'a dit, quant il m'a donné
and if he lies of this that-he me-has said when he me-has given
deus mors a morir que l'une ne puet estre acordable a
two deaths to die so-that the-one not can be accordable with
l'autre. Et encore l'assaierai jou autre fois devant vous. Je
the-other And still him-shall-test I another time before you I
irai en une abbeie et me ferai la malades, et vous
shall-go into an abbey and myself shall-make there sick and you
envoierai querre par l'abbé et li abbes dira que jou sui
shall-send to-seek by the-abbot and the abbot will-say that I am
uns siens moynes, et il dira que il est moult destrois
a his-own monk and he will-say that he is very distressed
et que il crient que il ne muire. Si vous priera l'abes
and that he fears that he — may-die So you will-pray the-abbot
que vous amenés vostre devin. Et je vous di que je ne
that you bring your seer And I you tell that I not
l'assaierai que ceste fois.» Et li rois li otroie ceste chose.
him-shall-test but this time And the king to-him grants this thing

Ensi s'em parti li rois de chelui et s'en vint
Thus himself-thence parted the king from that-one and himself-thence came
arriere. Et cil s'en ala en une abbeie, si le fist
back And that-one himself-thence went into an abbey so it did
ensi comme il l'avoit dit au roi, et envoia l'abbé pour lui
thus as he it-had said to-the king and sent the-abbot for him
querre. Et li rois i ala et mena Merlin. Ensi chevaucha
to-seek And the king there went and led Merlin Thus rode
li rois tant que il vint a l'abbeie. Et quant il i fu venus,
the king until that he came to the-abbey And when he there was come
il ala oir messe, se vint l'abbes a lui et bien quinze
he went to-hear mass so came the-abbot to him and well fifteen
moines avoec lui, si pria au roi que il venist veoir leur
monks with him so prayed to-the king that he should-come to-see their
moyne qui estoit malades et si i amenast son devin. Et
monk who was sick and so there should-bring his seer And
li rois demanda Merlin se il iroit avoec lui. Lors apiela
the king asked Merlin if he would-go with him Then called
Merlins le roi et Uter son frere devant un autel et lour
Merlin the king and Uther his brother before an altar and to-them
dist a aus deus: «Signeur, quant je plus vous acoint, et
said to them two Lords when I more you acquaint and
je plus vous truis faus. Cuidiés vous que je ne sache de
I more you find false Think you that I not may-know of
quel mort chis faus morra qui m'assaie? Si m'ait Dieus, je
what death this false-one will-die who me-tests So me-help God I
le sai bien et je le vous dirai. Et encore plus mervillerés
it know well and I it to-you shall-tell And still more will-marvel
vous de chou que je vous dirai que des autres deus choses
you of this that I to-you shall-tell than of-the other two things
que je li ai ja dites.» Et li rois dist: «Merlins, puet
that I to-him have already told And the king said Merlin can

il estre voirs que hom puist ensi morir?» Et Merlins dist:
it be true that man may thus die And Merlin said
«Sire, se il ne muert si, ne me creés jamais de riens, car
Lord if he not dies so not me believe ever of anything for
je sai bien sa mort. Et quant vous averés la soie veue, si
I know well his death And when you will-have the his seen so
m'en demanderés de la vostre. Et tant di jou a Uter
me-thereof will-ask of the yours And so-much say I to Uther
que je le verrai roi ains que je departe de sa compaignie.»
that I him shall-see king before that I depart from his company
Atant vinrent entre le roi et Uter et Merlin la ou
Thereupon came between the king and Uther and Merlin there where
li abbes les vaut mener, et dist li abbes au roi: «Sire,
the abbot them wished to-lead and said the abbot to-the king Lord
pour Dieu, faites moi dire a vostre devin se li moynes qui
for God make me tell to your seer if the monk who
la gist porra garir jamais.» Et li rois li demande. Et
there lies will-be-able recover ever And the king him asks And
Merlins fait samblant de courouch et dist a l'abbé: «Sire, il
Merlin makes semblance of anger and said to the-abbot Lord he
s'en puet bien lever, se il veut. Car il n'a mal et por
himself-thence can well rise if he wishes For he not-has ill and for
nient m'en essaie. Car il le couverra morir de deus mors
nothing me-thereof tests For it him will-befit to-die of two deaths
que je li ai dites et je li dirai la tierche plus diverse
that I to-him have told and I to-him shall-tell the third more strange
que nule des autres deus. Car après le brisier dou col et que
than any of-the other two For after the breaking of-the neck and that
il pendera noiera il. Toutes ces trois choses li averront,
he will-hang will-drown he All these three things to-him will-happen
ne ne se faingne il plus. Car je sai bien tout son corage
nor not himself feign he more For I know well all his heart

et tout chou que ses mauvais cuers pense.» Et cil se
and all this that his bad heart thinks And that-one himself
lieve a son seant et dist au roi: «Sire, or poés vous bien
raises to his sitting and said to-the king Lord now can you well
connoistre sa folie et que il ne set que il dist. Comment
know his folly and that he not knows what he says How
porroit chou estre que il porroit voir dire? Car il dist le jour
could this be that he could true say For he says the day
que je morrai que je briserai le col et penderai et noierai:
that I shall-die that I shall-break the neck and shall-hang and shall-drown
tout chou m'averra le jour que je morrai. Ore saichiés bien
all this me-will-happen the day that I shall-die Now know well
que che ne porroit avenir ne de mi ne d'autrui. Ore gardés
that this not could happen nor of me nor of-another Now see
se vous estes sages qui tel homm creés et faites signour
if you are wise who such man believe and make lord
de vous et de vostre conseil.» Et li rois dist: «Je nel
of you and of your council And the king said I not-him
querrai jamais dusques adont que je sache se che iert
shall-believe ever until then that I may-know if this will-be
voirs vraiement.» Ore fu cil moult irés que il sot que
true truly Now was that-one very angry that he knew that
Merlins ne seroit pas partis dou conseil le roi dusques
Merlin not would-be at-all parted from-the council (of-)the king until
apriès sa fin. Ensi remest tous lour affaires et fut seut par
after his end Thus remained all their affairs and was known through
tout chou que Merlins avoit dit de la mort a cel homme.
all this that Merlin had said of the death of that man
Ensi fu chascuns ententis a chou que Merlins avoit dit.
Thus was each-one intent on this that Merlin had said

Après che lonc tans avint un jour que li preudom qui
After this long time happened one day that the worthy-man who
ensi devoit morir chevauchoit a grant plenté de gent, et
thus was-to die rode with great plenty of folk and
vint a une riviere. Et seur cele riviere avoit un pont de fust,
came to a river And over that river there-was a bridge of wood
et ses palefrois achoupa et chei a genous. Et cil broncha
and his palfrey stumbled and fell on knees And he pitched
aval et chai sur sen col en tel maniere que il le brisa, et
down and fell on his neck in such manner that he it broke and
li cors torna outre et chai en l'iaue en tel maniere que
the body turned over and fell into the-water in such manner that
uns des paus qui avoit esté du pont viés feri parmi sa
one of-the stakes which had been of-the bridge old struck through his
roube, si que ses rains remesent en haut, et remest pendant
robe so that his loins remained on high and remained hanging
la teste contreval, si que la teste et les espaulles remesent
the head downward so that the head and the shoulders remained
en l'iaue. Et cil si avoit avoec lui ses gens qui che virent.
in the-water And he so had with him his folk who this saw
Et li cris fu grans levés si que la gent de la vile l'oirent,
And the cry was great raised so that the folk of the town it-heard
si acoururent par le pont et par l'iaue as nés au plus
so ran-up by the bridge and by the-water in-the ships at-the most
tost qu'il porent. Et quant il furent venu, si disent li
soon that-they could And when they were come so said the
preudomme a chiaus qui le traisent de l'iaue: «Signour,
worthy-men to those who him drew from the-water Lords
prendés garde se il a le col brisié.» Et cil le gardent et
take heed if he has the neck broken And those him look-at and
dient que oil sans faille. Quant cil qui estoient avoec l'oirent,
say that yes without fail When those who were with it-heard

si s'en esmervillierent moult et dient: «Voirement dist
so themselves-thereat marveled much and say Truly said
il voir, Merlins, qui dist que chis hom briseroit le col et
he true Merlin who said that this man would-break the neck and
penderoit et noieroit. Moult par est faus qui ne le croit
would-hang and would-drown Very much is false who not him believes
et canque il dist, que il nous samble bien que il dist voir.»
and whatever he says for it us seems well that he says true
Merlins qui ceste chose sot si vint a Uter qui l'amoit moult,
Merlin who this thing knew so came to Uther who him-loved much
se li dist la mort a cel homme si comme elle avoit estet,
so to-him told the death of that man so as it had been
et li commande que il le desist au roi. Et Uters vint
and him commands that he it should-tell to-the king And Uther came
au roi, se li conta comment chis avoit esté mors. Et
to-the king so to-him told how this-one had been dead And
quant li rois l'oi, si s'en esmervilla moult et dist
when the king it-heard so himself-thereat marveled much and said
a Uter son frere: «Qui vous a che dit?» Et il dist: «Sire,
to Uther his brother Who you has this said And he said Lord
Merlins.» Et li rois commanda a Uter que il li demant
Merlin And the king commanded to Uther that he him should-ask
quant che avint. Et Uters vint a Merlin, se li demande.
when this happened And Uther came to Merlin so him asks
Et il dist: «Il avint ier. Et cil verront qui le diront au
And he said It happened yesterday And those will-come who it will-tell to-the
roi en sis jours; et je m'en vois, car je ne voel mie chi
king in six days and I myself-thence go for I not wish at-all here
estre quant il verront, que il m'en meteroient en mainte
to-be when they will-come for they me-thereof would-put in many
maniere de nouviele dont je ne lor vaurroie respondre.
manner of news of-which I not to-them would-wish answer

Ne je ne parlerai plus devant le siecle se si oscurement non
Nor I not shall-speak more before the world if so darkly not
que il ne saveront que je dirai devant que il le voient.»
that they not will-know what I shall-say before that they it see

The Battle of Salisbury

XIV

The court begins to write down Merlin's prophecies. Merlin warns the brothers that the Saxons will return to avenge Hengist and shows how to cut them off from water. He makes them swear on relics and tells them one of the two will die. A red dragon flies over the Saxon host, the Saxons are destroyed, and Pendragon is killed. Uther buries the dead at Salisbury and is crowned in London.

Ore dist li contes que quant Merlins ot ensi parlé, si
Now says the tale that when Merlin had thus spoken so
s'en ala en Norhomberlande a Blaise. Et Uters vint au
himself-thence went into Northumberland to Blaise And Uther came to-the
roi, se li conta au roi ensi que Merlins li ot dit. Et
king so to-him told to-the king thus as Merlin to-him had said And
quant li rois l'oi, si quida que Merlins fust courechiés, et
when the king it-heard so thought that Merlin were angered and
demanda ou Merlins estoit alés. Et il respont: «Sire, je ne
asked where Merlin was gone And he answers Lord I not
sai ou. Mais il dist que il ne voloit pas chi estre quant
know where But he said that he not wished at-all here to-be when
ces nouvieles verroient.» Ichi remaint dou roi et d'Uter et
these news would-come Here remains of-the king and of-Uther and
parole de Merlin qui fu en Norhomberlande a Blaise, se
speaks of Merlin who was in Northumberland with Blaise so
li conta toutes ces choses et autres assés pour baillier
to-him told all these things and others enough for to-give

matiere a faire son livre. Ensi demoura dusques au sisime
matter to make his book Thus stayed until to-the sixth
jour, que cil vinrent qui furent a la mort a cel houme.
day that those came who were at the death of that man
Et quant il furent venu, si conterent au roi de cele
And when they were come so told to-the king of that
merveille si comme il l'avoient veue. Lors dist li rois et
marvel so as they it-had seen Then said the king and
tout cil qui l'oirent que nus n'est si sages conme Merlins
all those who it-heard that anyone not-is so wise as Merlin
est. Et disent que il ne li orront jamais dire chose qui
is And said that they not him will-hear ever say thing which
avenir doive que il ne metent en escrit. Ensi l'ont devisé.
happen must that they not may-put in writing Thus it-have devised
Ensi fu conmenciés uns livre que on apelle par nom le
Thus was begun a book which one calls by name the
livre des prophecies Merlin, de chou que il dist des rois
book of-the prophecies (of-)Merlin of this that he said of-the kings
d'Engleterre et de toutes les autres choses dont il parla
of-England and of all the other things of-which he spoke
puis. Et pour chou ne dist pas chis livres qui Merlins est
since And for this not says at-all this book who Merlin is
ne dont il vint, qu'il ne metoient en escrit fors que chou
nor whence he came for-they not put in writing except that this
que il disoit. Et ensi demora Merlins une grant pieche la.
that he said And thus stayed Merlin a great while there
Et en icel tans fu Merlins tous sires de Pandragon le
And in that-same time was Merlin all lord of Pendragon the
roi, que li Anglois apeloient par son droit nom de batesme
king whom the English called by his right name of baptism
Aurelius Ambroisius, et d'Uter son frere. Et quant Merlins
Aurelius Ambrosius and of-Uther his brother And when Merlin

sot que il avoient ensi parlé et que il devoient en
knew that they had thus spoken and that they were-to in
escrit metre ces paroles, si le dist a Blaise. Et Blaises li
writing put these words so it said to Blaise And Blaise him
demanda: «Merlins, seront leur livre autel conme je faich?»
asked Merlin will-be their book such as I make
Et Merlins respont: «Nennil. Il ne meteront en escrit se
And Merlin answers No They not will-put in writing if
che non que il porront connoistre dusques il soit avenu.»
this not which they will-be-able know until it be happened
Ensi s'en vint Merlins arriere en la court le roi. Et
Thus himself-thence came Merlin back into the court (of-)the king And
quant il fu venus, se li conterent les nouvieles autressi
when he was come so to-him told the news just
conme se il n'en seust riens. Et Merlins commencha
as if he not-thereof knew anything And Merlin began
lors a dire les oscures paroles dont ses livres fu fais des
then to say the dark words of-which his book was made of-the
prophesies c'on ne puet connoistre dusques elles soient
prophecies which-one not can know until they be
nouvieles avenues. Et apriès chou vint Merlins a Pandragon
newly happened And after this came Merlin to Pendragon
et a Uter son frere, si lour dist moult piteusement que il
and to Uther his brother so to-them said very piteously that he
les amoit moult et voloit leur grant pooir et preu et leur
them loved much and wished their great power and profit and their
honneur. Et quant il l'oirent, si s'en esmiervillierent
honor And when they it-heard so themselves-thereat marveled
moult et disent a Merlin que il lour desist seurement
much and said to Merlin that he to-them should-say surely
canques il vaurroit et que il ne lour celast nule chose
whatever he would-wish and that he not from-them should-hide any thing

de lour affaire. Et Merlins respont: «Je ne vous celerai
of their affair And Merlin answers I not from-you shall-hide
ja chose que je doive dire a vous. Et je vous dirai une
ever thing that I must say to you And I to-you shall-tell a
grant merveille, che vous sera avis.
great marvel this to-you will-be opinion
«Membre vous i des Saisnes que vous gietastes fors
Remember you there of-the Saxons whom you cast out
de vo terre apriès la mort Hangus?» Et il respondent:
of your land after the death (of-)Hengist And they answer
«Oil bien.» «Icil qui s'en alerent disent la nouviele
Yes well Those who themselves-thence went told the news
as autres Saisnes de la mort Hangus, qui moult estoit de
to-the other Saxons of the death (of-)Hengist who very was of
trés grant lignage. Quant les lignages oirent la nouviele que
very great lineage When the lineages heard the news that
Hangus estoit mors et que cil estoient de la terre gieté,
Hengist was dead and that they were from the land cast
si ont parlé ensamble et dient que il n'averont jamais joie
so have spoken together and say that they not-will-have ever joy
tant que il averont vengié la mort Hangus, et cuident bien
until that they will-have avenged the death (of-)Hengist and think well
conquerre ceste terre.» Quant Pandragons et Uters l'oirent,
to-conquer this land When Pendragon and Uther it-heard
si s'en esmiervillierent moult et demanderent Merlin:
so themselves-thereat marveled much and asked Merlin
«Ont il dont si grant gent que il puissent guerroiier
Have they then so great folk that they may war
nous?» Et Merlins respont: «Pour un homme que vous avés
us And Merlin answers For one man that you have
defensable en averont il deus. Et se vous ne le faites
able-to-fight thereof will-have they two And if you not it do

moult sagement, il vous destruiront et conquerront vostre
very wisely they you will-destroy and will-conquer your
regne.» Et il dient: «Nous le ferons tout a votre conseil,
realm And they say We it shall-do all by your counsel
ne ja ne trespasserons chose que vous nous dites.» Et puis
nor ever not shall-transgress thing that you us tell And then
demanderent Merlin: «Quant vous est il avis que ceste gent
asked Merlin When to-you is it opinion that these folk
verront?» Et Merlins dist: «L'onsime jour de jungnet, ne ja
will-come And Merlin said The-eleventh day of July nor ever
nus en vostre terre nel savra, se vous ne le savés. Et je
anyone in your land not-it will-know if you not it know And I
vous demanc que nus de vous n'en parout, mais faites
you ask that anyone of you not-thereof speak but do
che que je vous dirai: mandés tous vos hommes et vos
this that I to-you shall-tell summon all your men and your
chevaliers povres et riches, et se lour faites le gringnour
knights poor and rich and so to-them make the greatest
joie que vous porrés, car il i a moult sens a garder
joy that you will-be-able for it there has much sense in guarding
cors d'ome, et les tenés près de vous. Et lour priiés que a
body of-man and them hold near of you And them pray that to
lour pooir soient toute la daerrainne semainne de jung a
their power they-be all the last week of June with
vous a l'entree des plains de Salesbieres. Et la assamblés
you at the-entry of-the plains of Salisbury And there assemble
tout votre pooir sour la riviere, si que vous lour puissiés
all your power on the river so that you them may
desfendre.» «Comment!» fait li rois, «les lairons nous dont
defend How says the king them shall-let we then
arriver?» «Oil, se vous m'en creés, et eslongier de la rive
arrive Yes if you me-thereof believe and go-away from the shore

bien loing, si que il ne savront ja que vous aiiés vo
well far so that they not will-know ever that you may-have your
gent assamblee. Et quant il seront eslongiet, vous lour
folk assembled And when they will-be gone-away you to-them
envoierés de vo gent par deviers les vaissiaus pour faire
will-send of your folk by toward the vessels for to-make
samblant que vous ne volés pas qu'il s'en repairent.
semblance that you not wish at-all that-they themselves-thence return
Et quant il verront chou, si s'en esmaieront moult.
And when they will-see this so themselves-thereof will-dismay much
Et li uns de vous deus s'en voist avoec vo gent, et
And the one of you two himself-thence go with your folk and
si alés si près que vous les fachiés logier maugré aus en
so go so near that you them make lodge despite them up
sus de la riviere. Et quant il seront logié, si averont grant
away from the river And when they will-be lodged so will-have great
disete d'iaue, si s'en esmaieront li plus hardi d'eus.
dearth of-water so themselves-thereof will-dismay the most hardy of-them
Et ensi les ferés tenir deus jours. Et au tierch jour
And thus them will-make hold two days And on-the third day
vous combaterés vous a aus. Et se vous le faites ensi, je
you will-fight yourselves with them And if you it do thus I
vous creanc que votre gent en averont la victore.» Et lors
you promise that your folk thereof will-have the victory And then
dient li doi frere: «Por Dieu, Merlins, se toi plaist, car nous
say the two brothers For God Merlin if thee pleases now us
di se nous morrons en ceste bataille.» Et Merlins lour dist:
tell if we shall-die in this battle And Merlin to-them said
«Signeur, il n'est nule chose qui ait commenchement qui
Lords it not-is any thing which has beginning which
n'ait fin. Et il n'est nus hom qui se doive esmaiier de
not-has end And it not-is any man who himself must dismay of

la mort se il la rechoit si conme il doit, car chascuns qui
the death if he it receives so as he must for each-one who
vit doit savoir que il morra. Et ensi devés vous savoir de
lives must know that he will-die And thus must you know of
vous que aussi ferés vous, que nule hautece ne nule riquece
you that also will-do you for any highness nor any wealth
ne vous puet garandir que vous ne muiriés.» Et Pandragons
not you can protect that you — may-die And Pendragon
li dist: «Merlins, tu me desis une fois que tu savoies
to-him said Merlin thou me toldst one time that thou knewest
bien ma mort aussi que tu savoies la mort de chelui qui
well my death as-well that thou knewest the death of that-one who
t'assaioit. Et de la mort de chelui desis tu verité. Pour
thee-tested And of the death of that-one toldst thou truth For
chou te pri jou, se il te plaist, que tu me dies la moie
this thee pray I if it thee pleases that thou me tell the my
mort.» Et Merlins dist: «Je voel que vous faichiés aporter
death And Merlin said I wish that you make bring
entre vous deus les millours saintuaires et reliques que vous
between you two the best reliquaries and relics that you
avés, et que vous jurés sour sains li uns et li autres
have and that you swear on relics the one and the other
que vous ferés chou que je vous commanderai por vostre
that you will-do this that I you shall-command for your
preu et pour vostre honneur. Et quant vous l'arés juré,
profit and for your honor And when you it-will-have sworn
si vous dirai plus seurement che que mestiers vous sera.»
so to-you shall-tell more surely this that need to-you will-be
Tout ensi conme Merlins l'ot devisé il le firent. Et
All thus as Merlin it-had devised they it did And
quant il l'orent juré, si disent: «Merlins, nous avons fait ton
when they it-had sworn so said Merlin we have done thy

commandement. Ore te prions nous, se il te plaist, que tu
commandment Now thee pray we if it thee pleases that thou
nous dies pour coi tu le nous as fait faire.» Et Merlins
us tell for what thou it us hast made do And Merlin
respont au roi: «Tu me demandes une question de ta mort
answers to-the king Thou me askest a question of thy death
et que il sera de ceste bataille, et je le te dirai. Savés
and what it will-be of this battle and I it thee shall-tell Know
vous que li uns a juré a l'autre? Je le vous dirai. Vous
you what the one has sworn to the-other I it to-you shall-tell You
avés juré que vous serés contre ceste bataille preudomme et
have sworn that you will-be against this battle worthy and
loial viers vous meismes et viers Dieu. Et je vous ensegnerai
loyal toward you yourselves and toward God And I you shall-teach
comment vous serés preudonme et loial et boin justichier.
how you will-be worthy and loyal and good justiciar
Je vous commanch que vous vous faciés confiès. Car vous
I you command that you yourselves make confessed For you
le devés ore mieus estre k'en un autre termine por chou
it must now better be than-in an other term for this
que vous savés que vous vous devés combattre. Et se vous
that you know that you yourselves must fight And if you
estes tel que je vous di, seur soiiés que vous vainterés. Car
are such as I you tell sure be that you will-conquer For
il ne croient mie en la trinité, pour coi Jesucris vint en
they not believe at-all in the trinity for which Jesus-Christ came to
terre, et vous desfendés vostre droit yretage qui est vostres
earth and you defend your right heritage which is yours
par droit. Et cil qui anchois morra en son droit tenant et
by right And he who before will-die in his right holding and
sera acordés a la loy Jesucrist par le commandement de
will-be accorded with the law (of-)Jesus-Christ by the commandment of

sainte eglyse ne doit gaires douter la mort. Et je voel bien
holy church not must much fear the death And I wish well
que vous sachiés que puis que sainte eglise fu establie en
that you may-know that since that holy church was established in
ceste ille n'ot mais si grant bataille ne n'avra de vo tans
this isle not-had more so great battle nor not-will-have of your time
comme ceste sera. Et li uns de vous a juré a l'autre que
as this will-be And the one of you has sworn to the-other that
il fera son preu et s'onnour. Et je voel que vous saichiés
he will-do his profit and his-honor And I wish that you may-know
que je nel vous dirai plus descouvertement, mais tant
that I not-it to-you shall-tell more openly but so-much
sachiés vous bien que l'un de vous deus convient le siecle
know you well that the-one of you two must the world
laissier. Et cil qui remanra fera la ou ceste bataille
leave And he who will-remain will-make there where this battle
sera une chimentiere le plus biele et le plus riche que il
will-be a cemetery the most fair and the most rich that he
porra par mon los. Et je vous creant que jou i aiderai
will-be-able by my counsel And I you promise that I there shall-aid
tant que tout le tans que crestiientés duerra i parra
so-much that all the time that Christendom will-last there will-appear
chou que jou i ferai. Je vous ai dit de l'un de vous
this that I there shall-do I you have told of the-one of you
deus que il convient morir: ore pensés de estre preudomme.»
two that he must die now think of being worthy

Ensi passa li termes et vint li jours de la semonse. Et
Thus passed the term and came the day of the summons And
li doi frere orent bien fait che que Merlins lour avoit
the two brothers had well done this that Merlin to-them had
commandé. Et si vinrent a Penthecouste tenir court seur
commanded And so came at Pentecost to-hold court on

la riviere, et la assambla li peuples. La ot moult avoir
the river and there assembled the people There was much wealth
donné et mainte biele chiere faite. Et lors i furent tant
given and many fair face made And then there were so-long
que il oirent dire que li vaissiel furent arrivé le premiere
that they heard say that the vessels were arrived the first
semainne de jungnet. Et quant Uters oi chou, si sot
week of July And when Uther heard this so knew
bien que Merlins li ot voir dit, si fist commander as
well that Merlin to-him had true said so made command to-the
prelas de sainte eglyse qu'il n'eust honme en l'ost qui ne
prelates of holy church that-it not-were man in the-host who not
fust confès et qui ne pardonnast tout l'un viers l'autre.
were confessed and who not pardoned all the-one toward the-other
Et cil furent tout descendu des nés et orent terre prise
And those were all descended from-the ships and had land taken
et sejornerent huit jours, et au nuevisme chevauchierent.
and sojourned eight days and on-the ninth rode
Li rois Pandragons, qui bien savoit les nouvieles d'aus et
The king Pendragon who well knew the news of-them and
ot ses espies en l'ost sot que il chevauchierent, si lou
had his spies in the-host knew that they rode so it
dist Merlin, et Merlins li dist que voirs estoit. Lors li
told Merlin and Merlin to-him said that true it-was Then him
demanda li rois comment il le feroit. Et Merlins li dist:
asked the king how he it would-do And Merlin to-him said
«Vous i envoierés Uter demain atout grant plenté de gent.
You there will-send Uther tomorrow with-all great plenty of folk
Et quant il sara et il verra que il seront bien eslongiet
And when he will-know and he will-see that they will-be well gone-away
de la riviere et de la mer, si se mete entre deus, si
from the river and from the sea so himself may-put between two so

se tiene si priès que il les fache herbegier en mi les
himself may-hold so near that he them make lodge in midst the
chans, si traie arriere sa gent et au matin quant li
fields so may-draw back his folk and in-the morning when the
Saisne vaurront errer si lor core sus et les tiegne
Saxons will-wish to-journey so on-them may-run up and them may-hold
si près que il ne puissent chevauchier. Lors n'i avra
so near that they not may ride Then not-there will-have
chelui qui ne vausist estre la dont il estoit venus. Et ensi
that-one who not would-wish to-be there whence he was come And thus
le face deus jours a toute vo gent, si tost comme li
it may-do two days with all your folk so soon as the
jours sera biaus et clers lor corés seure a cele eure que
day will-be fair and clear on-them run upon at that hour that
vous verrés un dragon vermoil qui courra par l'air entre le
you will-see a dragon red which will-run through the-air between the
ciel et la terre. Et quant vous averés veut cel signe, si te
sky and the earth And when you will-have seen that sign so thyself
pues combatre seurement, car ch'iert signes de ton non. Et
canst fight surely for it-will-be sign of thy name And
tes gens averont la victoire.» Et ensi se departirent. Et
thy folk will-have the victory And thus themselves parted And
Merlins si vint a Uter, si li dist: «Pense d'estre preudom,
Merlin so came to Uther so to-him said Think of-being worthy
que tu n'as garde de mort en ceste bataille.» Et Merlins
for thou not-hast fear of death in this battle And Merlin
s'en ala a Blaise en Norhomberlande, si li raconta
himself-thence went to Blaise in Northumberland so to-him recounted
tot et dist, et Blaises le mist en escrit et par son livre
all and told and Blaise it put in writing and by his book
le resavons nous encore. Mais or se taist atant li contes
it know-again we still But now itself is-silent thereupon the tale

de lui et de Merlin et retorne a parler de Uter et de
of him and of Merlin and returns to speak of Uther and of
Pandragon coment il esploitierent en la bataille as Saisnes.
Pendragon how they fared in the battle with-the Saxons
Ci endroit dit li contes que tot ensi com Merlins l'ot
Here in-place says the tale that all thus as Merlin it-had
devisé as deus freres il le firent. Car Uters sevra une
devised to-the two brothers they it did For Uther severed a
grant partie de gent a cheval de l'ost, des plus fors et
great part of folk on horse from the-host of-the most strong and
des meilleurs que il i pot onques eslire, si monterent
of-the best that he there could ever choose so mounted
et chevauchierent tant qu'il virent l'ost des Saisnes qui
and rode until that-they saw the-host of-the Saxons who
s'estoient logié a la plaine terre, si se mistrent a
themselves-were lodged on the plain land so themselves put at
bandon entre lor vaissiaus et lor pavillons, et les firent
abandon between their vessels and their pavilions and them made
herbergier icelui soir en mi les chans sans iaue et loing
lodge that-same evening in midst the fields without water and far
de lor vaissiaus ou lor vivre estoient. Et Uters les tint
from their vessels where their victuals were And Uther them held
si cors deus jours entiers que onques chevauchier ne porent
so short two days entire that ever ride not could
ne près ne loing. Et au tiers jor fu li rois Pandragons
nor near nor far And on-the third day was the king Pendragon
venus a moult grant plenté de gent, si commanda sa
come with very great plenty of folk so commanded his
gent apareillier et ses batailles ordoner. Et quant li Saisne
folk to-prepare and his battalions to-order And when the Saxons
virent les deus os, si furent moult esmaié. Et Uters et les
saw the two hosts so were very dismayed And Uther and the

soes gens lor coururent si durement sus qu'il les firent
his folk on-them ran so hard upon that-they them made
a force reverser jusques sur l'ost Pandragon. Si avoit
by force turn-back until upon the-host (of-)Pendragon So there-was
tel bruit et tel noise et si grant criee de gent que l'en
such din and such noise and so great crying of folk that one
n'oist Dieu tonant. Et il furent tout apareillié de ferir
not-would-hear God thundering And they were all prepared to strike
en la bataille quant li rois commanderoit, mais il atendoit
in the battle when the king would-command but he awaited
que li mostres apareust que Merlins li dist. Mais ne
that the sign should-appear which Merlin to-him told But not
demora puis gaires que li mostres lor aparut en l'air; car
tarried after much that the sign to-them appeared in the-air for
il virent venir volant un dragon vermoil, et coroit par
they saw come flying a dragon red and ran through
l'air et getoit feu et flamme par mi lou nés et par
the-air and cast fire and flame through midst the nose and through
mi la boche, et s'en vint moult roidement bruissant
midst the mouth and itself-thence came very stiffly roaring
par desus l'ost as Saisnes. Et quant li Saisne lou virent,
over above the-host of-the Saxons And when the Saxons it saw
si s'en esmaierent moult et a merveilles en orent
so themselves-thereof dismayed much and to marvels thereof had
grant paor. Et Pandragons et Uters distrent a lor gent
great fear And Pendragon and Uther told to their folk
que il sont desconfit, et il orent veut tous les signes que
that they are discomfited and they had seen all the signs that
Merlins lour ot dit. Si lour courent sus, canques chevaus
Merlin to-them had told So on-them run up whatever horses
porent rendre, les gens Pandragon. Et quant Uters vit que
could render the folk (of-)Pendragon And when Uther saw that

les gens le roi furent assamblees, si lour courut sus a
the folk (of-)the king were joined so on-them ran up with
toutes ses gens. Et cil vinrent contre iaus aussi hardiement
all his folk And those came against them as boldly
u plus, si se combatirent moult ruistement li uns a
or more so themselves fought very fiercely the one with
l'autre, et si fu moult la bataille fiere et dure. Et en cele
the-other and so was very the battle fierce and hard And in that
bataille qui moult fu crueuse fu mors li rois Pandragons.
battle which very was cruel was dead the king Pendragon

Ensi come vous avés oi fu faite la bataille de Salesbieres,
Thus as you have heard was made the battle of Salisbury
et Pandragons fu mors, et Uters vainqui la bataille. Et moult
and Pendragon was dead and Uther won the battle And much
i ot mort de gent. Et li Saisne i furent tout mort, que
there was dead of folk And the Saxons there were all dead for
nus n'en eschapa qui i fust, car il les convint tous a
anyone not-of-them escaped who there was for it them behooved all to
noiier ou morir. Et ensi fu finee la bataille de Salesbieres.
drown or die And thus was ended the battle of Salisbury
Apriès la mort Pandragon remest Uters, et fu rois. Et fist
After the death (of-)Pendragon remained Uther and was king And made
tous les cors des crestiens entierer et metre en un lieu, et
all the bodies of-the Christians bury and put in one place and
chascuns i traist de ses amis l'un apriès l'autre. Et Uters
each-one there drew of his friends the-one after the-other And Uther
fist aporter le cors de son frere avoec ses honmes, et fist
made bring the body of his brother with his men and made
escrire le non de chascun sur sa tombe et qui il estoit. Et
write the name of each-one on his tomb and who he was And
Uters fist lever Pandragon plus haut des autres, et dist que
Uther made raise Pendragon more high than-the others and said that

il ne feroit ja riens sor lui escrire, que moult seroient
he not would-make ever anything on him write for very would-be
fol cil qui la tombe verroient, se il ne la connissoient.
foolish those who the tomb would-see if they not it knew
Quant Uters ot chou fait, si vint a Londres a tous ses
When Uther had this done so came to London with all his
gens et tout li prelat de sainte eglyse qui sous lui estoient.
folk and all the prelates of holy church who under him were
Illuecques porta Uters couronne. Et quant il l'ot trovee
There bore Uther crown And when he it-had found
et portee, au quinsime jour après vint Merlins a court.
and borne on-the fifteenth day after came Merlin to court

The Stones and the Round Table

XV

Merlin explains the dragon, and Uther is called Uther Pendragon. The stones in Ireland are too great for Uther's men, and Merlin brings them by his art and raises them at Salisbury. He tells the king of the table of the supper and the table of the grail and has a third made at Carduel, seating fifty knights beside an empty place that will not be filled in Uther's time.

Moult fist li rois grant joie de Merlin. Et Merlins li
Very made the king great joy of Merlin And Merlin to-him
dist: «Uters, je voel que tu me dies a ton peuple chou
said Uther I wish that thou me tell to thy people this
que je te dis des Saisnes qui venroient en ta terre, et
that I thee told of-the Saxons who would-come into thy land and
le couvent que tu m'eus entre toi et Pandragon et les
the covenant that thou me-hadst between thee and Pendragon and the
seremens que li uns jura a l'autre.» Et Uters le reconta as
oaths that the one swore to the-other And Uther it retold to-the

ses gens tout ensi que entre lui et Pandragon avoient ouvré
his folk all thus as between him and Pendragon they-had wrought
de toutes les choses que Merlins lour ot dites del dragon
of all the things that Merlin to-them had told of-the dragon
dont il ne savoient riens ne que li autre. Lor dist
of-which they not knew anything no-more than the others Then told
Merlins apriès la senefiance dou dragon. Dist Merlins que li
Merlin after the significance of-the dragon Said Merlin that the
dragons qui estoit venus senefioit la mort de Pandragon et
dragon which was come signified the death of Pendragon and
l'essauchement dou roi Uter. Et il li fu mis a seurenon:
the-exaltation of-the king Uther And it to-him was put as surname
pour l'ounour de lui, pour la monstrance del dragon, et la
for the-honor of him for the showing of-the dragon and the
senefiance de lui fu tous jours apielés Uters Pandragons. Et
significance of him was all days called Uther Pendragon And
ensi sorent li baron la volenté et le commandement que
thus knew the barons the will and the commandment that
Merlins avoit consilliet as deus freres. Ensi remest une
Merlin had counseled to-the two brothers Thus remained a
grant pieche et fu Merlins moult bien d'Uter Pandragon
great while and was Merlin very well with-Uther Pendragon
et de son conseil. Et tant que il avint après que Uter
and with his council And until that it happened after that Uther
Pandragon fu en son regne. Et Merlins l'apiela et li
Pendragon was in his realm And Merlin him-called and to-him
dist: «Que feras tu de Pandragon qui gist en Salesbieres?»
said What wilt-do thou of Pendragon who lies in Salisbury
Et li rois respont: «Je en ferai chou que tu vaurras.»
And the king answers I thereof shall-do this that thou wilt-wish
«Tu me juras que tu feroies un chimentiere, et je
Thou me swarest that thou wouldst-make a cemetery and I

meismes i aideroie a mon pooir. Et je t'ai en couvent
myself there would-aid to my power And I thee-have in covenant
que nous ferons chose qui i parra tant com li siecles
that we shall-make thing which there will-appear so-long as the world
durra. Or aquite ton serement, que j'aquiterai moult bien
will-last Now acquit thy oath for I-shall-acquit very well
ma parole.» Et li rois dist a Merlin: «K'en porrai
my word And the king said to Merlin What-thereof shall-be-able
je faire?» Et il dist: «Or enpren a faire tel chose qui
I do And he said Now undertake to do such thing which
onques ne fu seue et si en sera tous jours mès parole.»
ever not was known and so thereof will-be all days more speech
Et il respont: «Jel ferai volentiers.» «Ore envoie dont,» fait
And he answers I-it shall-do willingly Now send then says
Merlins, «querre grosses pierres qui sont en Irlande, si i
Merlin to-seek great stones which are in Ireland so there
envoie tes vaissiaus et fai venir ces pierres. Ne il ne les
send thy vessels and make come these stones Nor they not them
saront ja si grans aporter que je ne les lieve. Et se lour
will-know ever so great bring that I not them may-lift And so to-them
irai monstrer celes que je voel que il aportent.» Lors
shall-go show those that I wish that they bring Then
i envoia li rois de moult grans vaissiaus a grant plenté.
there sent the king of very great vessels in great plenty
Quant il i furent venut, si lour moustra Merlins
When they there were come so to-them showed Merlin
moult grosses pierres et lour dist: «Veschi les pierres que
very great stones and to-them said Here-are the stones that
vous emporterés.» Quant cil virent les pierres, si le tinrent
you will-carry-away When those saw the stones so it held
a moult grant folie. Et disent que tous li mons n'en
for very great folly And said that all the world not-of-them

torneroit une, ne teus pierres ne meteront il pas en leur
would-turn one nor such stones not will-put they at-all in their
vaissiaus, se Dieu plaist. Et Merlins lour dist: «Dont estes
vessels if God please And Merlin to-them said Then are
vous pour nient venu.» Et cil s'en revinrent au roi,
you for nothing come And those themselves-thence returned to-the king
se li dient la mierveille que Merlins lour avoit commandé
so to-him tell the marvel that Merlin to-them had commanded
a faire, che que il cuidoient que nus ne peust faire el
to do this that they thought that anyone not could do in-the
monde. Et li rois respont: «Or souffrés tant que Merlins
world And the king answers Now suffer until that Merlin
viegne.» Quant Merlins fu venus, se li dist li rois chou
come When Merlin was come so to-him said the king this
que ses gens li avoient dit. Et Merlins respont: «Dès
that his folk to-him had said And Merlin answers Since
que il me sont failli, je aquiterai bien mon couvent.» Lors
that they me are failed I shall-acquit well my covenant Then
fist Merlins par forche d'art aporter les pierres d'Irlande,
made Merlin by force of-art bring the stones of-Ireland
qui encore sont en le chimentiere de Salesbieres. Et quant
which still are in the cemetery of Salisbury And when
eles furent venues, si les ala veoir li rois, et mena avoec
they were come so them went to-see the king and led with
lui grant partie de son peule pour veoir cele mierveille des
him great part of his people for to-see that marvel of-the
pierres. Et quant li rois et ses gens furent la, disent
stones And when the king and his folk were there said
que il ne virent onques mais si grosses pierres, ne ne
that they not saw ever more so great stones nor not
cuidoient mie que tous li mons en peust une remuer.
thought at-all that all the world of-them could one move

Moult s'en esmiervillierent les gens comment Merlins
Much themselves-thereat marveled the folk how Merlin
les avoit fait illuec venir, que nus ne l'avoit veu ne seu.
them had made there come for anyone not it-had seen nor known
Et Merlins dist que il les fesissent drechier. Et li rois
And Merlin said that they them should-make raise And the king
dist: «Merlins, che ne porroit nus faire fors Dieus, se tu
said Merlin this not could anyone do except God if thou
nel faisoies.» Et Merlins dist: «Or vous en alés, si avrai
not-it didst And Merlin said Now you thence go so shall-have
mon covent vers Pendragon aquité, car jou avrai pour lui
my covenant toward Pendragon acquitted for I shall-have for him
faite tel chose qui ne porroit ja estre par nul autre home
made such thing which not could ever be by any other man
mortel asovie.» Ensi fist Merlins les pierres drecier qui
mortal accomplished Thus made Merlin the stones raise which
encore sont el chimentiere de Salesbieres. Ensi remest cele
still are in-the cemetery of Salisbury Thus remained that
oevre. Et Merlins ama moult le roi et le servi lonc tans,
work And Merlin loved much the king and him served long time
tant que il avint un jour que il le traist a conseil, se li
until that it happened one day that he him drew to counsel so to-him
dist: «Il converroit que je me descouvresisse a vous del
said It would-befit that I myself should-uncover to you of-the
plus haut conseil que je sache. Car je voi que tous chis
most high counsel that I may-know For I see that all this
pais est vostres. Et pour chou que vous aim vous voel jou
country is yours And for this that you I-love you wish I
dire une chose. Dont ne vous sauvai ge de Hangus que il
to-tell a thing Then not you saved I from Hengist that he
ne vous ochist mie? Pour chou me deveriés moult amer.»
not you killed at-all For this me should-you much love

Et li rois respont: «Il n'est nule riens que vous voelliés
And the king answers It not-is any thing that you may-wish
que je ne face a men pooir.» Et Merlins respont: «Se vous
that I not may-do to my power And Merlin answers If you
le faites, li preus en iert vostres. Car je vous ensegnerai
it do the profit thereof will-be yours For I you shall-teach
tel chose, par coi vous avrés l'amour de Dieu.» Et li rois
such thing by which you will-have the-love of God And the king
respont: «Merlins, di seurement chou que tu veuls. Car tu
answers Merlin say surely this that thou wishest For thou
ne diras ja chose qui puist estre faite par homme que
not wilt-say ever thing which may be done by man that
je ne le fache.» Lors dist Merlins: «Sire, che vous sera ja
I not it may-do Then said Merlin Lord this to-you will-be now
moult estraigne chose que je vous dirai. Et je vous pri
very strange thing that I to-you shall-tell And I you pray
que vous le celés. Car je voel que li preus et li honneurs
that you it hide For I wish that the profit and the honor
en soit vostres.» Et li rois creante Merlin que il n'en
thereof be yours And the king promises Merlin that he not-thereof
parlera ja. Lors dist Merlins au roi: «Sire, je voel bien que
will-speak ever Then said Merlin to-the king Lord I wish well that
vous saciés que je sai les choses dites, faites et alees, et
you may-know that I know the things said done and gone and
que je le tieng par nature d'anemi. Et nostre sires qui est
that I it hold by nature of-the-enemy And our lord who is
poissans sour tout m'a donné sens de savoir toutes choses
powerful over all me-has given sense of knowing all things
qui sont a avenir en partie. Et par che m'ont anemi
which are to come in part And by this me-have the-enemies
perdu, que je n'ouverrai ja a le leur volenté. Ore savés vous
lost for I not-shall-work ever by the their will Now know you

dont li pooirs me vint de chou que je faich. Et je vous
whence the power me came of this that I do And I to-you
dirai chou que nostre sires veult que vous sachiés. Quant
shall-tell this that our lord wishes that you may-know When
vous le sarés, si gardés que vous en ouvrés a sa volenté.
you it will-know so take-care that you thereof work by his will

Sire, vous devés croire que nostre sires vint en terre pour
Lord you must believe that our lord came to earth for
sauver le monde, et que il sist a la chainne et dist as
to-save the world and that he sat at the supper and said to-the
ses apostles: «Un en i a de vous qui me trahira.»
his apostles One thereof there has of you who me will-betray
Et chis qui che fourfist fu partis de sa compaignie,
And this-one who this misdid was parted from his company
si comme il dist. Sire, après chou avint que nostre sires
so as he said Lord after this happened that our lord
souffri mort pour nous, et que uns chevaliers le demanda
suffered death for us and that a knight him asked-for
et l'osta dou torment ou il fu mis. Sire, apriès chou
and him-took from-the torment where he was put Lord after this
avint que nostre sires fu resuscités et que chis saudoiiers
happened that our lord was resurrected and that this soldier
fu apriès la mort Jesucrist en une deserte gastine, et il
was after the death (of-)Jesus-Christ in a desert waste and he
et une partie de son lignage et autre grant peule que il
and a part of his lineage and other great people that he
avoit avoec lui. Si lor avint une mout grant famine, si
had with him So to-them happened a very great famine so
se complainsent au chevalier qui estoit leur maistres,
themselves complained to-the knight who was their master
et cil pria Dieu que il li moustrast pour coi il
and he prayed God that he to-him should-show for what they

souffroient cele mesaise. Et nostre sires li commanda que
suffered this hardship And our lord him commanded that
il fesist une table el non de la table de la chainne
he should-make a table in-the name of the table of the supper
et tot fust carree, et un vaissiel que il avoit, ou Jesus
and all were square and a vessel that he had where Jesus
et li apostre mangierent a la chainne meist sour cele
and the apostles ate at the supper should-put on that
table, quant il l'avroit bien coverte de blans dras et que
table when he it-would-have well covered with white cloths and that
il covrist le vaissiel tot fors par deviers lui. Et Brons,
he should-cover the vessel all except by toward him And Bron
uns suens serorges, pescha un poisson qui fu mis sor
a his-own brother-in-law fished a fish which was put on
la table ens el milieu encoste lou vaissel devant Joseph.
the table in in-the middle beside the vessel before Joseph
Et par cel vaissiel fu departie la compaignie des boins
And by that vessel was parted the company of-the good
et des malvais. Sire, qui a cele table pooit seoir, il avoit
and of-the bad Lord who at that table could sit he had
l'acomplissement de son cuer. Sire, a cele table avoit tous
the-fulfillment of his heart Lord at that table there-was all
jours un lieu vieut, qui senefie le lieu ou Judas sist a le
days a place empty which signifies the place where Judas sat at the
chainne, et quant il oi que nostre sires disoit pour lui
supper and when he heard that our lord spoke for him
si fu partis de la compaignie Dieu. Et ses lieus fu wuis,
so was parted from the company (of-)God And his place was empty
fors tant que nostre sires assist un houme en son lieu
except so-much that our lord seated a man in his place
pour faire le conte des douze apostles. Ensi sont ces deus
for to-make the count of-the twelve apostles Thus are these two

tables convegnables. Ensi acompli nostre sires cuer d'oume a
tables fitting Thus fulfilled our lord heart of-man at
cele table seconde. Et ces gens claimment cel vaissiel, dont
that table second And these folk call that vessel of-which
il ont cele grasce, graal. Et se vous m'en volés croire,
they have that grace grail And if you me-thereof will believe
vous establirés la tierche table el non de la trinité. De
you will-establish the third table in-the name of the trinity Of
ces trois tables senefia la trinités trois viertus. Et je vous
these three tables signified the trinity three virtues And I you
creant que se vous le faites, il vous en sera grans biens a
promise that if you it do it to-you thereof will-be great goods to
l'ame et au cors. Et averront en vostre tans teus choses
the-soul and to-the body And will-happen in your time such things
dont vous vous esmervillerés moult. Et se vous le volés
of-which you yourself will-marvel much And if you it wish
faire, je vous aiderai moult. Et se vous le faites, je vous
to-do I you shall-aid much And if you it do I you
creanc que che sera une des choses dont il sera plus
promise that this will-be one of-the things of-which it will-be more
parlé au siecle. Se vous m'en creés, vous le ferés, et se
spoken in-the world If you me-thereof believe you it will-do and if
vous m'en volés croire, vous en serés moult liés.» Ensi
you me-thereof will believe you thereof will-be very glad Thus
a parlé Merlins au roi. Et li rois respondi: «Je ne voel
has spoken Merlin to-the king And the king answered I not wish
que nostre sires i perde riens por moi. Et si voel bien
that our lord there may-lose anything for me And so wish well
que tu saces que je mech tout sour ti.» Et Merlins dist:
that thou may-know that I put all upon thee And Merlin said
«Or esgardés, sire, la ou il vous plaira mieus a faire.»
Now consider lord there where it you will-please best to do

Et li rois respont: «Je voel que il soit la ou il te
And the king answers I wish that it be there where it thee
plaira.» Et Merlins dist: «Vous le ferés a Carduel en Gales,
will-please And Merlin said You it will-do at Carduel in Wales
et la fai assambler les gens de ton regne encontre toi a
and there make assemble the folk of thy realm toward thee at
Penthecouste, et tu t'apareilles pour grans dons donner, et
Pentecost and thou thyself-prepare for great gifts to-give and
si me baille gens qui facent a mon voloir. Et quant
so me give folk who may-do according-to my will And when
tu vauras, je eslirai chiaus qui tel seront que il i
thou wilt-wish I shall-choose those who such will-be that they there
doivent estre assis.» Ensi le fist li rois savoir partout. Et
must be seated Thus it made the king know everywhere And
Merlins s'en ala et fist faire la table. Et che remaint
Merlin himself-thence went and made make the table And this remains
jusques a la semainne de Penthecouste que li rois vint a
until to the week of Pentecost that the king came to
Carduel. Et quant il fu venus, il demanda Merlin conment
Carduel And when he was come he asked Merlin how
il avoit esploitié. Et Merlins dist: «Sire, moult bien.»
he had fared And Merlin said Lord very well

Ensi assambla li peuples a la Penthecouste a Carduel.
Thus assembled the people at the Pentecost at Carduel
Assés i vint chevaliers et dames. Et lors dist li rois a
A-good-deal there came knights and ladies And then said the king to
Merlin: «Quels gens esliras tu pour seoir a ceste table?» Et
Merlin What folk wilt-choose thou for to-sit at this table And
Merlins dist: «Vous en verrés chou demain que vous n'en
Merlin said You thereof will-see this tomorrow which you not-thereof
quidastes onques veoir. Mais je eslirai cinquante des plus
thought ever to-see But I shall-choose fifty of-the most

preudomes de ceste terre, ne ja puis que il i averont
worthy of this land nor ever after that they there will-have
sis ne vaurront en leur pais retourner ne de chi partir. Et
sat not will-wish into their country to-return nor from here to-part And
lors porrés veoir la senefiance del lieu wuit et des autres
then will-be-able see the significance of-the place empty and of-the other
deus tables en la vostre.» Et li rois si dist: «Che vaurroie
two tables in the yours And the king so said This would-wish
je moult volentiers veoir.» Et Merlins eslist cinquante des
I very willingly to-see And Merlin chose fifty of-the
plus preudomes que il sot, si les fist seoir a la table et
most worthy that he knew so them made sit at the table and
apiela le roi, si li moustra le lieu wuit, et maint autre le
called the king so to-him showed the place empty and many other it
virent et si ne savoient que il senefioit ne pour coi il estoit
saw and so not knew what it signified nor for what it was
wuis fors li rois et Merlins. Quant Merlins ot ce fait,
empty except the king and Merlin When Merlin had this done
si dist le roi que il s'alast seoir. Et li rois dist qu'il ne
so told the king that he should-go sit And the king said that-he not
serroit mie tant qu'il eust veus cheus qui estoient a la table
would-sit at-all until that-he had seen those who were at the table
servir, si les fist li rois servir ains qu'il s'en meust
served so them made the king serve before that-he himself-thence moved
d'illuec. Quant il furent servi, si s'ala li rois seoir.
from-there When they were served so himself-went the king to-sit

Ensi furent tous les uit jours, et li rois donna moult
Thus were all the eight days and the king gave many
de biaus dons et de grans joiaus as dames et as
of fair gifts and of great jewels to-the ladies and to-the
damoisieles. Et quant vint que li baron prisent congié et
damsels And when came that the barons took leave and

que il s'en departirent, si vinrent as preudommes
that they themselves-thence departed so came to-the worthy-men
qui seoient a la table. Et li rois meismes lour demanda
who sat at the table And the king himself them asked
qu'il lour estoit avis. Et il respondirent: «Sire, nous
what-it to-them was opinion And they answered Lord we
n'avons talent de mouvoir ja mais de chi, ains ferons venir
not-have desire to move ever more from here rather shall-make come
nos femes et nos enfans en ceste vile, et ensi viverons
our wives and our children into this town and thus shall-live
au plaisir nostre signour; car teuls est nostres corages.» Et
at-the pleasure (of-)our lord for such is our heart And
li rois lour demanda: «Signour, avés vous tout tel corage?»
the king them asked Lords have you all such heart
Et il respondent tout: «Oil, si nous esmiervillons moult
And they answer all Yes so ourselves marvel much
comment che puet estre. Car il i a de teuls de nous
how this can be For it there has of such of us
que onques mais ne virent li uns l'autre, et peu i a
who ever more not saw the one the-other and few there has
de nous dont li uns fust acointes de l'autre, et ore nous
of us of-whom the one were acquainted with the-other and now we
entramons autant ou plus comme fieus seut amer pere. Ne
love-each-other as-much or more as son is-wont to-love father Nor
nous ja mais, chu me samble, ne ferons desassamblee ne
we ever more this me seems not shall-make separation nor
departirons, se mors ne nous depart.» Et quant li rois les
shall-part if death not us parts And when the king them
ot ensi parler, si le tint a moult trés grant merveille, et
heard thus speak so it held for very very great marvel and
tout cil qui dire l'oirent en furent tout esbahi. Et li rois
all those who say it-heard thereof were all amazed And the king

en fu moult liés, et commanda que il fuissent houneré
thereof was very glad and commanded that they were honored
en la ville aussi conme ses cors. Et quant les gens furent
in the town as as his body And when the folk were
departi, si dist li rois a Merlin: «Voirement me disoies tu
departed so said the king to Merlin Truly me toldst thou
voir. Ore croi je bien que nostre sires veult que ceste table
true Now believe I well that our lord wishes that this table
soit establie; mais moult m'esmerveil del lieu wuit, et moult
be established but much myself-I-marvel of-the place empty and much
te vaurroie priier, se tu le sés, que tu me desisses qui
thee would-wish to-pray if thou it knowest that thou me shouldst-tell who
l'emplira.» Et Merlins dist: «Tant te puis jou bien dire qu'il
it-will-fill And Merlin said So-much thee can I well tell that-it
ne sera pas emplis en ton tans. Et cil qui l'emplira naistera
not will-be at-all filled in thy time And he who it-will-fill will-be-born
de celui qui engendrer le doit. Et n'a point encore de
of that-one who engender him must And not-has at-all yet of
feme prise ne ne set riens qu'il le doie engenrer. Et
wife taken nor not knows anything that-be him must engender And
couverra que cil qui emplir le doit acomplisse chelui lieu
it-will-befit that he who fill it must fulfill that place
avant ou li vaissiaus del graal siet, car cil qui le gardent
before where the vessel of-the grail sits for those who it guard
ne le virent onques acomplir; ne che ne sera jamais en ton
not it saw ever fulfilled nor this not will-be ever in thy
tans, ains averra au tans le roi qui apriès toi verra.
time but will-happen in-the time (of-)the king who after thee will-come
Mais je te pri que tu faches tes assamblees et tes grans
But I thee pray that thou make thy assemblies and thy great
cours en ceste vile, et que tu meismes i soies et tiegnes
courts in this town and that thou thyself there be and hold

tes cours as festes anveus.» Et li rois dist: «Merlins, je le
thy courts at-the feasts yearly And the king said Merlin I it
ferai moult volentiers.» Et Merlins dist: «Je m'en irai;
shall-do very willingly And Merlin said I myself-thence shall-go
tu ne me verras mais devant lonc tans.» Lors li demanda
thou not me wilt-see more before long time Then him asked
li rois: «Merlins, ou iras tu? Dont ne serras tu en
the king Merlin where wilt-go thou Then not wilt-be thou at
toutes les festes en ceste ville que je i terrai?» Merlins
all the feasts in this town that I there shall-hold Merlin
dist: «Nennil, je n'i puis pas estre, que je voel que cil
said No I not-there can at-all be for I wish that those
qui avoec toi sont croient chou que il verront avenir. Car
who with thee are may-believe this that they will-see happen For
je ne voel pas qu'il dient que che aie je fait qui averra.»
I not wish at-all that-they say that this have I done which will-happen

Uther and Igerne

XVI

At a Christmas court at Carduel Uther falls in love with Igerne, wife of the duke of Tintagel. His counselor Urfin presses her, and she refuses. The king sends her a cup at table, and Igerne tells her husband, who leaves the court secretly without leave. The duke refuses to make amends, and the king defies him and invades his land, where the duke holds one castle and Igerne another.

Chi endroit dist li contes que Merlins s'em parti
Here in-place says the tale that Merlin himself-thence parted
d'Uter Pandragon et vint en Norhomberlande a Blaise,
from-Uther Pendragon and came into Northumberland to Blaise
se li dist ces choses et ces establissemens de cele table
so to-him told these things and these establishments of that table

et maintes autres choses que vous orrés en son livre.
and many other things that you will-hear in his book
Et ensi demoura Merlins plus de deus ans qu'il ne vint
And thus stayed Merlin more than two years that-he not came
nient a court. Et ensi fu un grant tans que li rois tint
at-all to court And thus was a great time that the king held
acoustumeement sa court a Carduel, tant que une fois avint
customarily his court at Carduel until that one time happened
un jour que il prist talent le roi que il semonroit tous
one day that it took desire (to-)the king that he would-summon all
ses barons, et i amenaissent tout lor femes et un et
his barons and there should-bring all their wives and one and
autre. Ensi les fist li rois semonre al Noel. Et envoia
other Thus them made the king summon at-the Christmas And sent
par tout ses lettres. Ensi comme li rois l'ot commandé
through all his letters Thus as the king it-had commanded
si le firent. Et bien sachiés que il i vint grant plenté
so it did-they And well know that it there came great plenty
de damoisieles, de pucieles et de chevaliers. Je ne puis ne
of damsels of maidens and of knights I not can nor
ne doi tous chiaus dire qui a cele court furent, mais vous
not must all those tell who at that court were but to-you
conterai chiaus et celes dont mes contes parole. Tant
shall-tell those-men and those-women of-whom my tale speaks So-much
voel je bien que vos sachiés que li dus de Teintaguel i
wish I well that you may-know that the duke of Tintagel there
fu, et si i amena sa feme Ygerne. Et quant li rois le
was and so there brought his wife Igerne And when the king her
vit, si l'ama moult en son cuer, n'onques ne l'en fist
saw so her-loved much in his heart nor-ever not to-her-thereof made
samblant se de tant non que il le regardoit plus volentiers
semblance if of so-much not that he her looked-at more willingly

des autres. Et de che se prist elle meismes garde et
than-the others And of this herself took she herself heed and
sot bien en son corage que li rois la veoit moult volentiers.
knew well in her heart that the king her saw very willingly
Et quant elle s'en fu apercheue, si l'eskiva au plus
And when she herself-thereof was perceived so him-shunned at-the most
que elle pot et se targa a venir devant lui, car ele estoit
that she could and herself delayed to come before him for she was
moult preudefeme et moult biele. Et li rois, pour s'amour
very worthy-woman and very fair And the king for her-love
et pour chou que on ne s'en presist garde, envoia
and for this that one not himself-thereof should-take heed sent
joiaus a toutes les dames, et a Ygerne envoia cheus que il
jewels to all the ladies and to Igerne sent those that he
cuida que plus li pleusissent. Et elle vit qu'il envoia a
thought that most to-her might-please And she saw that-he sent to
toutes les autres, si ne vaut ne n'osa refuser le sien don.
all the others so not wished nor not-dared refuse the his gift

Ensi departi la cours, et ains qu'elle fust departie pria
Thus departed the court and before that-it were departed prayed
li rois a tous ses barons que il fuissent arriere a la
the king to all his barons that they should-be back at the
Penthecouste si conme il avoient esté a cele feste, et aussi
Pentecost so as they had been at that feast and also
a toutes les dames. Et chascuns l'otroie moult volentiers. Et
to all the ladies And each-one it-grants very willingly And
quant li dus de Tintaguel se departi de la court, li rois
when the duke of Tintagel himself departed from the court the king
le convoia et hounera moult. Au departir si dist li rois a
him escorted and honored much At-the departing so said the king to
Ygerne tant seulement que il voloit bien que elle seust
Igerne so-much only that he wished well that she should-know

que elle emportoit son cuer avoec lui. Et elle n'en fist ains
that she carried-away his heart with her And she not-thereof made ever
samblant que elle l'entendist. Ensi prisent congié li uns de
semblance that she it-heard Thus took leave the one of
l'autre. Et li rois remest a Carduel et fist moult grant joie et
the-other And the king remained at Carduel and made very great joy and
reconforta moult les preudoumes qui a la table seoient, mais
comforted much the worthy-men who at the table sat but
tous dis fu ses cuers a Ygerne. Et ensi sousfri li rois dusques
all days was his heart on Igerne And thus suffered the king until
a Penthecouste. Et lors assamblerent li baron et les dames.
to Pentecost And then assembled the barons and the ladies

Moult fu liés li rois quant Ygerne fu venue, et moult
Very was glad the king when Igerne was come and much
donna a cele feste grans dons. Et quant li rois sist au
gave at that feast great gifts And when the king sat at-the
mengier, si fist le duc et Igerne seoir decouste lui. Lors
eating so made the duke and Igerne sit beside him Then
fist tant li rois par ses dons et par ses presens que
did so-much the king by his gifts and by his presents that
Ygerne ne s'en pot plus desfendre que ele ne seust
Igerne not herself-thereof could more defend that she — should-know
bien que li rois l'amoit. Ensi firent a cele feste grant
well that the king her-loved Thus made at that feast great
joie, et moult hounera li rois ses barons. Et quant la
joy and much honored the king his barons And when the
feste fu passee, si s'en vault chascuns raler en son
feast was passed so himself-thence would each-one go-back into his
pais, et prisent congiet. Et li rois lour pria et requist
country and took leave And the king them prayed and asked
que il revenissent quant il les manderoit, et il li
that they should-come-back when he them would-summon and they to-him

otroiierent tuit. Ensi departi la cours. Et li rois souffri
granted all Thus departed the court And the king suffered
le mesaise tout l'an. Quant che vint au chief de l'an,
the hardship all the-year When this came to-the head of the-year
si se complainst a deus de ses privés et dist l'angoisse
so himself complained to two of his intimates and told the-anguish
que il sousfroit pour Ygerne. Et il li dient: «Sire, que
that he suffered for Igerne And they to-him say Lord what
volés vous que nous en fachons? Vous ne commanderés
wish you that we thereof do You not will-command
ja chose que nous ne fachons, se nous le poons faire.»
ever thing that we not may-do if we it can do
Et li rois dist: «Conment porroie jou plus estre avoec
And the king said How could I more be with
Ygerne?» Et il dient que se il aloit en sa terre qu'il
Igerne And they say that if he went into her land that-he
en seroit blasmés et les gens s'en apercheveroient.
thereof would-be blamed and the folk themselves-thereof would-perceive
«Et quel conseil,» dist li rois, «m'en donriés vous dont?»
And what counsel said the king me-thereof would-give you then
Et il dient: «Le millour que nous savrons. Faites semonre
And they say The best that we shall-know Make summon
une grant court a Carduel et faites savoir a tous chiaus
a great court at Carduel and make know to all those
qui i verront que il ne s'en muevent devant
who there will-come that they not themselves-thence move before
quinsainne et que chascuns viegne atournés pour sejourner
fortnight and that each-one come arrayed for to-sojourn
quinze jours, et que chascuns de vos barons i amainne
fifteen days and that each-one of your barons there bring
sa feme. Ensi porrés avoir l'amour Ygerne.» Et li rois
his wife Thus will-you-be-able have the-love (of-)Igerne And the king

les fist semonre. Et il vinrent tout a Carduel. Et li
them made summon And they came all to Carduel And the
rois i donna moult de biaus dons. Moult fu liés li rois
king there gave many of fair gifts Very was glad the king
cel jour que il tint court, si parla a un sien consillier qui
that day that he held court so spoke to a his-own counselor who
avoit non Urfins, se li demanda li rois que porroit faire,
had name Urfin so him asked the king what he-could do
que l'amour Ygerne l'ochioit, si que il ne pooit durer quant
for the-love (of-)Igerne him-killed so that he not could endure when
il ne la veoit, et quant il la veoit se li aliege sa dolours,
he not her saw and when he her saw so him eases his pain
et que il ne puet vivre s'il n'a autre conseil de s'amour,
and that he not can live if-he not-has other counsel of his-love
et que morir l'en convenra. Et respont Urfins: «Vous
and that die him-thereof will-befit And answers Urfin You
estes moult mauvais, qui pour le desir d'une feme cuidiés
are very bad who for the desire of-a woman think
morir. Qui oi ains parler de feme qui bien fust priie
to-die Who heard ever speak of woman who well were prayed
et requise et on peust douner a li et a cheus qui sont
and requested and one could give to her and to those who are
entour li, que elle ne fesist sa volenté? Et tu t'esmaies.»
about her that she not did his will And thou thyself-dismayest
Et li rois respont: «Tu dis moult bien, et tu sés bien
And the king answers Thou sayest very well and thou knowest well
qu'il convient a tel chose. Je t'en pri que tu m'en
that-it befits to such thing I thee-thereof pray that thou me-thereof
aiues en toutes les manieres que tu savras, et pren canques
aid in all the manners that thou wilt-know and take whatever
tu vaurras dou mien, et donne a cheus et a celes
thou wilt-wish of-the mine and give to those-men and to those-women

qui sont entour li et parole a Ygerne en tel maniere que
who are about her and speak to Igerne in such manner as
tu sés que mestiers m'est.» Et Urfins dist: «J'en ferai
thou knowest that need to-me-is And Urfin said I-thereof shall-do
mon pooir.» Ensi ont finé lour conseil. Lors dist au roi:
my power Thus have ended their council Then said to-the king
«Gardés que vous soiiés bien del duc, et je penserai
See that you be well with-the duke and I shall-think
de parler a Ygerne.» Et li rois dist qu'il le feroit moult
of speaking to Igerne And the king said that-he it would-do very
bien. Ensi l'ont empris. Li rois fist moult grant joie le
well Thus it-have undertaken The king made very great joy (to-)the
duc tous les uit jours, et a sa compaignie donna maint
duke all the eight days and to his company gave many
biel jouel. Et Urfins parla a Ygerne, se li dist les choses
fair jewel And Urfin spoke to Igerne so to-her told the things
que il cuidoit qui mieus li pleussent, et li aporta par
that he thought which best to-her might-please and to-her brought by
maintes fois moult de biaus joiaus. Et elle s'en desfent
many times many of fair jewels And she herself-thereof defends
et n'en veult nul prendre, et tant que il avint un
and not-of-them wishes any take and until that it happened one
jour que elle traist a conseil Urfin et li dist: «Pour coi
day that she drew to counsel Urfin and to-him said For what
me veuls tu douner ces jouaus et ces biaus dons?» Et il
me wishest thou give these jewels and these fair gifts And he
respont: «Pour vostre sens et por vostre grant biauté. Je ne
answers For your sense and for your great beauty I not
vous puis riens douner, que tout li avoir le roi sont
you can anything give for all the wealth (of-)the king are
vostre, et tous ses cors a vostre plaisir et a vostre volenté
yours and all his body at your pleasure and at your will

faire.» Et elle respont: «Comment?» Et il dist: «Pour chou
to-do And she answers How And he said For this
que vous avés le cuer de lui tout entirement, et est vostres
that you have the heart of him all entirely and is yours
et obeist a vous.» Et elle respont: «Dou quel cuer dites
and obeys to you And she answers Of which heart speak
vous?» Et il dist: «Dou roi.» Et elle se saingne et dist:
you And he said Of-the king And she herself crosses and said
«Dieus! conme est li rois traitres, qui fait samblant del
God how is the king traitor who makes semblance of-the
duc amer et moi veut honnir! Urfins,» fait ele, «gardés
duke to-love and me wishes to-shame Urfin says she see
que ja mais n'en parlés. Et je voel que vous sachiés
that ever more not-thereof you-speak And I wish that you may-know
que je le diroie mon signour, et se il le savoit, il vous
that I it would-tell (to-)my lord and if he it knew it you
en converroit morir. Et si te di que je ne le celerai
thereof would-befit to-die And so thee tell that I not it shall-hide
que ceste fois.» Et il respont: «Dame, che sera m'ounours
but this time And he answers Lady this will-be my-honor
de morir pour mon signour. Ne onques mais dame ne se
to die for my lord Nor ever more lady not herself
desfendi de tel chose que vous desfendés del roi a avoir
defended from such thing as you defend of-the king to have
a ami. Car il vous aimme plus que tout le monde. Mais
as friend For he you loves more than all the world But
espoir vous vous gabés. Mais, por Dieu, aiiés merchi dou
perhaps you yourself jest But for God have mercy on-the
roy. Et sachiés de voir qu'il vous en venra encore grans
king And know for true that-it to-you thereof will-come still great
maus, ne vous ne li dus ne se puet desfendre contre
ills nor you nor the duke not themselves can defend against

la volenté le roi.» Et elle respont et dist em plourant:
the will (of-)the king And she answers and said in weeping
«Si ferai, se a Dieu plaist, je m'en desfenderai moult
So shall-I-do if to God please I myself-thereof shall-defend very
bien. Car je ne serai jamais en lieu ou il soit.»
well For I not shall-be ever in place where he may-be
Atant se departirent entre Urfin et Ygerne. Et Urfins
Thereupon themselves parted between Urfin and Igerne And Urfin
vint au roi, se li conta canques Ygerne li ot dit. Et
came to-the king so to-him told whatever Igerne to-him had said And
li rois dist que ensi doit boine dame respondre: «Nel laissiés
the king said that thus must good lady answer Not-it leave
ja pour chou a proiier.» Un jour après avint que li rois fu
ever for this to pray One day after happened that the king was
assis au mengier et li dus seoit dalés lui. Et li rois avoit
seated at-the eating and the duke sat beside him And the king had
devant lui une moult biele coupe d'or. Et Urfins conseille le
before him a very fair cup of-gold And Urfin counsels the
roi qu'il envoie cele coupe Ygerne. Et li rois dreche sa teste,
king that-he send that cup (to-)Igerne And the king raises his head
si dist au duc: «Sire, mandés Ygerne que elle prenge cele
so said to-the duke Lord send-word-to Igerne that she take that
coupe et ke elle i boive pour l'amour de moi. Et je li
cup and that she therein drink for the-love of me And I to-her
envoierai plainne de boin vin par un de vos chevaliers.» Et li
shall-send full of good wine by one of your knights And the
dus respont comme cil ki nul mal n'i entendoit: «Sire,
duke answers as he who any ill not-therein understood Lord
grans mierchis; elle le prendera moult volentiers.» Et li dus
great thanks she it will-take very willingly And the duke
apiela un sien chevalier et li dist: «Bretel, portés vous
called a his-own knight and to-him said Bretel carry you

ceste coupe vostre dame de par le roi, et li dites que
this cup (to-)your lady on behalf-of the king and to-her say that
elle i boive pour l'amour de lui.» Bretiaus prist la coupe
she therein drink for the-love of him Bretel took the cup
et vint la ou Ygerne estoit et li dist: «Dame, li rois
and came there where Igerne was and to-her said Lady the king
vous envoie ceste coupe, et mes sires vous mande que vous
you sends this cup and my lord you sends-word that you
le prendés, et que vous i buvés pour l'amour de lui.»
it take and that you therein drink for the-love of him
Quant Ygerne l'entent, si en ot grant honte et rougi.
When Igerne it-hears so thereof had great shame and reddened
Et prist la coupe et si but et le vaut renvoiier arriere. Et
And took the cup and so drank and it wished to-send back And
Bretiaus li dist: «Dame, me sires vous mande que vous le
Bretel to-her said Lady my lord you sends-word that you it
retenés.» Et elle le retint. Et Bretiaus s'en va devant
keep And she it kept And Bretel himself-thence goes before
le roi et le merchie de par Ygerne qui onques mot ne
the king and him thanks on behalf-of Igerne who ever word not
li avoit dit. Lors ala Urfins veoir que Ygerne faisoit, si
to-him had said Then went Urfin to-see what Igerne did so
le trova moult pensive. Et quant les tables furent ostees,
her found very pensive And when the tables were removed
si apiela Urfin et li dist: «Urfins, par grant traison m'a
so called Urfin and to-him said Urfin by great treason me-has
envoiié vostre sires une coupe. Mais tant sachiés vous bien
sent your lord a cup But so-much know you well
que je dirai a mon seigneur la honte que vous et il me
that I shall-tell to my lord the shame that you and he me
pourcachiés.» Et Urfins respont: «Dame, vous n'estes pas si
procure And Urfin answers Lady you not-are at-all so

fole que vous ne sachiés bien que puis que feme dit tel
foolish that you not may-know well that since that woman says such
chose a son signour, ja puis ne le querra. Et pour che
thing to her lord ever after not her will-believe And for this
vous en garderés moult bien.» Et Ygerne respont: «Dehait
you thereof will-guard very well And Igerne answers Curse-on
qui s'en gardera!» Atant departi Urfins d'Ygerne. Et
who himself-thereof will-guard Thereupon departed Urfin from-Igerne And
li rois ot mengié et fu moult liés, si prist le duc par
the king had eaten and was very glad so took the duke by
la main et li dist: «Alons veoir ces dames.» Et il dist:
the hand and to-him said Let-us-go see these ladies And he said
«Sire, volentiers.» Lors vont li rois et li dus en la cambre
Lord willingly Then go the king and the duke into the chamber
Ygerne. Mais li rois n'i ala fors que pour veoir Ygerne,
(of-)Igerne But the king not-there went except that for to-see Igerne
et ele le sot bien. Ensi souffri chelui jour dusques a la
and she it knew well Thus suffered that-one day until to the
nuit. Lors s'en ala a son ostel, et quant vint li dus,
night Then herself-thence went to her lodging and when came the duke
si le trouva en sa chambre plorant, et quant il le vit, si
so her found in her chamber weeping and when he her saw so
s'en esmiervilla moult et le prist entre ses bras com
himself-thereat marveled much and her took between his arms as
cil qui moult l'amoit, et li demande que ele avoit. Et ele
he who much her-loved and her asks what she had And she
li dist: «Je nel vous celerai ja, car il n'est riens que je
to-him said I not-it from-you shall-hide ever for it not-is thing that I
tant aim comme vous.» Adont li dist tout l'afaire le
so-much love as you Then to-him told all the-affair (of-)the
roi si comme vous l'avés oi, et que toutes ces dames que
king so as you it-have heard and that all these ladies whom

il mande et ces assamblees ne fait il se pour li non. «Et
he summons and these assemblies not does he if for her not And
vous m'avez ore fait prendre sa coupe et me mandastes
you me-have now made take his cup and me sent-word
que je i beusse pour l'amour de lui. Et vous di bien
that I therein should-drink for the-love of him And you tell well
que je ne puis plus durer a lui, ne a Urfin un sien
that I not can more endure against him nor against Urfin a his-own
consillier. Et si sai bien que puis que je le vous ai dit, il
counselor And so know well that since that I it to-you have said it
ne puet mais remanoir sans grant mal faire. Et je vous pri
not can more remain without great ill to-do And I you pray
que vous m'en menés, car je ne voel plus estre en ceste
that you me-thence lead for I not wish more to-be in this
ville.» Quant li dus ot oi et entendu che que sa feme
town When the duke had heard and understood this that his wife
li dist, si en fu moult irés, car il l'amoit moult de
to-him said so thereof was very angry for he her-loved much of
grant amour; si manda ses chevaliers en la vile a conseil.
great love so summoned his knights in the town to counsel
Et quant il furent venu, si conurent bien que li dus
And when they were come so knew well that the duke
estoit irés. Et li dus lor dist: «Signour, apparilliés vous
was angry And the duke to-them said Lords prepare yourselves
por chevauchier tout priveement que nus nel sache. Et
for riding all privately so-that anyone not-it may-know And
n'en demandés ja pour coi, tant que je le vous die.»
not-thereof ask ever for what until that I it to-you tell
Et dient tout: «A vostre commandement.» Si dist li dus:
And say all At your commandment So said the duke
«Laissiés vo harnas sans vos armes et vos chevaus, et il
Leave your harness without your arms and your horses and they

nous sivront bien demain, que je voel que li rois n'en
us will-follow well tomorrow for I wish that the king not-thereof
sache mot, ne nus cui je le puisse celer, que je
may-know word nor anyone from-whom I it can hide that I
m'en voise.» Ensi comme li dus commande, et il fu
myself-thence go Thus as the duke commands and it was
fait. Et li dus ot commandé ses chevaus a amener pour
done And the duke had commanded his horses to bring for
chevauchier. Et li dus et Ygerne chevaucierent au plus
to-ride And the duke and Igerne rode at-the most
celeement qu'il porent. Ensi s'en ala li dus en son
secretly that-they could Thus himself-thence went the duke into his
pais, et en mena sa feme. Au matin, quant il s'en
country and thence led his wife In-the morning when he himself-thence
fu alés, fu grans la noise par la vile des gens le
was gone was great the noise through the town of-the folk (of-)the
duc qui estoient remés. Li rois sot au matin que li dus
duke who were remained The king knew in-the morning that the duke
s'en fu alés, si en ot grant duel, et moult l'em
himself-thence was gone so thereof had great grief and much him-thereof
pesa de che que il en ot mené Ygerne. Si manda tous
weighed of this that he thence had led Igerne So summoned all
ses barons et leur dist et lour monstra le honte et le
his barons and to-them told and to-them showed the shame and the
despit que li dus li avoit fait qui alés s'en estoit
spite that the duke to-him had done who gone himself-thence was
et sans le congié de court. Et il respondent que il
and without the leave of court And they answer that they
s'en esmiervellent tout et qu'il a fait folie. Ensi
themselves-thereat marvel all and that-he has done folly Thus
parolent cil qui ne savoient pour coi li dus s'en
speak those who not knew for what the duke himself-thence

estoit alés. Et li rois lour dist: «Signeur, consilliés moi
was gone And the king to-them said Lords counsel me
comment je le porrai amender.» Et il dient: «Sire, ensi
how I it shall-be-able amend And they say Lord thus
comme il vous plaira.» Et li rois dist: «Je li manderai,
as it you will-please And the king said I to-him shall-send-word
se vous le me loés, que il viegne amender le fourfait que
if you it me advise that he come amend the misdeed that
il m'a fait, et tout ensi comme il s'en ala reviegne
he me-has done and all thus as he himself-thence went may-come-back
arriere por faire droit.» Et tout s'i acordent.
back for to-do right And all themselves-thereto agree

En che message alerent doi preudoume de par le roi
On this message went two worthy-men on behalf-of the king
et chevaucierent tant que il vinrent a Tintageul. La
and rode until that they came to Tintagel There
trouverent le duc. Et quant il l'orent trouvé, se li disent
found the duke And when they him-had found so to-him said
che que li rois li mandoit. Et quant li dus oi qu'il
this that the king to-him sent-word And when the duke heard that-it
le converroit arriere raler si comme il estoit venus, si sot
him would-befit back go-again so as he was come so knew
bien que il li en converroit mener Ygerne, si respondi
well that it him thereof would-befit to-lead Igerne so answered
as messages: «Or poés dire au roi que je n'irai pas
to-the messengers Now can-you tell to-the king that I not-shall-go at-all
arriere a sa court, car il a tant fait a moi et as
back to his court for he has so-much done to me and to-the
miens que je ne le doi croire ne aler a sa court. Ne je
mine that I not him must believe nor go to his court Nor I
n'en parlerai ja autrement, mais je en trai bien Dieu
not-thereof shall-speak ever otherwise but I thereof draw well God

a garant, qui set bien qu'il m'a tant fait que je nel
as warrant who knows well that-he me-has so-much done that I not-him
doi plus croire.» Ensi repairent li message arriere au roi.
must more believe Thus return the messengers back to-the king
Quant li message s'en furent parti, si a mandé li
When the messengers themselves-thence were parted so has summoned the
dus les preudoumes de son privé conseil, si lour conta et
duke the worthy-men of his privy council so to-them told and
dist por quoi il en estoit venus de Carduel, et la desloiauté
said for what he thence was come from Carduel and the disloyalty
que li rois li pourcachoit de sa feme. Quant cil l'oirent,
that the king to-him procured of his wife When those it-heard
si disent que che n'averra ja, se Dieu plaist, et que
so said that this not-will-happen ever if God please and that
bien devroit mal avoir cil qui pourcache tel chose viers son
well should ill have he who procures such thing toward his
homme. Lors dist li dus: «Signeur, je vous pri pour Dieu et
man Then said the duke Lords I you pray for God and
por chou que faire le devés que vous m'aidiés a desfendre ma
for this that do it you-must that you me-aid to defend my
terre, se li rois m'assaut.» Et il respondent que si feront il
land if the king me-assails And they answer that so will-do they
moult volentiers, et li aideront si avant comme il porront.
very willingly and him will-aid so far as they will-be-able
Ensi se consilla li dus as ses hommes. Et li message
Thus himself counseled the duke with-the his men And the messengers
revinrent arriere au roy, se li conterent la response le
came back to-the king so to-him told the answer (of-)the
duc. Et quant il l'oi, si dist qu'il s'esmiervilloit moult de
duke And when he it-heard so said that-he himself-marveled much at
la folie que li dus avoit dite, car il le cuidoit moult a sage
the folly that the duke had said for he him thought very a wise

home. Et li rois prie as ses barons que il li aident a
man And the king prays to-the his barons that they him aid to
amender le honte de sa court que li dus li avoit faite.
amend the shame of his court that the duke to-him had done
Et cil respondent que chou ne li pueent il veer, mais
And those answer that this not to-him can they refuse but
il li prient tout ensamble pour la loiauté que il le fache
they him pray all together for the loyalty that he him make
desfier avant a quarante iours. Et ensi le fist li rois, et lour
defy before at forty days And thus it did the king and them
pria que au chief de quarante jours fuissent a Tintageul
prayed that at-the head of forty days they-should-be at Tintagel
comme pour ostoiier. Et il dient que si feront il. Et li
as for to-campaign And they say that so will-do they And the
rois envoie ses messages pour desfier le duc. Et quant il
king sends his messengers for to-defy the duke And when they
l'orent desfié, li dus dist que il s'en desfenderoit se il
him-had defied the duke said that he himself-thence would-defend if he
pooit, et cil qui l'orent desfié s'en retornerent, et
could and those who him-had defied themselves-thence returned and
li dus s'apparilla de lui desfendre. Et li message dient
the duke himself-prepared to him to-defend And the messengers say
au roi que li dus s'en desfendera se on l'assaut.
to-the king that the duke himself-thence will-defend if one him-assails
Quant li rois ot chou oi, si en fu moult iriés, et
When the king had this heard so thereof was very angry and
envoia par toute sa terre pour semonre ses barons, si
sent through all his land for to-summon his barons so
les fist tous assambler a l'entree de la terre le duc,
them made all assemble at the-entry of the land (of-)the duke
si destruist et villes et chastiaus. Et si oi dire que li
so destroyed both towns and castles And so heard say that the

dus estoit a une part en un de ses chastiaus et sa feme
duke was at one side in one of his castles and his wife
en l'autre. Lors parla li rois a son conseil et lour dist
in the-other Then spoke the king to his council and to-them said
que il le consillaissent le quel il assaurroit avant. Et ses
that they him should-counsel the which he would-assail first And his
consaus li loe que il voist assaillir le duc, que se il le
council him advises that he go assail the duke for if he him
prent il avera le pais et la terre toute. Ensi s'en
takes he will-have the country and the land all Thus themselves-thereof
sont acordé, et li rois l'otria, et quant il chevauchierent
are agreed and the king it-granted and when they rode
ou li dus estoit, si dist li rois a Urfin: «Urfins, quel
where the duke was so said the king to Urfin Urfin what
conseil porrai je prendre d'Ygerne?» Et Urfins respont:
counsel shall-be-able I take of-Igerne And Urfin answers
«Sire, de che c'on ne puet avoir se convient sousfrir. Et
Lord of this which-one not can have it behooves to-suffer And
devés grant forche metre a prendre le duc; car, se vous
must-you great force put to taking the duke for if you
l'aviés pris, vous en verriés bien a chief de l'autre affaire.»
him-had taken you thereof would-come well to head of the-other affair

The Night at Tintagel

XVII

Uther besieges the duke in vain and grieves for Igerne. Merlin comes to Urfin as an old man and to the king as a cripple, then as himself, and for a gift to be named later gives the king the duke's likeness and Urfin and himself those of the knights Jordan and Bretel. The king lies with Igerne and begets Arthur, whom Merlin claims as his gift. Meanwhile the duke is killed in a sally and his castle taken.

Chi endroit dist li contes que li rois assist le duc en son
Here in-place says the tale that the king besieged the duke in his
chastiel. Si i ert grant pieche que onques prendre ne le
castle So there was great while that ever take not it
pot, si en fu moult dolans, et si estoit moult angoisseus
could so thereof was very sorrowful and so was very anguished
pour Ygerne, et tant que il estoit en son pavillon, si
for Igerne and so-much that he was in his pavilion so
plouroit. Et quant si homme le virent plourer, si en
wept And when his men him saw weep so thence
alerent, et le laissierent tout seul. Et Urfins qui estoit fors,
went and him left all alone And Urfin who was outside
quant il le sot, si vint devant lui et le trouva plourant, si
when he it knew so came before him and him found weeping so
l'en pesa moult, et li demanda pour coi il plouroit.
him-thereof weighed much and him asked for what he wept
Et li rois li dist: «Urfins, tu dois bien savoir pour
And the king to-him said Urfin thou must well know for
coi, que tu sés bien que je me muir pour Ygerne. Et
what for thou knowest well that I myself die for Igerne And
je voi bien que morir m'en convient, car j'ai perdu tout
I see well that die me-thereof behooves for I-have lost all

le repos que hom doit avoir; pour chou si sai bien que
the repose that man must have for this so know-I well that
je m'en muir. Car je ne voi comment je puisse avoir
I myself-thereof die For I not see how I may have
garison.» Et Urfins li dist: «Sire, vous estes moult de
healing And Urfin to-him said Lord you are very of
foible cuer, que vous cuidiés morir pour une feme. Mais je
feeble heart for you think to-die for a woman But I
vous donrai boin conseil, se vous volés. Se vous faisiés querre
you shall-give good counsel if you wish If you made seek
Merlin et mander tant qu'il venist a vous, il ne porroit
Merlin and summon until that-he came to you it not could
estre qu'il ne vous en seust consillier. Et vous li
be that-he not you thereof might-know counsel And you to-him
dounissiés canques ses cuers vaurroit.» Et li rois respont: «Il
should-give whatever his heart would-wish And the king answers It
n'est riens que on peust faire nule que je ne fesisse. Mais
not-is thing that one could do any that I not would-do But
je sai bien que Merlins set bien ma destrece, si criem que
I know well that Merlin knows well my distress so fear-I that
je l'aie courechié de che que li lieus vuis de la table
I him-may-have angered of this that the place empty of the table
reonde fu assaiiés, qu'il i a moult grant pieche qu'il ne
round was tested for-it there has very great while that-he not
fu en lieu ou je fuisse; ou espoir qu'il li poise quant
was in place where I were or perhaps that-it him weighs when
je aim la feme de mon houme, mais certes je n'en puis
I love the wife of my man but certainly I not-thereof can
mais, car mes cuers ne s'en puet partir. Et je sai bien
more for my heart not itself-thence can part And I know well
que il me dist que je ne l'envoiaisse ja querre.» Et Urfins
that he me told that I not him-should-send ever to-seek And Urfin

respont: «Sire, d'une chose sui je certains, que se il est
answers Lord of-one thing am I certain that if he is
sains et haitiés et il vous aimme tant comme il seut
sound and well and he you loves as-much as he was-wont
et il set la destrece que vous avés, et il ne demourra pas
and he knows the distress that you have and he not will-tarry at-all
que il ne viegne a vous.» Ensi comforte Urfins le roi, et
that he not come to you Thus comforts Urfin the king and
li dist, se il faisoit biele chiere et grant joie et mandast
to-him said if he made fair face and great joy and summoned
ses houmes et fust avoec aus, il alegeroit grant partie de
his men and were with them he would-ease great part of
sa doulour. Et li rois dist que il fera moult volentiers
his pain And the king said that he will-do very willingly
che que il li conseille, mais l'amour Ygerne ne porroit
this that he him counsels but the-love (of-)Igerne not could
il oublier. Ensi se comforta li rois une grant pieche,
he forget Thus himself comforted the king a great while
et refist le chastiel assallir, mais il ne le pot prendre.
and again-made the castle assail but he not it could take

Un jour avint que Urfins chevauchoit par l'ost, tant
One day happened that Urfin rode through the-host until
qu'il encontra un homme k'il ne connissoit mie. Et
that-he met a man whom-he not knew at-all And
cil hom li dist: «Sire Urfins, je parleroie volentiers a
that man to-him said Lord Urfin I would-speak willingly to
vous la fors.» Et Urfins li dist: «Et je a vous.» Lors
you there outside And Urfin to-him said And I to you Then
s'en alerent fors de l'ost. Et Urfins descent a pié,
themselves-thence went out of the-host And Urfin descends on foot
pour parler a lui, et li demande qui il estoit. Et il li
for to-speak to him and him asks who he was And he to-him

dist: «Je sui uns hom vieus, et fui ja tenus pour sages
said I am a man old and was once held for wise
quant je fui jovenes, mais on dist que je radote. Mais je
when I was young but one says that I dote But I
vous di a conseil que je fui n'a gaires a Tintageul, si fu
you tell in counsel that I was not-has much at Tintagel so was
acointes d'un preudomme qui me dist que vostre rois amoit
acquainted with-a worthy-man who me told that your king loved
la feme au duc, et que pour chou li destruist li rois
the wife of-the duke and that for this him destroyed the king
sa terre que li dus l'en mena de Carduel. Et se vous
his land that the duke her-thence led from Carduel And if you
me volés croire et donner boin loiier, je sai tel homme
me will believe and give good reward I know such man
qui vous feroit bien parler a Ygerne et conseillier le roi
who you would-make well speak to Igerne and counsel the king
de s'amour.» Quant Urfins oi ainsi parler le viel homme,
of his-love When Urfin heard thus speak the old man
si s'esmiervilla moult ou il prendoit chou qu'il disoit, se
so himself-marveled much where he took this that-he said so
li prie que, se il set, que il li ensegne celui qui le roi
him prays that if he knows that he him show that-one who the king
en porroit consillier. Et il respont: «Je savrai anchois
thereof could counsel And he answers I shall-know before
quel loiier li rois en donroit.» Et Urfins dist: «Quant jou
what reward the king thereof would-give And Urfin said When I
avrai parlet au roy, te trouverai jou chi?» Et il dist:
shall-have spoken to-the king thee shall-find I here And he said
«Vous me troverés ou moi ou mon message.» Et cil
You me will-find either me or my messenger And that-one
le commande a Dieu, si s'en va. Et Urfins vint au
him commends to God so himself-thence goes And Urfin came to-the

roi, se li dist tout chou que il avoit trouvé. Et quant
king so to-him told all this that he had found And when
li rois l'oi, si en rist et li demande: «Urfins, connois
the king it-heard so thereof laughed and him asks Urfin knowest
tu cel homme?» Et il dist: «Sire, c'est uns vieus hom.»
thou that man And he said Lord it-is an old man
Et li rois li demande: «Quant doit il reparler a toi?» Et
And the king him asks When must he speak-again to thee And
Urfins dist: «Le matin, et me dist que li sache a dire
Urfin said The morning and me told that him I-may-know to tell
le loiier que vous li donrés.» Et li rois dist: «Jou irai
the reward that you him will-give And the king said I shall-go
le matin.» Lors ala li rois la ou Urfins l'en mena,
the morning Then went the king there where Urfin him-thence led
si troverent un contrait, quant il furent issu de l'ost, et
so found a cripple when they were issued from the-host and
li rois passa par devant lui, et li contrais li crie: «Rois,
the king passed by before him and the cripple to-him cries King
se Dieus acomplisse ton cuer de la chose du monde que
so God fulfill thy heart of the thing of-the world that
tu plus aimmes, donne moi tel chose dont je te saice
thou most lovest give me such thing of-which I thee may-know
gré.» Et li rois rist et dist a Urfin: «Urfins, feroies tu
thanks And the king laughed and said to Urfin Urfin wouldst-do thou
riens pour moi?» Et il dist: «Sire, oil, canques je porroie.»
anything for me And he said Lord yes whatever I could
«Or va dont,» dist li rois, «si te donne a cel contrait, et
Now go then said the king so thyself give to that cripple and
li di que je te ai donné et que je n'ai chose avoec
to-him say that I thee have given and that I not-have thing with
moi dont je soie saisis.» Et Urfins s'ala seoir dalés lui
me of-which I may-be seised And Urfin himself-went to-sit beside him

tantost. Et quant li contrais vit Urfin, se li dist: «Que
at-once And when the cripple saw Urfin so to-him said What
venés vous querre?» Et il dist: «Li rois veult que je soie
come you to-seek And he said The king wishes that I be
vostres.» Et quant li contrais l'entendi, si s'en rist
yours And when the cripple it-heard so himself-thereof laughed
et li dist: «Li rois s'est apercheus et me connoist
and to-him said The king himself-is perceived and me knows
moult mieus que tu ne fais. Mais or t'en va au roi,
much better than thou — dost But now thyself-thence go to-the king
se li di que il te feroit grant meskief faire pour sa
so to-him say that he thee would-make great mischief do for his
volenté, et que je li manc qu'il s'est tost apercheus,
will and that I to-him send-word that-he himself-is soon perceived
et que mieus l'en sera.» Et Urfins vint au roi,
and that better to-him-thereof will-be And Urfin came to-the king
se li conte. Et quant li rois oi chou, si chevaucha
so to-him tells And when the king heard this so rode
arriere grant aleure, et quant il vinrent la ou il
back great pace and when they came there where they
l'avoient trouvé, si n'en trouverent point, si dist li rois
him-had found so not-thereof found any so said the king
a Urfin: «Sés qui li hom est qui ier parla a vous
to Urfin Knowest-thou who the man is who yesterday spoke to you
en samblance de vieil homme? C'est cil meismes que
in semblance of old man It-is that-one himself whom
tu as hui veu contrait.» Et Urfins respont: «Puet il estre
thou hast today seen crippled And Urfin answers Can it be
que hom se puet desfigurer? et qui est il qui ensi se
that man himself can disfigure and who is he who thus himself
desfigura?» Et il respont: «Saichiés que c'est Merlins qui
disfigured And he answers Know that it-is Merlin who

ensi se gabe de nous. Et quant il vaurra parler a nous,
thus himself mocks of us And when he will-wish to-speak to us
il le nous fera bien savoir.» Ensi le laissierent ester. Et
he it to-us will-make well know Thus it left to-be And
Merlins vint en la tente le roi en sa droite samblance
Merlin came into the tent (of-)the king in his right semblance
et demanda ou li rois estoit. Et uns messages vint au
and asked where the king was And a messenger came to-the
roi, se li dist que Merlins le demandoit. Et quant li
king so to-him said that Merlin him asked-for And when the
rois l'oi, si en fu moult liés et s'en vint au plus
king it-heard so thereof was very glad and himself-thence came at-the most
tost qu'il pot la ou Merlins estoit, et apiela Urfin: «Or
soon that-he could there where Merlin was and called Urfin Now
verras chou que je te dis, que Merlins est venus, et le
wilt-see this that I thee told that Merlin is come and it
savoie bien que pour nient le querroit on.» Et Urfins dist:
I-knew well that for nothing him would-seek one And Urfin said
«Sire, or i parra se vous onques riens vausistes ne
Lord now there will-appear if you ever anything wished nor
seustes faire a sa volenté, car il n'est nus hom qui mieus
knew to-do at his will for it not-is any man who better
or vous puist aidier de l'amour d'Ygerne.» Et Merlins vint
now you may aid of the-love of-Igerne And Merlin came
a Urfin et li dist: «Se li rois me voloit jurer sour
to Urfin and to-him said If the king me wished to-swear on
sains que il me donroit un don tel que je li demanderoie
saints that he me would-give a gift such as I him would-ask
sauve s'ounour, je li aideroie a avoir l'amour d'Ygerne. Et
save his-honor I him would-aid to have the-love of-Igerne And
toi meismes le convient jurer avant que tu ne t'en
thee thyself it behooves to-swear before that thou — thyself-thence

iras a l'encontre.» Et Urfins respont: «Che poise moi qu'il
wilt-go to the-encounter And Urfin answers This weighs me that-it
n'est ja fait.» Et li rois otroie chou que Urfins a
not-is already done And the king grants this that Urfin has
dit; et dit Urfins: «Mais or pense comment il puist estre
said and says Urfin But now think how he may be
alegiés.» Et quant Merlins ot ceste parole, si s'en
eased And when Merlin heard this word so himself-thereof
rist et dist que «quant li serement seront fait, je vous
laughed and said that when the oaths will-be made I to-you
dirai conment che porroit estre.» Lors fist li rois aporter
shall-tell how this could be Then made the king bring
les sains, et illuecques jura li rois et Urfins che que
the saints and there swore the king and Urfin this that
Merlins lour devise que li rois li donra che que Merlins
Merlin to-them devises that the king him will-give this that Merlin
li demandera. Ensi furent li serement fait et Merlins les
him will-ask Thus were the oaths made and Merlin them
ot pris. Lors dist li rois: «Or vous pri je, Merlins, que
had taken Then said the king Now you pray I Merlin that
vous pensés de mon affaire comme li hom ou monde qui
you think of my affair as the man in-the world who
gringnour mestier en a.» Lors dist Merlins: «Sire, il vous
greater need thereof has Then said Merlin Lord it you
converra aler en moult diverse maniere la ou Ygerne est.
will-befit to-go in very strange manner there where Igerne is
Car elle est moult sage dame et moult loiaus enviers Dieu
For she is very wise lady and very loyal toward God
et enviers son signour. Mais ore verrés quel pooir j'ai
and toward her lord But now will-you-see what power I-have
de vostre volenté accomplir.» Lors dist au roi: «Sire, je
of your will to-fulfill Then said to-the king Lord I

vous baillerai la samblance le duc si bien que de nului
you shall-give the semblance (of-)the duke so well that by anyone
ne serés conneus. Et li dus a deus chevaliers qui sont
not will-you-be known And the duke has two knights who are
si privé de lui que nus plus et d'Ygerne aussi: li uns
so intimate with him that none more and with-Igerne also the one
a a non Bretiaus et li autres Jourdains. Je baillerai Urfin
has as name Bretel and the other Jordan I shall-give Urfin
la samblance Jordain et je prenderai la samblanche Bretel,
the semblance (of-)Jordan and I shall-take the semblance (of-)Bretel
et je ferai ouvrir la porte dou chastiel ou Ygerne est,
and I shall-make open the gate of-the castle where Igerne is
et vous ferai entrer laiens, et girrés a li. Et je et
and you shall-make enter in-there and will-lie with her And I and
Urfins enterrons apriés vous par les samblances que nous
Urfin shall-enter after you by the semblances that we
prenderons. Mais vous en convenra moult main issir fors,
shall-take But you thereof will-befit very early to-go out
quant nous serons laiens, que au matin orrons moult
when we shall-be in-there for in-the morning shall-we-hear very
estranges nouvieles. Et si atornés votre ost a l'issir et
strange news And so array your host at the-going-out and
vos barons. Et desfendés que nus n'aille viers le chastiel
your barons And forbid that anyone go toward the castle
devant chou que nous soions revenu. Et gardés que vous
before this that we be returned And see that you
ne le dites nului homme ou vous voler aler que a nous
not it tell to-any man where you wish to-go but to us
deus qui chi soumes.» Et Urfins et li rois respondent que
two who here are And Urfin and the king answer that
il le feront tout ensi comme il l'a devisé. «Or vous
they it will-do all thus as he it-has devised Now yourselves

aprestés,» fait Merlins, «car je vous baillerai ces samblances
prepare says Merlin for I you shall-give these semblances
par voies.» Li rois se hasta de faire chou que Merlins
on-the way The king himself hastened to do this that Merlin
li dist au plus tost que il pot. Et quant il l'ot fait,
him told at-the most soon that he could And when he it-had done
si dist a Merlin: «Avés vous apparillié?» Et il respont:
so said to Merlin Have you prepared And he answers
«Il n'i a fors de l'aler.» Atant se metent a la
It not-there has but of the-going Thereupon themselves put on the
voie, et tant alerent qu'il vinrent au chastiel. Lors dist
way and so-much went that-they came to-the castle Then said
Merlins au roi: «Sire, or vous remanés chi et nous en
Merlin to-the king Lord now yourself remain here and we thence
irons entre moi et Urfin.» Lors s'en vont, si donna
shall-go between me and Urfin Then themselves-thence go so gave
samblance lui et Urfin. Et quant il furent dessamblé, si
semblance himself and Urfin And when they were changed so
revinrent arriere au roi. Merlins li aporta une herbe et si
came back to-the king Merlin him brought an herb and so
li dist: «Sire, frotés vostre visage de ceste herbe et vos
to-him said Lord rub your face with this herb and your
mains.» Li rois le fist, et quant il ot chou fait, si ot tout
hands The king it did and when he had this done so had all
apertement le samblance le duc. Et lors dist au roi:
openly the semblance (of-)the duke And then said to-the king
«Sire, or vous souviegne se vous veistes onques Jourdain.»
Lord now you remember if you saw ever Jordan
Et li rois dist: «Oil, je le connois moult bien.» Et
And the king said Yes I him know very well And
Merlins vint a Urfin, si li remist la samblance Jourdain
Merlin came to Urfin so to-him put the semblance (of-)Jordan

et lors l'amena par devant le roi. Et Urfins dist: «Je ne
and then him-led by before the king And Urfin said I not
le connois pour nul homme se che n'est pour le duc.» Et
him know for any man if this not-is for the duke And
li rois dist d'Urfin k'il li samble Jourdain. Et quant
the king said of-Urfin that-he to-him seems Jordan And when
il orent un poi ensi esté, si regarderent Merlin, si lour
they had a little thus been so looked-at Merlin so to-them
fu avis que che fust Bretiaus. Ensi parlerent ensamble et
was opinion that this were Bretel Thus spoke together and
attendirent jusques a la nuit. Et quant il fu a la nuit un
waited until to the night And when it was at the night a
poi annuitié, si vinrent a la porte de Tintageul. Et Merlins
little become-night so came to the gate of Tintagel And Merlin
apiela le portier, et li portiers et cil ki gardoient la
called the porter and the porter and those who guarded the
porte virent tout apertement Bretel et le duc et Jourdain,
gate saw all openly Bretel and the duke and Jordan
et ouvrirent la porte et les laissierent ens entrer. Et quant
and opened the gate and them let in enter And when
il furent ens, si desfendi Bretiaus que nus ne desist que
they were in so forbade Bretel that anyone — should-say that
li dus fust venus. Assés fu qui ala dire a la duchoise
the duke were come Enough was who went to-tell to the duchess
que li dus estoit venus. Et cil chevaucent tant que il
that the duke was come And those ride until that they
vinrent devant le palais. Lors descendirent et li rois traist
came before the palace Then descended and the king drew
Merlin a conseil, et Merlins lui, et li dist qu'il se
Merlin to counsel and Merlin him and to-him said that-he himself
tiegne moult liement comme li dus. Et ensi vinrent li troi
bear very gladly as the duke And thus came the three

jusques a la chambre Ygerne, qui estoit ja couchie, et
until to the chamber (of-)Igerne who was already lain-down and
au plus tost qu'il porent firent il lour signour couchier.
at-the most soon that-they could made they their lord lie-down
Ensi jurent li rois et Ygerne cele nuit, et en cele nuit
Thus lay the king and Igerne that night and in that night
engenra il le boin roi qui fu apielés Artus. La dame fist
engendered he the good king who was called Arthur The lady made
grant joie d'Uter Pandragon comme dou duc son signour que
great joy of-Uther Pendragon as of-the duke her lord whom
elle amoit moult, dusques a l'ajournee que nouvieles vinrent
she loved much until to the-daybreak when news came
en la ville que li dus estoit mors et ses chastiaus pris. Les
into the town that the duke was dead and his castle taken The
nouvielles vinrent moult celeement laiens. Et quant Bretiaus
news came very secretly in-there And when Bretel
et Jourdains qui estoient ja levé oirent ces nouvieles,
and Jordan who were already risen heard these news
si vinrent la ou lour sires gisoit, si dirent: «Sire, levés
so came there where their lord lay so said Lord rise
sus, si vous hastés et alés a vostre chastiel, que vos gens
up so yourself hasten and go to your castle for your folk
cuident que vous soiiés mors.» Et il lour dist: «Che n'est
think that you be dead And he to-them said This not-is
pas merveille se il le cuident, car jou issi en tel maniere
at-all marvel if they it think for I issued in such manner
dou chastiel que nus n'en sot mot.» Il prist congiet
from-the castle that anyone not-thereof knew word He took leave
a Ygerne et le baisa moult doucement au departir, voiant
of Igerne and her kissed very sweetly at-the departing in-sight-of
tous chiaus qui laiens estoient. Et puis issirent dou chastiel
all those who in-there were And then issued from-the castle

au plus tost qu'il porent, c'onques ne furent ravisé de
at-the most soon that-they could so-that-ever not were noticed by
nului, si fu li rois moult liés. Et Merlins li dist: «Sire,
anyone so was the king very glad And Merlin to-him said Lord
je vous ai bien tenu vos couvens. Or gardés vous que vous
I you have well kept your covenants Now guard yourself that you
me tenés les miens.» Et li rois dist: «Vous m'avés fait la
me keep the mine And the king said You me-have done the
gringnour amour que on peust faire et le plus biel serviche
greatest love that one could do and the most fair service
que nus hom peust faire a autre. Et les vos couvens vous
that any man could do to another And the your covenants you
tenrai jou bien se Dieu plaist.» Et Merlins dist au roi: «Je
shall-keep I well if God please And Merlin said to-the king I
le te demanc, et voel que tu saces que tu as gaaignié
it of-thee ask and wish that thou may-know that thou hast gained
un hoir, et que tu le m'as dounet, car tu ne le dois
an heir and that thou it me-hast given for thou not it must
avoir. Et tel pooir coume tu i as tu le me donras. Et
have And such power as thou therein hast thou it me wilt-give And
si fai mettre l'eure et la nuit en escrit que tu l'engenras,
so make put the-hour and the night in writing that thou it-engenderedst
si savras se je t'ai voir dit.» «Et je t'ai juré,» fait li
so wilt-know if I thee-have true said And I thee-have sworn says the
rois, «si le te ferai si comme tu l'as dit, et si le te
king so it thee shall-do so as thou it-hast said and so it thee
doing.» Ensi chevauchierent jusques a une iaue: a cele iaue
give Thus rode until to a water at that water
les fist Merlins laver, et puis refurent comme devant. Lors
them made Merlin wash and then were-again as before Then
chevaucierent dessi a l'ost au plus tost qu'il porent. Et
rode until to the-host at-the most soon that-they could And

si tost coume il i furent venu, si houme s'assamblerent
so soon as they there were come his men themselves-assembled
entour lui et li disent que li dus estoit mors. Et li
about him and to-him said that the duke was dead And the
rois lour demanda comment chou avoit esté. Et il li
king them asked how this had been And they to-him
conterent que le jour que il s'em parti estoit li os
told that the day that he himself-thence parted was the host
moult coie et serie: «Et li dus s'aperchut que vous n'i
very quiet and calm And the duke himself-perceived that you not-there
estiés mie, si fist sa gent armer et s'en issirent
were at-all so made his folk arm and themselves-thence issued
tout a piet et a cheval et se ferirent en nostre ost,
all on foot and on horse and themselves struck into our host
et il firent grant damage, ains que vo gent fuissent armé.
and they did great harm before that your folk were armed
Et li cris leva et la noise, et no gent s'armerent et
And the cry rose and the noise and our folk themselves-armed and
lour coururent seure, et les remisent jusques devant la
on-them ran upon and them put-back until before the
porte. La guenchi li dus, et fist moult d'armes, et illuec
gate There swerved the duke and did much of-arms and there
fu ses chevaus ochis et il abatus; et illuec fu mors
was his horse killed and he struck-down and there was dead
li dus entre no gent a piet qui ne le connissoient mie.
the duke among our folk on foot who not him knew at-all
Et nous hurtames a iaus parmi la porte, et cil se
And we pushed with them through the gate and those themselves
desfendirent moult petit, puis que il orent perdu le duc.»
defended very little since that they had lost the duke
Li rois dist que moult li poise de la mort le duc.
The king said that much him weighs of the death (of-)the duke

The Peace and the Marriage

XVIII

The king takes counsel on amends for the duke's death, and Urfin devises a peace. Merlin claims the child Uther begot by his help, has Urfin record the night, and leaves. At a parley Urfin proposes that Uther marry Igerne and give the duke's daughter to King Lot of Orkney. All agree. Lot's sons include Mordred and Gawain, Neutres of Sorhaut weds the bastard Morgan, and Morgue is schooled and called the fay.

Ensi fu li dus de Tintageul mors et ses chastiaus pris. Li
Thus was the duke of Tintagel dead and his castle taken The
rois parla as ses barons et lour moustra que moult li
king spoke to-the his barons and to-them showed that much him
pesoit de la mesqueance le duc, si lor demanda conseil
weighed of the mischance (of-)the duke so them asked counsel
comment il porroit ceste chose amender, qu'il ne voloit pas
how he could this thing amend for-he not wished at-all
que il en fust blasmés, car il ne haoit pas le duc de
that he thereof were blamed for he not hated at-all the duke to
mort: «Si l'amenderai a men pooir.» Lors parla Urfins, qui
death So it-I-shall-amend to my power Then spoke Urfin who
moult estoit bien dou roi, se li dist: «Sire, dès que la
very was well with-the king so to-him said Lord since that the
chose est faite, si la convient amender au plus biel que
thing is done so it behooves amend at-the most fair that
on porra.» Lors traist Urfins grant plenté de ses barons
one will-be-able Then drew Urfin great plenty of his barons
a conseil et lor dist: «Signour, comment loés vous que
to counsel and to-them said Lords how advise you that
li rois amende a la dame le mort de son baron et
the king amend to the lady the death of her baron and

as ses amis? Car il vous en requiert conseil, si l'en
to-the her friends For he you thereof asks counsel so him-thereof
devés consillier a vo pooir comme vostre signour.» Et il
must-you counsel to your power as your lord And they
respondent: «Nous le consillerons volentiers, et vous nous
answer We him shall-counsel willingly and you us
consilliés de chou qui mieus nous vaille a requerir; car
counsel of this which best us may-avail to request for
nous savons bien que vous estes moult bien de son conseil.»
we know well that you are very well of his council
Et Urfins respont: «Cuidiés vous, pour chou se je sui bien
And Urfin answers Think you for this if I am well
de lui, que je li loe chose par derriere que je ne li loe
with him that I him advise thing by behind that I not him advise
par devant? Dont me terriés vous a traites. Et se li los
by before Then me would-hold you for traitor And if the counsel
estoit seur moi de la pais as amis a la dame, je en
were on me of the peace with-the friends of the lady I thereof
loeroie tel chose que vous n'oseriés mie penser.» Et il
would-advise such thing that you not-would-dare at-all think And they
respondent: «Nous vous en requerons bien et savons bien
answer We you thereof ask well and know well
que vous estes de boin conseil, et nous vous prions que vous
that you are of good counsel and we you pray that you
en dites vostre avis, si comme vous avés oi.» Et il dist:
thereof tell your opinion so as you have heard And he said
«J'en dirai mon avis, et se vous savés mieus si le dites.
I-thereof shall-tell my opinion and if you know better so it tell
Je loeroie que li rois mandast par tout la ou li
I would-advise that the king should-summon through all there where the
ami a la dame et au duc seroient et les fesist venir
friends of the lady and of-the duke would-be and them should-make come

a Tintageul, et li rois i fust et fesist la dame et ses
to Tintagel and the king there were and should-make the lady and her
amis venir devant li et si lour fesist li rois querre pais
friends come before him and so to-them should-make the king seek peace
de la mort le duc tele que s'il le refusoient qu'il en
for the death (of-)the duke such that if-they it refused that-they thereof
fuissent blasmé et li rois tenus por loiaus.» Ensi vinrent
were blamed and the king held for loyal Thus came
devant le roi, se li ont conté lour conseil, mais il ne
before the king so to-him have told their counsel but they not
dient mie que Urfins lour eust dit, car il l'ot desfendu. Si
say at-all that Urfin to-them had said for he it-had forbidden So
respondi li rois et dist: «Signour, a che conseil m'acort je
answered the king and said Lords to this counsel me-accord I
bien, et je voel que il soit ensi conme vous l'avés devisé.»
well and I wish that it be thus as you it-have devised

Ensi manda li rois les parens le duc par les terres
Thus summoned the king the kin (of-)the duke through the lands
et que il venissent a Tintageul par boines trives, qu'il lour
and that they should-come to Tintagel by good truces for-he to-them
voloit amender toutes les choses dont il se plaignoient
wished to-amend all the things of-which they themselves complained
de lui. Et Merlins vint a conseil et dist au roi: «Sire,
of him And Merlin came to counsel and said to-the king Lord
savés vous qui che conseil a donné que vous faites?» Et li
know you who this counsel has given that you do And the
rois dist: «Naje, autrement que li baron le me loent.» Et
king said No otherwise than the barons it to-me advise And
Merlins dist: «Sire, il ne le vos seussent pas entre iaus
Merlin said Lord they not it to-you would-know at-all between them
tous itel loer, mais Urfins qui moult est sages et loiaus
all such advise but Urfin who very is wise and loyal

a porpensé la pais en son cuer la millour et la plus
has thought-out the peace in his heart the best and the most
hounerable qui soit. Et si ne quide pas que nus le sace;
honorable that may-be And so not thinks at-all that anyone it may-know
et non fet il, et je seulement et vous cui je l'ai dit.»
and not does he and I only and you to-whom I it-have told
Et li rois prie Merlin que il li die. Et Merlins le conte
And the king prays Merlin that he to-him tell And Merlin it tells
au roi. Et quant il l'oi, si en ot moult grant joie et
to-the king And when he it-heard so thereof had very great joy and
dist a Merlin: «Que m'en loés vous de ceste chose?» Et
said to Merlin What me-thereof advise you of this thing And
Merlins dist: «Je ne sai millour conseil douner ne plus loial,
Merlin said I not know better counsel to-give nor more loyal
et si avras acomplie toute la volenté de ton cuer dont tu
and so wilt-have fulfilled all the will of thy heart of-which thou
iés si desirrans. Et je m'en voel aler. Mais je voel avant
art so desirous And I myself-thence wish to-go But I wish first
parler a toi par devant Urfin. Et quant je m'en serai
to-speak to thee by before Urfin And when I myself-thence shall-be
alés, tu porras bien demander a lui coument il a pensee
gone thou wilt-be-able well ask of him how he has thought
ceste pais.» Et li rois dist que ensi le fera il. Atant fu
this peace And the king said that thus it will-do he Thereupon was
Urfins apielés, et quant il fu venus devant iaus, si parla
Urfin called and when he was come before them so spoke
Merlins et dist: «Sire, vous m'avés en couvent que vous me
Merlin and said Lord you me-have in covenant that you me
donrés l'oir que vous avés engenré, qu'il n'est pas raisons
will-give the-heir that you have engendered for-it not-is at-all reason
que vous le tiegniés a vostre fil. Et vous avés la nuit et
that you it hold as your son And you have the night and

l'eure en escrit qu'il fu engenrés, et si savés bien que vous
the-hour in writing that-he was engendered and so know well that you
l'avés engenré par moi; si seroit vostre li pechiés, se je
him-have engendered by me so would-be yours the sin if I
ne li aidoie, car espoir encore porroit avoir sa mere grant
not him aided for perhaps still could have his mother great
honte de lui, et feme n'a point de sens contre chou
shame of him and woman not-has any of sense against this
qu'elle ne puet celer. Si voel que Urfins en face ses lettres
which-she not can hide So wish-I that Urfin thereof make his letters
et que il le terme et le nuit que il fu engenrés i
and that he the term and the night that he was engendered therein
meche; il ne vous ne me verrés mais devant le jour que il
put he nor you nor me will-see more before the day that he
naistera, la nuit. Et je vous pri comme a mon signour que
will-be-born the night And I you pray as to my lord that
vous creés Urfin de canques il vous dira. Car il vous aimme
you believe Urfin of whatever he to-you will-say For he you loves
de tout son cuer, ne il ne vous loera ja chose qui
with all his heart nor he not you will-advise ever thing which
ne soit a vostre preu et a vostre hounour. Et je n'en
not be to your profit and to your honor And I not-thereof
parlerai mais a vous devant sis mois, mais je parlerai entre
shall-speak more to you before six months but I shall-speak between
chi et dont a Urfin. Et che que je vous manderai par
here and then to Urfin And this that I to-you shall-send-word by
Urfin creés et faites se vous volés estre bien de moi et de
Urfin believe and do if you wish to-be well with me and with
lui et se vous volés vostre loiauté sauver d'or en avant.»
him and if you wish your loyalty to-save from-now on forward

Ensi retint Urfins le terme de l'engendrement de l'enfant,
Thus retained Urfin the term of the-engendering of the-child
et Merlins traist le roi a conseil: «Sire, tu te prenderas
and Merlin drew the king to counsel Lord thou thyself wilt-take
garde que Ygerne ne sache que tu as a li geu. Chou
heed that Igerne not may-know that thou hast with her lain This
est la riens que plus le fera tenir en ta merchi: que se
is the thing which most her will-make hold in thy mercy for if
tu li demandes de sa grossece et de qui elle est grosse,
thou her askest of her pregnancy and of whom she is pregnant
elle ne savera trouver le pere, si en avera grant honte
she not will-know-how find the father so thereof will-have great shame
de toi. Et chou est la chose dont tu me porras mieus
before thee And this is the thing in-which thou me wilt-be-able best
aidier que je aie l'enfant.» Ensi prist Merlins congiet
aid that I may-have the-child Thus took Merlin leave
du roi et d'Urfin. Et li rois chevaucha tant que il vint
of-the king and of-Urfin And the king rode until that he came
a Tintageul. Et Merlins s'en ala en Norhomberlande
to Tintagel And Merlin himself-thence went into Northumberland
a Blaise, se li conta ces choses, et il les mist en
to Blaise so to-him told these things and he them put in
escrit et par lui le savons nous. Et quant li rois fu a
writing and by him it know we And when the king was at
Tintageul, si manda ses hommes a conseil et lour demande
Tintagel so summoned his men to counsel and them asks
qu'il fera de ceste chose. Et il li dient: «Sire, nous
what-he will-do of this thing And they to-him say Lord we
vous loons que vous fachiés pais a la duchoise et viers
you advise that you make peace with the duchess and toward
ses amis et viers les amis au duc.» Et li rois dist que
her friends and toward the friends of-the duke And the king said that

il aillent parler a li et que il li dient que elle ne
they go speak to her and that they to-her say that she not
se puet desfendre a lui, et se ele veult la pais, il le
herself can defend against him and if she wishes the peace he it
fera tout a sa volenté. A tant s'en alerent li baron
will-do all at her will At that themselves-thence went the barons
a Tintageul. Et li rois remest et traist Urfin a conseil
to Tintagel And the king remained and drew Urfin to counsel
et li dist: «Que me loes tu de ceste pais?» Et li rois
and to-him said What me advisest thou of this peace And the king
li fist entandant k'il savoit bien qu'il avoit pourparlé.
him made understanding that-he knew well that-he had planned
Et Urfins dist: «Sire, je l'ai pourparlé. Ore savés vous
And Urfin said Lord I it-have planned Now know you
bien se elle vous plaist.» Et li rois respont: «Elle me plaist
well if it you pleases And the king answers It me pleases
bien, et je vaurroie ja qu'elle fust chi.» Et Urfins dist:
well and I would-wish already that-she were here And Urfin said
«Sire, ne vous entremetés ja de l'otriier, car je le querrai
Lord not yourself meddle ever of the-granting for I it shall-seek
bien.» Ensi ont finé lour conseil. Et li message vinrent a
well Thus have ended their council And the messengers came to
Tintageul, si trouverent la duchoise et les amis au duc,
Tintagel so found the duchess and the friends of-the duke
se li conterent comment li dus avoit esté mors et par
so to-her told how the duke had been dead and by
son outrage. Et dient que moult em poise le roi, et que
his outrage And say that much thereof weighs the king and that
il en feroit pais a la dame et as ses amis. Et il
he thereof would-make peace with the lady and with-the her friends And they
voient bien que il ne se pueent tenir vers le roi, et
see well that they not themselves can hold against the king and

loent bien li preudomme a la dame et a tous ses amis
advise well the worthy-men to the lady and to all her friends
la pais au roi. Et il respondent que il s'en
the peace with-the king And they answer that they themselves-thereof
consilleront, si se traisent a une part. Lors dient li
will-take-counsel so themselves draw to one side Then say the
ami a la dame et cil au duc: «Li preudomme dient
friends of the lady and those of-the duke The worthy-men say
voir de chou qu'il dient que nous ne nous poons viers
true of this that-they say that we not ourselves can against
le roi desfendre. Mais oons quel pais il vaurroit faire
the king defend But let-us-hear what peace he would-wish to-make
a vous et a nous. En tele maniere le puet li rois offrir
with you and with us In such manner it can the king offer
qu'elle ne doit estre refusee. Et ensi le loons nous.» Et la
that-it not must be refused And thus it advise we And the
dame respont: «Je ne me getai onques dou conseil mon
lady answers I not myself cast ever from-the counsel (of-)my
signour, non ferai jou del vostre.» Ensi revinrent arriere
lord not shall-do I from-the yours Thus came back
de lour conseil. Et lors parla li uns des plus sages et
from their council And then spoke the one of-the most wise and
dist as messages: «Signour, ma dame dist que elle veut
said to-the messengers Lords my lady says that she wishes
savoir quel amende li rois vaurroit faire.» Et li message
to-know what amends the king would-wish to-make And the messengers
respondent et dient: «Nous ne savons pas la volenté le
answer and say We not know at-all the will (of-)the
roi, mais tant dist il que il l'amendera tout au dit de
king but so-much said he that he it-will-amend all at-the saying of
ses barons.» Et cil respondent: «Dont l'amenderoit il bien,
his barons And those answer Then it-would-amend he well

se c'estoit voirs. Et vous estes si preudoume que vous li
if it-were true And you are so worthy that you him
loerés bien, se Dieu plait, qu'il soit a sen hounour.»
will-advise well if God please that-it be to his honor

Ensi prisent un jour dusques a quinsainne que la dame
Thus took a day until to fortnight that the lady
et si ami venront devant le roi pour oir qu'il vaurra
and her friends will-come before the king for to-hear what-he will-wish
dire. Ensi fu pris li jours, et li messages vinrent devant le
to-say Thus was taken the day and the messengers came before the
roi et li disent chou que il avoient trouvé a la dame
king and to-him said this that they had found with the lady
et as ses amis. Et li rois dist que conduite sera elle
and with-the her friends And the king said that escorted will-be she
bien et tout cil qui avoec lui verront et que tout l'otrient
well and all those who with her will-come and that all it-grant
volentiers. Ensi sejorna li rois cele quinsainne, et orent entre
willingly Thus sojourned the king that fortnight and had between
lui et Urfin parlé de mainte chose. Et quant vint li jours
him and Urfin spoken of many thing And when came the day
de la quinsainne, li rois, si comme si baron li loerent,
of the fortnight the king so as his barons him advised
envoia la dame querre en conduit. Et quant elle fu venue
sent the lady to-seek in safe-conduct And when she was come
a l'ost, li rois fist tous ses barons assambler a son conseil
to the-host the king made all his barons assemble at his council
et lour demanda que il voloient requerre de par la dame
and them asked what they wished to-request on behalf-of the lady
pour endroit cele pais. Li consaus a la dame respont: «Sire,
for regarding that peace The council of the lady answers Lord
la dame n'est pas chi venue pour demander, mais por oir
the lady not-is at-all here come for to-ask but for to-hear

que vous li offerrés de la mort de son baron.» Et quant
what you to-her will-offer for the death of her baron And when
li rois les oi, si les tint moult a sages. Et li rois traist
the king them heard so them held very for wise And the king drew
a une part son conseil, et li rois lour demande: «Signour,
to one side his council and the king them asks Lords
que me loés vous de cest affaire?» Et il respondent: «Sire,
what me advise you of this affair And they answer Lord
che ne puet nus savoir fors vostre cuers quel pais vous volés
this not can anyone know except your heart what peace you wish
a iaus ne que vous lour volés offrir.» Et li rois respont:
with them nor what you to-them wish to-offer And the king answers
«Je le vous dirai. Vous estes tout mi homme et tout si
I it to-you shall-tell You are all my men and all so
preudomme que vous ne me mesconsillerés mie, si le mech
worthy that you not me will-misadvise at-all so it put-I
dou tout seur vous.» Et il dient: «Sire, vous nous cargiés
of-the all upon you And they say Lord you us charge
moult. Dont commandés Urfin que il soit a nostre conseil,
much Then command Urfin that he be at our council
car nous riens n'en feriens se il n'estoit a nostre conseil.»
for we anything not-thereof would-do if he not-were at our council
Quant li rois ot oi qu'il demandoient Urfin pour
When the king had heard that-they asked-for Urfin for
iaus consillier, si fist samblant qu'il en fust liés, et
them to-counsel so made semblance that-he thereof were glad and
dist a Urfin: «Je t'ai norri et fait riche homme, et
said to Urfin I thee-have nurtured and made rich man and
je sai bien que tu iés sages. Va, si les conseille par
I know well that thou art wise Go so them counsel by
mon commandement.» Et Urfins dist: «Si ferai je, dès que
my commandment And Urfin said So shall-do I since that

vous le loés. Mais tant voel je bien que vous sachiés que
you it advise But so-much wish I well that you may-know that
nus sires ne puet estre trop amés de ses honmes, et se
any lord not can be too loved by his men and if
il sont preudoume, il ne se puet pas viers iaus trop
they are worthy he not himself can at-all toward them too
humilliier pour avoir les cuers.» Ensi va Urfins au conseil
humble for to-have the hearts Thus goes Urfin to-the council
as barons. Et quant il furent tout a une part trait, se
of-the barons And when they were all to one side drawn so
li demanderent: «Urfins, que loés vous de ceste chose?» Et
him asked Urfin what advise you of this thing And
Urfins respont: «Vous avés oi que li rois se met seur
Urfin answers You have heard that the king himself puts upon
vous. Ore alons a la dame et as ses amis pour savoir se
you Now let-us-go to the lady and to-the her friends for to-know if
il se meteront seur vous.» Et il respondent tout qu'il
they themselves will-put upon you And they answer all that-he
a bien dit. Ensi alerent parler a la dame et a son conseil.
has well said Thus went to-speak to the lady and to her council
Et quant il furent devant lui, si dirent que li rois se
And when they were before her so said that the king himself
metoit del tout sour iaus et terroit la pais tele comme
put of-the all upon them and would-hold the peace such as
il le feroient, et il estoient venu pour demander se ses
they it would-make and they were come for to-ask if her
consaus s'i meteroit. Et cil respondent: «De chou
council itself-thereto would-put And those answer Of this
se doit on bien consillier.» Si s'en consillierent,
oneself must one well take-counsel So themselves-thereof counseled
et dirent que li rois n'en pooit plus faire offre que de
and said that the king not-thereof could more make offer than of

soi metre sour ses barons. Ensi s'acorda la dame et ses
himself to-put upon his barons Thus herself-agreed the lady and her
consaus et li parent au duc qu'il s'i meteroient,
council and the kin of-the duke that-they themselves-thereto would-put
et cil em prisent la seurté. Adont se traisent a consel
and those thereof took the surety Then themselves drew to council
et demanderent li uns a l'autre que chascuns en looit.
and asked the one of the-other what each-one thereof advised
Et quant chascuns en ot dit son avis, il demanderent a
And when each-one thereof had said his opinion they asked of
Urfin qu'il en looit. Et Urfins dist: «Je en dirai mon
Urfin what-he thereof advised And Urfin said I thereof shall-tell my
avis a tous. Signeur, vous savés bien que li dus est mors
opinion to all Lords you know well that the duke is dead
par le roi, ne il n'avoit pas faite chose dont il deust
by the king nor he not-had at-all done thing for-which he should
morir. N'est che voirs que je di? Et sa feme est remese
die Not-is this true that I say And his wife is remained
chargie d'enfanz, si savés bien que li rois li a sa terre
burdened with-children so know well that the king to-her has her land
gastee; et est la mieudre dame dou monde et la plus biele
wasted and is the best lady of-the world and the most fair
et la plus sage. Et savés que li parent le duc ont ore
and the most wise And know that the kin (of-)the duke have now
moult perdu en sa mort, si est bien drois que li rois lour
much lost in his death so is well right that the king to-them
rende partie de lour pertes, si que il peust avoir leur amour.
render part of their losses so that he may have their love
D'autre part, vous savés que li rois est sans feme. Si di
Of-other part you know that the king is without wife So say-I
en mon dit que li rois ne li puet restorer son damage
in my saying that the king not to-her can restore her harm

ne amender se il ne le prent, si m'est avis que il le
nor amend if he not her takes so to-me-is opinion that he it
deveroit bien faire et pour lui amender et pour nos amours
should well do both for her to-amend and for our loves
avoir et por tous chiaus dou regne. Et quant il avera chou
to-have and for all those of-the realm And when he will-have this
fait et otroiiet, que il marie le fille dou duc au roi
done and granted that he marry the daughter of-the duke to-the king
Loth d'Orkenie qui chi est, et as autres amis fache tant
Lot of-Orkney who here is and to-the other friends do so-much
que il le tiegnent a ami et a signeur et a roi loial.
that they him hold as friend and as lord and as king loyal
«Or avés oit,» fait Urfins, «mon conseil; or poés dire
Now have-you heard says Urfin my counsel now can-you say
autre, se vous ne vous i acordés.» Et il respondent
other if you not yourselves thereto agree And they answer
tout: «Vous avés le mieus dit que nus peust penser. Et se
all You have the best said that anyone could think And if
vous l'osiés le roi retraire, et nous veions que il s'i
you it-dared to-the king relate and we see that he himself-thereto
acort, nous nous i acorderons tout.» Et Urfins respont:
accords we ourselves thereto shall-accord all And Urfin answers
«Signeur, vous ne dites mie assés. Mais se vous vous i
Lords you not say at-all enough But if you yourselves thereto
acordés plenierement, je recorderai la parole au roi. Veschi
accord fully I shall-report the word to-the king Here-is
le roi d'Orkenie sur coi il gist grant partie de la pais, et
the king of-Orkney upon whom it lies great part of the peace and
il die de la pais son avis.» Et il respont: «Ja pour chose
he say of the peace his opinion And he answers Ever for thing
que vous en aiiés seur moi dite ne vueu ge que la
that you thereof may-have upon me said not wish I that the

pais remaingne.» Et quant li autre l'oirent, se s'i
peace fall-through And when the others it-heard so themselves-thereto
acorderent tout. A tant vindrent la ou li rois estoit,
agreed all At that came there where the king was
et la dame fu mandee et tous ses consaus. Et quant il
and the lady was summoned and all her council And when they
furent tout venu, si lour dist Urfins et recorda la pais
were all come so to-them told Urfin and recalled the peace
si comme il l'avoient pourparlee, et puis demanda as
so as they it-had planned and then asked of-the
barons: «Loés vous ceste acorde?» Et il respondent tout:
barons Advise you this accord And they answer all
«Oil.» Et Urfins se torne deviers le roi et li dist:
Yes And Urfin himself turns toward the king and to-him said
«Sire, que dites vous? Dont loés vous l'acordement de ces
Lord what say you Then advise you the-accord of these
preudoumes?» Et il respont: «Je le voel bien, se la dame
worthy-men And he answers I it wish well if the lady
et si ami s'i acordent et li rois Loth voelle
and her friends themselves-thereto agree and the king Lot may-wish
prendre pour moi la fille au duc.» Lors respont li rois
take for me the daughter of-the duke Then answers the king
Loth: «Sire, vous ne me loerés ja chose pour bien que
Lot Lord you not me will-advise ever thing for good that
je ne face pour vostre amour et pour la pais.» Lors parla
I not may-do for your love and for the peace Then spoke
Urfins devant tous a chelui qui portoit les paroles a la
Urfin before all to that-one who bore the words for the
dame, et li demande: «Loés vous ceste pais?» Et il respont
lady and him asks Advise you this peace And he answers
conme sages, et regarde la dame et son conseil qui furent
as wise and looks-at the lady and her council who were

si morne et si piteus que l'iaue dou cuer lour montoit
so mournful and so piteous that the-water of-the heart to-them rose
as ieus, si que de teuls i avoit qui plouroient de pitié
to-the eyes so that of such there were who wept from pity
et de joie. Et chis meismes qui devoit respondre plouroit
and from joy And this-one himself who must answer wept
et dist em plourant: «Onques mais si boine amende ne fist
and said in weeping Ever more so good amends not made
sires a houmes.» Et demanda a la dame et as parens
lord to men And asked of the lady and of-the kin
le duc: «Loés vous ceste pais?» La dame se teut. Et
(of-)the duke Advise you this peace The lady herself was-silent And
li parent a la dame et au duc parlerent et dient tout:
the kin of the lady and of-the duke spoke and say all
«Il n'est nus qui ne le doive loer, et nous le loons bien.
It not-is anyone who not it must advise and we it advise well
Car nous tenons le roi a si preudomme et a si loial que
For we hold the king for so worthy and for so loyal that
nous nous meterons de toutes les autres choses sour lui.»
we ourselves shall-put of all the other things upon him
Ensi fu creantee la pais d'une part et d'autre, et ensi prist
Thus was promised the peace on-one part and on-other and thus took
Uters Pandragons Ygerne et donna sa fille au roi Loth
Uther Pendragon Igerne and gave her daughter to-the king Lot
d'Orkanie. Les nueches dou roi et d'Ygerne furent au
of-Orkney The nuptials of-the king and of-Igerne were on-the
tresime jour après la quinzaine dou jor ou li parlement
thirteenth day after the fortnight from-the day where the parley
avoit esté, et trois semaines devant le parlement avoit esté
had been and three weeks before the parley had been
ocis le dus; ensi poez conter deux mois entiers dès le
killed the duke thus can-you count two months entire since the

jor que li rois avoit geut a li en sa chambre. Et de
day that the king had lain with her in her chamber And of
la fille que il donna le roi Loth issi Mordrès et me
the daughter that he gave (to-)the king Lot issued Mordred and my
sires Gauvains et Agrevains et Guerrehès et Gahariès. Et
lord Gawain and Agravain and Guerrehet and Gaheriet And
li rois Neutres de Sorhaut ot l'autre fille bastarde qui ot
the king Neutres of Sorhaut had the-other daughter bastard who had
non Morgans. Par le conseil de tous ses amis ensamble une
name Morgan By the counsel of all her friends together one
autre fille qui ot a non Morgue fist li rois aprendre a
other daughter who had as name Morgue made the king learn at
lettre en une maison de relegion, et elle aprist tant et
letters in a house of religion and she learned so-much and
si bien que aprist les set ars, et si sot mierveilles d'un
so well that she-learned the seven arts and so knew marvels of-an
art que on apiele astrenomie, et elle en ouvra moult tost
art that one calls astronomy and she thereof worked very soon
et tous jours, et moult sot de fisike, et par cele fisike
and all days and much knew of physic and by that physic
fu elle apielee Morgue la fee. Les autres enfans adrecha
was she called Morgue the fay The other children established
li rois tous, et moult ama les parens le duc.
the king all and much loved the kin (of-)the duke

Arthur Given to Auctor

XIX

Uther asks Igerne who fathered her child; she tells of the man who came to her in the duke's likeness, and he bids her give the child away. Merlin has the king engage Auctor, whose wife will nurse the child and put her own son to another nurse. The newborn is handed to Merlin, as an old man, at the hall door, and Auctor has him baptized Arthur. Uther falls sick, and the Saxons rout his barons.

Ensi ot li rois Ygerne et la tint tant que la grossece
Thus had the king Igerne and her held until that the pregnancy
apparut, et tant que li rois gisoit une nuit avoec li, si
appeared and until that the king lay one night with her so
mist sa main sour son ventre et demanda de qui elle estoit
put his hand on her belly and asked of whom she was
grosse. Car elle ne pooit mie estre grosse de lui puis que
pregnant For she not could at-all be pregnant by him since that
il l'ot prise, qui n'avoit onques nulle fois geut a li qu'il
he her-had taken who not-had ever any time lain with her that-he
ne l'eust en escrit, ne elle ne pooit pas estre grosse del
not it-had in writing nor she not could at-all be pregnant by-the
duc, car il avoit grant pieche devant sa mort qu'il n'avoit
duke for it had great while before his death that-he not-had
geu a li. Et quant la dame ot chou, si ot honte et
lain with her And when the lady heard this so had shame and
commenche a plourer, si dist em plourant: «Sire, de chou
begins to weep so said in weeping Lord of this
que vous savés ne vous puis jou faire menchoingne a croire.
that you know not you can I make lie to believe
Ne autre chose ne vous dirai je mie, mais pour Dieu aiiés
Nor other thing not to-you shall-tell I at-all but for God have

mierchi de moi; car je vous dirai merveilles et voir, se
mercy on me for I to-you shall-tell marvels and true if
vous m'asseurés que vous ne me lairés mie.» Et il l'en
you me-assure that you not me will-leave at-all And he her-thereof
asseure que ja por chose que elle die ne le laira.
assures that ever for thing that she may-say not her will-leave

Quant la roine oi son signour qui l'asseura, si en fu
When the queen heard her lord who her-assured so thereof was
moult lie et li dist: «Sire, je vous conterai merveilles.» Et
very glad and to-him said Lord I to-you shall-tell marvels And
elle li conte comment uns hom avoit jeu avoec li en sa
she to-him tells how a man had lain with her in her
chambre en semblance dou duc son signour: «Et avoit amené
chamber in semblance of-the duke her lord And had brought
avoec lui deus des hommes ou monde que mes sires mieus
with him two of-the men in-the world whom my lord best
amoit. Et ensi vint a moi en ma chambre, voiant toute ma
loved And thus came to me in my chamber in-sight-of all my
gent, et jut a moi. Et je cuidai certainnement que che
folk and lay with me And I thought certainly that this
fust mes sires. Et chis hom engenra cel oir dont je sui
were my lord And this man engendered this heir of-which I am
grosse, et je sai bien que il fu engenrés la nuit que mes
pregnant and I know well that he was engendered the night that my
sires fu mors. Et gisoit encore avoec mi quant les nouvieles
lord was dead And lay still with me when the news
vinrent de sa mort. Lors me fist entendant que c'estoit
came of his death Then me made understanding that it-was
mes sires et que ses gens ne savoient que il fust devenus,
my lord and that his folk not knew what he were become
et ensi s'en ala.» Quant la roine ot sa nouviele
and thus himself-thence went When the queen had her news

contee, si respondi li rois et li dist: «Biele amie, gardés
told so answered the king and to-her said Fair beloved see
que nus hom ne nulle feme ne le sache a cui vous le
that any man nor any woman not it may-know from whom you it
puissiés celer, car vous en seriés honnie, se on le savoit.
may hide for you thereof would-be shamed if one it knew
Et je voel bien que vous sachiés que cis enfes qui de vous
And I wish well that you may-know that this child which of you
naistra n'est pas ne miens ne vostres raisonnablement, ne
will-be-born not-is at-all nor mine nor yours by-reason nor
jou ne vous ne l'arons a nostre oes, ains vous pri que
I nor you not-him shall-have to our use rather you pray that
vous le doingniés si tost comme il naistera a chelui que
you him give so soon as he will-be-born to that-one whom
je vous commanderai, si que ja mais n'orrons nouvieles
I you shall-command so that ever more not-shall-we-hear news
de lui.» Et elle respont: «Sire, de moi et de canques a moi
of him And she answers Lord of me and of whatever to me
atient poés faire a vostre volenté.» Lors vint li rois a Urfin
pertains can-you do at your will Then came the king to Urfin
et li conta les paroles de li et de la roine. Et quant
and to-him told the words of him and of the queen And when
Urfins l'ot, si respondi et dist: «Sire, or poés bien savoir
Urfin it-heard so answered and said Lord now can-you well know
qu'elle est sage et loiaus, quant de si grant desconneue
that-she is wise and loyal when of so great mischance
ne vous osa mentir. Et vous avés bien fait la besoigne
not to-you dared lie And you have well done the business
Merlin, car il ne porroit en autre maniere avoir l'enfant.»
(of-)Merlin for he not could in other manner have the-child

Atant demoura jusques au sisime moys, que Merlins
Thereupon tarried until to-the sixth month that Merlin
ot convent de revenir. Si vint et parla priveement a Urfin
had covenant to come-back So came and spoke privately to Urfin
et li demanda nouvieles de chou que il vaut, et Urfins
and him asked news of this that he wished and Urfin
li dist voir de chou que il sot. Et quant il orent parlé
to-him said true of this that he knew And when they had spoken
ensamble, si manda li rois Merlin par Urfin. Et quant il
together so summoned the king Merlin by Urfin And when they
furent tout trois ensamble, si dist li rois a Merlin si com
were all three together so told the king to Merlin so as
il avoit ouvré de la roine et comment il avoient pourparlee
he had wrought of the queen and how they had planned
la pais que il le prist a feme. Et Merlins respont: «Sire,
the peace that he her took as wife And Merlin answers Lord
Urfins est aquitiés dou pechiet quant il ot les amours faites
Urfin is acquitted of-the sin when he had the loves made
de ti et de la roine. Mais je ne m'en sui mie encore
of thee and of the queen But I not myself-thereof am at-all yet
aquitiés de che que je l'aidai a dechevoir de l'engien que
acquitted of this that I her-aided to deceive by the-device that
je fis et de l'engenrement que cele a de dens li, que
I made and of the-engendering that she has of inside her so-that
elle ne set de qui chou est.» Et li rois respondi: «Vous
she not knows of whom this is And the king answered You
estes si sages que vous vous en savrés bien aquitier.» Et
are so wise that you yourself thereof will-know well acquit And
Merlins dist: «Sire, il convient que vous m'i aidiés.» Et
Merlin said Lord it behooves that you me-therein aid And
li rois dist que il l'en aidera en toutes les manieres que
the king said that he him-thereof will-aid in all the manners that

il savra, et l'enfant set il bien que il li fera avoir.
he will-know and the-child knows he well that he him will-make have
Et Merlins dist: «Il a en ceste ville le plus preudomme
And Merlin said It has in this town the most worthy-man
de ceste terre, et si a le plus preudefeme et le plus
of this land and so has the most worthy-woman and the most
affaitie et entechie de toutes les millors teches qui soient,
accomplished and endowed with all the best qualities that may-be
et elle est acouchie d'un fil, et li sires si n'est pas trop
and she is delivered of-a son and the lord so not-is at-all too
riches hom; si voel que vous le mandés et que vous li
rich man so wish-I that you him summon and that you to-him
doingniés del vostre en tel maniere que li sires et la dame
give of-the yours in such manner that the lord and the lady
juerront sour sains que il noriront un enfant qui aportés
will-swear on saints that they will-nurture a child who brought
lour sera et del lait meismes a la dame, et il feront
to-them will-be and of-the milk itself of the lady and they will-make
leur enfant alaitier d'une autre feme, et chelui norriront
their child suckle by-a other woman and that-one will-nurture
comme lour fil demainne.» Et li rois dist: «Merlins, ensi
as their son own And the king said Merlin thus
comme tu le dis et je l'otroi.» Lors prist li rois congiet
as thou it sayest and I it-grant Then took the king leave
a Merlin et Merlins s'en ala a son maistre Blaise.
of Merlin and Merlin himself-thence went to his master Blaise
Li rois fist le preudomme mander, et quant il fu venus,
The king made the worthy-man summon and when he was come
si en fist li rois moult grant joie. Et chis s'esmervilla
so thereof made the king very great joy And this-one himself-marveled
moult del roi qui tele joie li faisoit, et li rois li
much at-the king who such joy to-him made and the king to-him

dist: «Biaus amis chiers, il convient que je me descuevre
said Fair friend dear it behooves that I myself uncover
a vous d'une merveille qui avenue m'est. Et vous estes
to you of-a marvel which happened to-me-is And you are
mes hom liges, si vous requier par la foi que vous me
my man liege so you ask by the faith that you me
devés que vous m'aidiés d'une chose que je vous dirai et
owe that you me-aid in-a thing that I to-you shall-tell and
celerés a vostre pooir.» Et cil dist: «Sire, vous ne me
will-hide to your power And that-one said Lord you not me
savriés ja riens commander que je ne face se je le puis
would-know ever anything command that I not may-do if I it can
faire. Et se je ne le puis faire, si le celerai jou bien.» Et
do And if I not it can do so it shall-hide I well And
li rois li dist: «Il m'est avenu une merveille en mon
the king to-him said It to-me-is happened a marvel in my
dormant. Car il m'estoit avis que uns preudom venoit a
sleeping For it to-me-was opinion that a worthy-man came to
moi en mon dormant qui me disoit que vous estiés li plus
me in my sleeping who me said that you were the most
preudom de mon regne et li plus loiaus; et me dist que
worthy-man of my realm and the most loyal and me told that
vous avés engenré un fil en vostre feme, qui est nés; si me
you have engendered a son in your wife who is born so me
commanda que je vous priasse que vous sevrissiés vostre
commanded that I you should-pray that you should-wean your
fil et mesissiés a une autre feme, et que vostre feme
son and should-put to an other woman and that your wife
pour l'amour de moi et de vous alaitast un enfant qui
for the-love of me and of you should-suckle a child who
li seroit aportés.» Et li preudom respont: «Sire, chou est
to-her would-be brought And the worthy-man answers Lord this is

moult grant chose que vous me dites. Et je vous pri que
very great thing that you me tell And I you pray that
vous me diiés quant cis enfes nous sera aportés.» Et li
you me tell when this child to-us will-be brought And the
rois li dist: «Si m'ait Dieus, je ne sai.» Et li preudom
king to-him said So me-help God I not know And the worthy-man
dist qu'il fera sa volenté. Et lors li donna si biau don
said that-he will-do his will And then to-him gave so fair gift
li rois que li preudom en fu tous esbahis, et ensi se
the king that the worthy-man thereof was all amazed and thus himself
departi li rois del preudomme. Et vint li preudom a sa
parted the king from-the worthy-man And came the worthy-man to his
feme, se li conta chou que li rois li ot dit. Et quant
wife so to-her told this that the king to-him had said And when
elle l'oi, si li sambla moult estrange chose, si dist:
she it-heard so to-her seemed very strange thing so said
«Porrai je chou faire que je laisse mon fil pour un autre
Shall-be-able I this do that I leave my son for an other
alaitier?» Et il li dist: «Il n'est nule riens que nous ne
to-suckle And he to-her said It not-is any thing that we not
doions faire pour nostre signour. Et il nous a tant fait
must do for our lord And he us has so-much done
et tant nous pramet que il convient que nous faisons son
and so-much us promises that it behooves that we do his
plaisir. Et je voel outreement que vous le me creantés.»
pleasure And I wish utterly that you it to-me grant
Et elle li dist: «Je sui vostre et li enfes, si ferés
And she to-him said I am yours and the child so will-you-do
de moi et de lui vostre volenté. Et je l'otroi, car je ne
of me and of him your will And I it-grant for I not
doi estre de riens contre vous.» Lors fu moult liés li
must be in anything against you Then was very glad the

preudom quant il ot la volenté de sa feme. Lors li dist
worthy-man when he had the will of his wife Then to-her said
qu'elle quesist qui lour enfant norresist avant c'om li
that-she should-seek who their child should-nurture before that-one to-her
aportast l'enfant. Ensi sevra li preudom son fil. Et avint
should-bring the-child Thus weaned the worthy-man his son And happened
chose que la roine fu preste d'acouchier, et le jour devant
thing that the queen was ready to-be-delivered and the day before
que elle acouchast vint Merlins a court priveement et parla
that she was-delivered came Merlin to court privately and spoke
a Urfin et li dist: «Urfins, moult me lo dou roi qui
to Urfin and to-him said Urfin much myself praise of-the king who
a si sagement parlé a Auctor de che que je li avoie priié.
has so wisely spoken to Auctor of this that I him had prayed
Ore li di qu'il aille a la roine et se li die qu'el
Now to-him say that-he go to the queen and so to-her say that-she
avra demain au soir enfant apriès la mie nuit. Et si li
will-have tomorrow at evening child after the mid night And so her
commant que elle le face baillier au preudonme qui sera
command that she it make deliver to-the worthy-man who will-be
fors de la sale.» Et Urfins quant il l'ot entendu se li
out of the hall And Urfin when he it-had heard so to-him
dist: «Merlins, dont ne parlerés vous au roi?» Et Merlins
said Merlin then not will-speak you to-the king And Merlin
dist: «Je n'i parlerai mie a ceste fois.» Lors vint Urfins
said I not-there shall-speak at-all at this time Then came Urfin
au roi, se li dist chou que Merlins li ot commandé.
to-the king so to-him said this that Merlin to-him had commanded
Quant li rois l'oi, si en fist moult grant joie et
When the king it-heard so thereof made very great joy and
dist: «Urfins, ne parlera il a moi ains qu'il s'en
said Urfin not will-speak he to me before that-he himself-thence

voist?» Et Urfins dist: «Nennil, mais faites chou que il
go And Urfin said No but do this that he
vous conmande.» Lors vint li rois a la roine, se li
you commands Then came the king to the queen so to-her
dist: «Dame, je vous dirai une chose, se m'en creés
said Lady I to-you shall-tell a thing if me-thereof you-believe
et faites chou que je vous commanderai.» Et la roine dist:
and do this that I you shall-command And the queen said
«Sire, je vous querrai de canqu'il vous plaira, et ferai
Lord I you shall-believe of whatever-it you will-please and shall-do
chou que vous me commanderés.» Et li rois dist: «Dame,
this that you me will-command And the king said Lady
demain au soir apriès la mienuit averés enfant a l'aide
tomorrow at evening after the midnight will-you-have child with the-aid
de Dieu. Et je vous pri et commant que si tost conme il
of God And I you pray and command that so soon as he
sera nés que vous le faites baillier par une de vos privees
will-be born that you him make deliver by one of your intimate
femes au premier houme qu'elle trouvera a l'issue de la
women to-the first man whom-she will-find at the-exit of the
sale. Et commandés a toutes celes qui au naistre seront
hall And command to all those who at-the birth will-be
que nule ne die que vous aiiés eu enfant, car grant honte
that any not say that you may-have had child for great shame
seroit a moi et a vous; car pluiseurs gens diroient que il
would-be to me and to you for several folk would-say that he
ne seroit mie de moi, ne il ne sambie mie que il le doie
not would-be at-all of me nor it not seems at-all that be it must
estre.» Et la dame respont: «Sire, il est voirs che que jou
be And the lady answers Lord it is true this that I
vous ai autre fois conté. Et je en ferai chou que vous
to-you have another time told And I thereof shall-do this that you

commanderés; mais grant mierveille ai de chou que vous
will-command but great marvel have-I of this that you
savés ma delivrance.» Et li rois li dist: «Dame, je vous
know my deliverance And the king to-her said Lady I you
pri que vous faichiés che que je vous commant.» Et elle
pray that you do this that I you command And she
respont: «Sire, je le ferai moult bien, se Dieu plaist,» Atant
answers Lord I it shall-do very well if God please Thereupon
se depart li rois de la roine. Et tant qu'il plot a Dieu
himself parts the king from the queen And until that-it pleased to God
que l'endemain apriès viespres li prist ses maus, et travilla
that the-next-day after vespers her took her pains and labored
jusques a cele eure que li rois ot dit, si se delivra après
until to that hour that the king had said so herself delivered after
la mienuit devant le jour. Et si tost coume elle fu delivree,
the midnight before the day And so soon as she was delivered
apiela une feme en qui elle se fioit moult et li dist:
called a woman in whom she herself trusted much and to-her said
«Biele amie, pren cel enfant et si le porte a l'uis de
Fair friend take this child and so him carry to the-door of
cele sale, et se vous trouvés nul homme qui le demant, se
that hall and if you find any man who him ask-for so
li bailliés. Et si vous prendés garde quels hom che sera.»
to-him give And so you take heed what man this will-be
Cele fist che que la roine li commanda, et mist l'enfant
She did this that the queen her commanded and put the-child
es plus riches dras qu'elle avoit, et puis si le porta a
in-the most rich cloths that-she had and then so him carried to
l'uis de la sale. Et quant elle i vint, si vit un homme
the-door of the hall And when she there came so saw a man
ki mierveilles sambloit estre febles. Et cele li dist: «Bons
who marvels seemed to-be feeble And she to-him said Good

hom, c'atendés vous chi?» Et il respont: «J'atent chou que
man what-await you here And he answers I-await this that
tu m'aportes.» Et elle li demande: «Quels hom estes vous
thou me-bringest And she him asks What man are you
ne que dirai je a ma dame qui j'ai son enfant baillié?»
and what shall-say I to my lady to-whom I-have her child given
Et il respont: «De canques tu demandes n'as tu que
And he answers Of whatever thou askest not-hast thou what
faire; fai chou que on te commande.» Et cele li tent
to-do do this that one thee commands And she to-him holds-out
l'enfant, et il le prent, ne onques puis que il le tint ne
the-child and he him takes nor ever after that he him held not
sot cele que il fu devenus. Et elle vint arriere a la dame,
knew she what he was become And she came back to the lady
se li dist: «Dame, j'ai baillié l'enfant un viel homme;
so to-her said Lady I-have given the-child to-an old man
je ne sai autrement qui il est.» La roine pleure coume
I not know otherwise who he is The queen weeps as
cele qui moult a grant duel. Et cil a qui li enfes fu
she who very has great grief And he to whom the child was
bailliés s'en ala au plus tost qu'il pot a Auctor. Le
given himself-thence went at-the most soon that-he could to Auctor The
matin le trouva si comme il aloit a la messe, et Merlins
morning him found so as he went to the mass and Merlin
l'apiele, se li dist: «Auctor, je voel a toi parler.» Et
him-calls so to-him said Auctor I wish to thee to-speak And
Auctor le regarde, se li samble a miervelles preudom,
Auctor him looks-at so to-him seems to marvels worthy-man
et il li dist: «Sire, que plaist vous?» Et li vieus hom
and he to-him said Lord what pleases you And the old man
li dist: «Auctor, je t'aport un enfant, et si te pri que
to-him said Auctor I thee-bring a child and so thee pray that

tu le faces norrir plus richement que le tien meismes. Et
thou him make nurture more richly than the thine own And
bien saches que se tu le fais, grans biens t'en venra a
well know that if thou it dost great goods thee-thereof will-come to
ti et a tes hoirs. Et qui le te diroit tu nel querroies
thee and to thy heirs And who it thee would-tell thou not-it wouldst-believe
mie.» Et Auctor li dist: «Sire, est che li enfes dont
at-all And Auctor to-him said Lord is this the child of-which
li rois m'a tant priiet del norrir?» Et cil respont:
the king me-has so-much prayed of-the nurturing And that-one answers
«Oil, sans faille. Et li rois et tout li preudomme t'en
Yes without fail And the king and all the worthy-men thee-thereof
doivent priier. Et saches que ma priiere ne vaut pas
must pray And know that my prayer not is-worth at-all
mains d'un bien riche homme.» Et Auctor prist l'enfant,
less than-a very rich man And Auctor took the-child
si le vit moult biel, si li demande se il estoit baptisiés.
so him saw very fair so him asks if he was baptized
Et cis li dist que nennil: «Mais orendroit le fai
And this-one to-him said that no But now him make
baptisier.» Et Auctor respont: «Moult volentiers.» Et lors
baptize And Auctor answers Very willingly And then
prist l'enfant et li demanda coument il avroit non. Et
took the-child and him asked how he would-have name And
il li dist qu'il averoit non Artus: «Et je m'en vois,
he to-him said that-he would-have name Arthur And I myself-thence go
car je n'ai chi rien que faire. Et a che t'aperchoi que
for I not-have here anything to do And by this thee-perceive that
grans biens t'en doit venir que tu ne l'averas gaires
great goods thee-thereof must come that thou not him-wilt-have much
euut quant vous ne savrés le quel vous amerés mieus
had when you not will-know the which you will-love better

ou vostre enfant ou cestui.» Et Auctor respont: «Sire, que
or your child or this-one And Auctor answers Lord what
dirai jou le roi qui le m'a baillié, ne vous qui estes?»
shall-tell I the king who him to-me-has given nor you who are
Et cil li dist: «Tu ne saveras ore plus a ceste fois.»
And that-one to-him said Thou not wilt-know now more at this time
Chi endroit dist li contes que Merlins se parti d'Auctor.
Here in-place says the tale that Merlin himself parted from-Auctor
Et Auctor fist baptisier l'enfant tout erraument, et ot
And Auctor made baptize the-child all straightway and he-had
non Artus. Et lors emporta l'enfant a sa feme et li dist:
name Arthur And then carried the-child to his wife and to-her said
«Dame, veschi l'enfant dont je vous ai tant priie.» Et elle
Lady here-is the-child of-which I you have so-much prayed And she
respont que bien fust il venus, et le prent, et demanda a
answers that well were he come and him takes and asked of
son signour se il estoit baptisiés. Et il respont que il avoit
her lord if he was baptized And he answers that he had
a non Artus. Lors le prist la dame et l'alaita et norri
as name Arthur Then him took the lady and him-suckled and nurtured
et le sien mist a norriche. Et li rois tint puis la terre
and the hers put to nurse And the king held then the land
lonc tans. Et puis avint que il chai en une grant maladie
long time And then happened that he fell into a great sickness
de goute et des mains et des piés. Lors si revelerent en
of gout both of-the hands and of-the feet Then so rebelled in
pluiseurs lieus li Saisne en sa terre, et tant li firent
several places the Saxons in his land and so-much to-him did
de contraire qu'il s'en clama as ses barons, et si
of contrary that-he himself-thereof complained to-the his barons and his
baron li loerent que se il s'en pooit vengier qu'il
barons him advised that if he himself-thereof could avenge that-he

s'en vengast. Et lors dist li rois que pour Dieu
himself-thereof should-avenge And then said the king that for God
et pour lui que il i alaissent, si comme preudomme
and for him that they there should-go so as worthy-men
doivent faire pour leur signour. Et il respondent tout que
must do for their lord And they answer all that
il iront volontiers; si i alerent et trouverent les anemis
they will-go willingly so there went and found the enemies
le roi, et virent qu'il avoient grant partie de la terre
(of-)the king and saw that-they had great part of the land
traite a iaus. Si vinrent contre iaus, et les gens le roi
drawn to them So came against them and the folk (of-)the king
assamblerent a iaus comme gent sans signour et furent
joined with them as folk without lord and were
desconfi, et pierdi li rois illuec moult de ses hommes.
discomfited and lost the king there many of his men

The Death of Uther

XX

The Saxons, victors over Uther's leaderless barons, grow strong. Merlin tells the sick king to be carried in a litter to battle, which he wins, and to give away his treasure for a good end. Speechless three days on his deathbed, Uther hears Merlin whisper that his son Arthur will rule after him, and begs that his son pray for him. He dies, and Merlin bids the barons wait for Christmas, when God will show them their king.

Quant la nouviele fu aportee au roi que ses gens estoient
When the news was brought to-the king that his folk were
desconfi, si en fu moult iriés. Et lors vint li remanans de
discomfited so thereof was very angry And then came the remnant of

chiaus qui en la bataille avoient esté, et se plainstrent
those who in the battle had been and themselves complained
mout durement. Et quant li Saisne orent la bataille vencue,
very bitterly And when the Saxons had the battle won
si crurent moult lour gent et esforchierent. Et Merlins, qui
so grew much their folk and strengthened And Merlin who
toutes ces choses savoit bien, si vint au roi, qui moult
all these things knew well so came to-the king who very
estoit foibles de sa maladie, et avoit auques de son tans usé.
was feeble from his sickness and had somewhat of his time used
Quant li rois sot que Merlins venoit, si en fu moult
When the king knew that Merlin came so thereof was very
liés et pensa en son cuer que encore averoit il confort.
glad and thought in his heart that still would-have he comfort
Quant Merlins vint devant Uter Pandragon, si fist moult
When Merlin came before Uther Pendragon so made very
biele chiere. Et Merlins dist: «Sire, vous estes moult effraés.»
fair face And Merlin said Lord you are very frightened
Et li rois dist: «Merlins, je n'en puis mais. Car vous
And the king said Merlin I not-thereof can more For you
savés bien que mi homme et cil dont je me cuidoie
know well that my men and those by-whom I myself thought
aidier et dont je ne cuidoie avoir garde m'ont mon regne
to-aid and of-whom I not thought to-have fear me-have my realm
destruit et mes houmes mors et desconfis en bataille.»
destroyed and my men killed and discomfited in battle
Et Merlins li dist: «Sire, or poés vous bien veoir que
And Merlin to-him said Lord now can you well see that
nus ne vaut riens en bataille sans signour.» Et li rois
anyone not is-worth anything in battle without lord And the king
li dist: «Merlins, consilliés moi pour Dieu que j'en
to-him said Merlin counsel me for God what I-thereof

porrai faire.» Et Merlins li dist: «Sire, je vous dirai
shall-be-able do And Merlin to-him said Lord I to-you shall-tell
unes briés paroles et privees que je voel que vous creés.
some brief words and private which I wish that you believe
Faites semonre vos os et vos gens, et quant il seront
Make summon your hosts and your folk and when they will-be
tout assamblé, si vous faites metre en une litiere et s'alés
all assembled so yourself make put in a litter and so-go
combatre a eus. Et saciés certainnement que il seront
fight with them And know certainly that they will-be
desconfi. Et quant vous les avrés desconfis, si saverés
discomfited And when you them will-have discomfited so will-you-know
bien que terre sans signour ne vaut riens. Et quant vous
well that land without lord not is-worth anything And when you
averés che fait, si departés vostre tresor, que je voi bien
will-have this done so distribute your treasure for I see well
que vous ne poés gaires longement vivre. Et je voel que
that you not can much long live And I wish that
vous saichiés que cil qui ont les grans avoirs et muerent
you may-know that those who have the great possessions and die
a tout, qu'il ne les pueent departir ne bien faire pour
with all that-they not them can distribute nor good do for
lor ames, que lour avoir ne sont pas leur, ains sont
their souls that their possessions not are at-all theirs rather are
chiaus qui ne lour laissent bien faire, et saichiés que che
of-those who not them let good do and know that these
sont li dyable. Et mieus verroit au riche qu'il n'eust
are the devils And better would-come to-the rich-man that-he not-had
onques riens eut des riqueches de ceste terriiene vie. Et
ever anything had of-the riches of this earthly life And
les hounours ne sont se nuisement non as ames, se on
the honors not are if harmfully not to-the souls if one

ne les depart si conme on doit. Et tu qui sés avant
not them distributes so as one must And thou who knowest before
que a finer t'estuet, si le dois bien departir en tel maniere
that to end thee-behooves so it must well distribute in such manner
que tu n'en perdes la joie de l'autre siecle, que la joie
that thou not-thereof may-lose the joy of the-other world for the joy
de cestui siecle ne vaut riens enviers la joie de lassus,
of this world not is-worth anything toward the joy of up-there
et se te dirai por coi a uns seul mot: tu sés qu'il
and so thee shall-tell for what in one single word thou knowest that-it
n'a el siecle si grant joie qui ne faille, et ces joies
not-has in-the world so great joy which not may-fail and these joys
que on achate en l'autre siecle ne pueent morir ne faillir.
that one buys in the-other world not can die nor fail
Et canques on a en ceste mortel vie sueffre nostre sires a
And whatever one has in this mortal life suffers our lord to
avoir pour esprouver de l'autre recouvrer. Ore convient dont
have for to-prove for the-other to-recover Now behooves then
ki veult estre sages que de chou que Dieus li a donné
who wishes to-be wise that of this that God to-him has given
en ceste mortel vie qu'il en achat la vie pardurable. Et
in this mortal life that-he thereof buy the life everlasting And
tu qui tant as eut de tous biens en cest siecle, quels
thou who so-much hast had of all goods in this world what
biens as tu fais pour nostre signour? Je t'ai moult amé
goods hast thou done for our lord I thee-have much loved
et moult je t'aime, et saches bien que nus ne te doit
and much I thee-love and know well that anyone not thee must
mieus amer de toi; et je le te di bien que tu ne pues
better love than thee and I it thee tell well that thou not canst
durer apriès ceste victoire que tu avras en cest estour et
endure after this victory that thou wilt-have in this battle and

en ceste bataille. Et saches bien que toutes les honneurs
in this battle And know well that all the honors
que li hom mainne en cest siecle ne li pueent tant
that the man leads in this world not to-him can so-much
valoir comme li boine fins. Et se tu avoies tous les biens
avail as the good end And if thou hadst all the goods
du monde fais et tu eusses malvaise fin, se seroies tu
of-the world done and thou hadst bad end so wouldst-be thou
en aventure de tout perdre; et se tu avoies moult de maus
in peril of all to-lose and if thou hadst many of ills
fais et eusses boine fin, si averoies tu pardon. Et je voel
done and hadst good end so wouldst-have thou pardon And I wish
bien que tu saces que tu n'en porteras ja riens de
well that thou may-know that thou not-thence wilt-carry ever anything from
cest siecle que aumosnes et bien fais. Or t'ai mousté
this world but alms and good deeds Now thee-have-I shown
et dit ton affaire. Tu sés bien que Ygerne ta feme est
and told thy affair Thou knowest well that Igerne thy wife is
morte et tu ne pues autre feme mais avoir. Ensi remanra
dead and thou not canst other wife more have Thus will-remain
apriès ti ta terre sans oir, pour coi tu te dois moult
after thee thy land without heir for which thou thyself must much
esforchier de bien faire. Je m'en irai, car je n'ai
strive of good doing I myself-thence shall-go for I not-have
plus a toi affaire. Mais Urfin prie k'il me croie quant
more with thee to-do But Urfin pray that-he me believe when
mestiers sera.» Et li rois parole a Merlin et dist: «Fiere
need will-be And the king speaks to Merlin and said Fierce
chose m'as contee, qui m'as dit que je vainquerai
thing me-hast-thou told who me-hast said that I shall-conquer
mes anemis. Et commant porrai je guerredonner a nostre
my enemies And how shall-be-able I reward to our

signour?» Et Merlins respont: «Seulement par boine fin.
lord And Merlin answers Only by good end
Je m'en irai, et si te pri qu'il te souviegne de toi
I myself-thence shall-go and so thee pray that-it thee may-remember of thee
meismes apriès la bataille et de che que je t'ai dit.»
thyself after the battle and of this that I thee-have said
Et li rois demande Merlin de son fil qu'il em porta.
And the king asks Merlin of his son whom-he thence carried
Et Merlins dist: «De che ne te tient il riens a enquerre,
And Merlin said Of this not thee holds it anything to inquire
mais je voel bien que tu saches que li enfes est boins et
but I wish well that thou may-know that the child is good and
biaus et bien norris.» Et li rois dist: «Merlins, te verrai je
fair and well nurtured And the king said Merlin thee shall-see I
ja mais?» Et Merlins dist: «Oil, une seule fois sans plus.»
ever more And Merlin said Yes one single time without more
Ensi s'en departirent entre le roi et Merlin. Et li rois
Thus themselves-thence parted between the king and Merlin And the king
semonst ses gens et dist qu'il iroit contre ses anemis. Lors
summoned his folk and said that-he would-go against his enemies Then
i ala et se fist porter sour une litiere, si les trouva. Et
there went and himself made carry on a litter so them found And
il vinrent contre lui, si se combatirent, et les gens le
they came against him so themselves fought and the folk (of-)the
roi par le confort de leur signour les desconfirent et en
king by the comfort of their lord them discomfited and of-them
ochirent a grant plenté. Ensi ot li rois le victoire de la bataille
killed in great plenty Thus had the king the victory of the battle
et destruist ses anemis. Et lors remest la terre tout em pais.
and destroyed his enemies And then remained the land all in peace

Ensi conme vous avés oi le fist li rois. Lors li
Thus as you have heard it did the king Then to-him
souvint de chou que Merlins li avoit dit, si s'en
remembered of this that Merlin to-him had said so himself-thence
repaira a Logres. Et lors, quant il i fu venus, si manda
returned to Logres And then when he there was come so summoned
tous ses grans tresors et ses grans avoirs. Et fist savoir
all his great treasures and his great possessions And made know
a toutes manieres de boines gens ou li plus mesaaisié
to all manners of good folk where the most distressed
de son regne estoient, si lour donna moult grans avoirs
of his realm were so to-them gave very great possessions
et grans aumosnes et bieles, et le sourplus departi par
and great alms and fair and the surplus distributed by
le conseil et la volenté des menistres de sainte eglise, et
the counsel and the will of-the ministers of holy church and
ensi ouvra li rois et departi la soie chose que onques
thus wrought the king and distributed the his-own thing so-that ever
nus avoirs n'i remest dont il fust ramembrans que il
any possession not-there remained of-which he were mindful that he
tout ne donnast pour l'amour de Diu et par le conseil
all not gave for the-love of God and by the counsel
Merlin. Moult s'umilia li rois viers Diu et viers ses
(of-)Merlin Much himself-humbled the king toward God and toward his
menistres si doucement que il en orent pitié. Ensi le
ministers so sweetly that they thereof had pity Thus him
garderent ses gens malade un lonc tans, et tant que sa
kept his folk sick a long time and until that his
grans maladie li aggreva. Et ses peuples fu assamblés
great sickness him aggrieved And his people was assembled
a Logres, qui moult avoient grant pitiet de sa mort, et
at Logres who very had great pity of his death and

veoient bien que a morir le convenoit. Tant fu malades
saw well that to die him behooved So was sick
que il affoibli et amui et qu'il ne pot parler trois
that he weakened and went-mute and that-he not could speak three
jours. Lors vint Merlins en la ville, qui toutes les choses
days Then came Merlin into the town who all the things
savoit. Et quant il i fu venus, li preudoume de la terre
knew And when he there was come the worthy-men of the land
le firent venir devant eus. Et quant il i fu venus, se
him made come before them And when he there was come so
li dient: «Merlins, or est mors li rois qui vous tant
to-him say Merlin now is dead the king whom you so-much
amiés.» Et Merlins respont: «Vous ne dites mie bien: nus
loved And Merlin answers You not say at-all well anyone
ne muert qui si boine fin face que il a fait, ne il n'est
not dies who so good end makes as he has made nor he not-is
mie encore mors.» Et il dient que si est, car il a trois
at-all yet dead And they say that so he-is for it has three
jours qu'il ne parla ne ja mais ne parlera. Et Merlins
days that-he not spoke nor ever more not will-speak And Merlin
respont: «Si fera, se Dieu plaist. Ore en venés, si le
answers So will-he if God please Now thence come so him
vous ferai parler.» Et il s'en vont jusques la
to-you shall-make speak And they themselves-thence go until there
ou li rois gisoit. Et il firent toutes les fenestres ouvrir.
where the king lay And they made all the windows open
Et li rois esgarda Merlin et se torna deviers lui a son
And the king looked-at Merlin and himself turned toward him to his
pooir et fist samblant que il le conneust. Et Merlins
power and made semblance that he him knew And Merlin
parole et dist as barons qui illuec estoient et as prelas
speaks and said to-the barons who there were and to-the prelates

qui illuecques estoient de sainte eglyse: «Qui vaurra oir
who there were of holy church Who will-wish to-hear
les paroles que li rois dira si se traie près.» Et il li
the words that the king will-say so himself draw near And they him
demandent: «Merlins, comment le cuides tu faire parler?»
ask Merlin how him thinkest thou make speak
Lors se torna Merlins de l'autre part deviers le chief
Then himself turned Merlin to the-other side toward the head
le roi et li consilla moult bas en l'oreille: «Rois, tu
(of-)the king and to-him counseled very low in the-ear King thou
as faite moult bonne fin, se la conscience est tele comme
hast made very good end if the conscience is such as
la samblance. Et je te di que tes fius Artus sera chiés
the semblance And I thee tell that thy son Arthur will-be head
de ton regne apriès toi par la viertu de Jesucrist. Et sera
of thy realm after thee by the virtue of Jesus-Christ And will-be
acomplissables de la table reonde que tu as fondee.» Et
fulfiller of the table round which thou hast founded And
quant li rois oi ces miervelles que Merlins dist, si se
when the king heard these marvels that Merlin said so himself
traist viers lui et li dist: «Merlins, priiés li pour Dieu
drew toward him and to-him said Merlin pray him for God
que il prit a Jhesucrist por moi.» Et Merlins parole a tous
that he pray to Jesus-Christ for me And Merlin speaks to all
cheus qui illuec estoient et lour dist: «Signour, or avés
those who there were and to-them said Lords now have-you
oi chou que vous ne cuidiés pas que estre peust; saichiés
heard this which you not thought at-all that be could know
que c'est la daerrainne parole que il ja mais doie dire.» Et
that it-is the last word that he ever more must say And
lors se leva Merlins et tout li autre qui grant mierveille
then himself raised Merlin and all the others who great marvel

orent eue de chou que li rois a parlé, ne il n'en i
had had of this that the king has spoken nor it not-of-them there
ot onques uns qui peust savoir que ja avoit dit a Merlin.
had ever one who could know what already he-had said to Merlin
Ensi fina li rois la nuit. Et li baron et li clerc et li
Thus ended the king the night And the barons and the clerks and the
archevesque li firent le plus biel serviche et le gringneur
archbishops for-him made the most fair service and the greatest
honneur que il porent faire. Ensi fina Uters Pandragons, et
honor that they could do Thus ended Uther Pendragon and
la terre remest sans hoir. L'endemain que li rois fu enterrés
the land remained without heir The-next-day that the king was buried
si s'assamblerent li baron et tout li prelat de sainte eglise,
so themselves-assembled the barons and all the prelates of holy church
et prisent conseil comment li peuples seroit gouvernés,
and took counsel how the people would-be governed
ne il ne se porent acorder a nului. Et lors disent
nor they not themselves could agree on anyone And then said
ensamble que il se consillaissent a Merlin, qui moult
together that they themselves should-counsel with Merlin who very
estoit sages et de boin conseil ne onques ne sourconsilla.
was wise and of good counsel nor ever not misadvised
Ensi s'acorderent tout a Merlin, et lors l'envoiierent querre.
Thus agreed all on Merlin and then him-sent to-seek
Et quant il fu venus, si disent: «Merlins, nous savons bien
And when he was come so said Merlin we know well
que tu iés moult sages, et tu as moult amé les rois
that thou art very wise and thou hast much loved the kings
de cel regne. Et tu vois bien que la terre est remese
of this realm And thou seest well that the land is remained
sans hoir et que terre sans signour ne vaut gaires. Pour
without heir and that land without lord not is-worth much For

chou te prions nous pour Dieu et requerons que tu nous
this thee pray we for God and ask that thou us
aiues a eslire tel homme qui le regne puisse gouvrener
aid to choose such man who the realm may govern
au pourfit de sainte eglise et au salut dou peuple.» Et
to-the profit of holy church and to-the salvation of-the people And
Merlins lour dist: «Signour, je ne sui mie Dius que je doie
Merlin to-them said Lords I not am at-all God that I must
tel affaire conseillier ne que je doie eslire roi ne gouvrenour.
such affair counsel nor that I must choose king nor governor
Mais se vous acordés a mon conseil, je le vous diroie.
But if you accord with my counsel I it to-you would-tell
Et ne vous i acordés pas se je ne le vous doing
And not yourselves thereto accord at-all if I not it to-you give
boin.» Et il respondent: «Au bien et au pourfit de la
good And they answer To-the good and to-the profit of the
terre nous doinst Dieus acorder.» Et Merlins lour dist:
land us grant God to-accord And Merlin to-them said
«J'ai moult amé cel regne et toutes les gens qui i sont.
I-have much loved this realm and all the folk who therein are
Et se je disoie que vous fesissiés de l'un de vous roi,
And if I said that you should-make of the-one of you king
je feroie bien a croire, et drois seroit. Mais il vous est
I would-do well to believe and right it-would-be But it to-you is
biele aventure avenue, se vous le volés connoistre. Li rois
fair adventure happened if you it wish know The king
est mors dès la quinsainne de la saint Martin et d'illuec
is dead since the fortnight of the saint Martin and from-there
n'a ore gaires jusques au Noel; et se vous mon conseil
not-has now much until to-the Christmas and if you my counsel
creés, je le vous donrai boin et loial et selonc sainte
believe I it to-you shall-give good and loyal and according-to holy

eglise et le siecle.» Et il respondent tout a un mot:
church and the world And they answer all with one word
«Merlins, di chou que tu vaurras, et nous te querrons de
Merlin say this that thou wilt-wish and we thee shall-believe of
chou que tu diras.» Et il dist: «Signour, nous savons bien
this that thou wilt-say And he said Lords we know well
que la feste vient ou li rois nasqui qui est sires de tous
that the feast comes where the king was-born who is lord of all
les rois et gouvreneres de toutes les choses qui sont et
the kings and governor of all the things which are and
sousteneres de tous biens. Et je vous sui pleges, se vous le
sustainer of all goods And I to-you am pledge if you it
faites otroiier au peule, si comme chascuns a mestier de
make grant to-the people so as each-one has need of
boin gouvreneur, que il par sa bonté et par sa humilité a
good governor that he by his goodness and by his humility at
cele feste qui est apielee Noel, ou il li plot a naistre
that feast which is called Christmas where it him pleased to be-born
hom si voirement que il nasqui rois de toutes choses, que
man so truly that he was-born king of all things that
a chelui jour nous eslise tel homme a roi, qui soit a
on that-one day for-us may-choose such man as king who may-be at
son plaisir et a sa volenté faire. Aussi vraiement nous fache
his pleasure and at his will to-do As truly to-us make
il vraie demoustrance a chelui jour de soi a son plaisir
he true showing on that-one day of himself at his pleasure
et a sa volenté en tel maniere que li peules connoisse que
and at his will in such manner that the people may-know that
pour cele election sera rois sans election d'autrui. Et je
by that election will-be king without election of-another And I
vous creanc, se vous le faites faire au commun peuple, que
you promise if you it make do to-the common people that

vous en verrés la senefianche.» Lors respondent tout a
you thereof will-see the significance Then answer all with
un mot et dient: «Merlins, chou est li mieudres consaus
one word and say Merlin this is the best counsel
que on peust donner.» Lors dient li un as autres: «Vous
that one could give Then say the ones to-the others You
acordés vous a che conseil?» Et il respondent tout: «Il
accord yourselves with this counsel And they answer all It
n'est nus qui acorder ne s'i doive.» Et lors prient
not-is anyone who accord not himself-thereto must And then pray
tout ensamble li barons as vesques et as archevesques
all together the barons to-the bishops and to-the archbishops
que il au commun del peuple facent faire orisons et
that they to-the common of-the people may-make do prayers and
aumosnes, et par toutes les eglises soit commandé et
alms and through all the churches be commanded and
que chasquns prestre le face a savoir, et face seurté li
that each-one priest it make to know and make surety the
uns a l'autre que il en terront et nous avoec les
one to the-other that they thereof will-hold and we with-them the
commandemens de sainte eglise et la senefianche que Dieus
commandments of holy church and the significance that God
nous mousterra. Ensi sont tout li baron acordé au conseil
to-us will-show Thus are all the barons agreed to-the counsel
Merlin. Et puis prist congiet a iaus. Et il li prient que
(of-)Merlin And then took leave of them And they him pray that
il revieigne au Noel pour savoir se che sera voirs chou
he come-back at-the Christmas for to-know if this will-be true this
que il lour ensegne. Et Merlins respont: «Je n'i serai
that he them teaches And Merlin answers I not-there shall-be
pas, ne ne m'i verrés devant l'election.» Atant s'en
at-all nor not me-there will-you-see before the-election Thereupon himself-thence

ala Merlins a Blaise et se li dist ces choses que il
went Merlin to Blaise and so to-him told these things that he
savoit qui a venir estoient. Et li preudomme del roiaume
knew which to come were And the worthy-men of-the realm
et li menistre de sainte eglise firent ceste cose par tout
and the ministers of holy church made this thing through all
savoir et que li preudomme del roiaume venissent tout
known and that the worthy-men of-the realm should-come all
au Noel a Logres pour veoir l'election de Jhesucrist.
at-the Christmas to Logres for to-see the-election of Jesus-Christ

The Sword in the Anvil

XXI

On Christmas morning a sword stands through an anvil on a block before the church, its letters saying that whoever draws it will be king by Christ's election. No baron can move it. On New Year's Day Arthur, sent for Kay's sword, brings this one; Auctor tells him he is not his son and has him swear to make Kay seneschal. Arthur draws it before the archbishop, but the barons will not have a boy for lord.

Ensi fu ceste chose seue et entendue par tout, et lors
Thus was this thing known and understood through all and then
attendirent jusques au Noel. Et Auctor avoit l'enfant
waited until to-the Christmas And Auctor had the-child
tant norri que il estoit grans escuiiers, ne n'ot alaitié
so-much nurtured that he was great squire nor not-had suckled
d'autre lait que de sa feme, et ses fius avoit alaitié du
of-other milk than of his wife and his son had suckled of-the
lait d'une garce. Et Auctor ne savoit gaires preu le quel il
milk of-a wench And Auctor not knew much at-all the which he
amoit mieus ou son fil ou lui, ne il ne l'avoit onques apielé
loved better or his son or him nor he not him-had ever called

se son fil non, et li enfes le cuidoit bien meismes. A
if his son not and the child it thought well himself At
le Toussains avint devant cel Noel que il fist chevalier
the All-Saints happened before that Christmas that he made knight
son fil Ké. Et au Noel en vint a Logres aussi conme
his son Kay And at-the Christmas thence came to Logres just as
li autre et amena avoec lui ses deus fieus. La veille dou
the others and brought with him his two sons The eve of-the
Noel vinrent tout ensamble et clerc et prouvoire et tout
Christmas came all together and clerks and priests and all
li preudomme del roiaume, et orent bien fait che que
the worthy-men of-the realm and had well done this that
Merlins lour ot commandé. Et quant furent tout venut, si
Merlin them had commanded And when were all come so
menerent moult boine vie et attendirent la venue de la feste
led very good life and awaited the coming of the feast
si comme drois fu, et furent a la messe de la mienuit et
so as right was and were at the mass of the midnight and
firent lour priieres a nostre signour qu'il envoiast tel hom
made their prayers to our lord that-he should-send such man
qui fust pourfitables a le crestiienté maintenir. Ensi furent a
who were profitable to the Christendom to-maintain Thus were-they at
cele premiere messe, et quant il l'orent oie, si s'en
that first mass and when they it-had heard so themselves-thence
alerent teuls en i ot, et teuls i ot qui remesent
went such of-them there was and such there was who remained
ou moustier. Ensi attendirent la messe dou jour. Si ot
in-the minster Thus awaited the mass of-the day So there-were
maint hommes qui disent que moult estoient fol qui
many men who said that very were foolish who
cuidoient que nostre sires mesist entention del roi eslire.
thought that our lord should-put intention of-the king to-choose

Ensi comme il parloient, si avint que la messe sonna, si
Thus as they spoke so happened that the mass rang so
alerent tout au serviche. Et quant il furent tout assamblé
went all to-the service And when they were all assembled
pour oir, si fu apparilliés uns des plus preudommes de la
for to-hear so was prepared one of-the most worthy-men of the
terre pour la messe chanter. Et devant chou qu'il chantast,
land for the mass to-sing And before this that-he should-sing
si parla au puple et lour dist: «Signour, vous devés chi
so spoke to-the people and to-them said Lords you must here
estre assamblé pour bien, et pour trois choses, si vous dirai
be assembled for good and for three things so to-you shall-tell
queles: pour le sauvement de vos ames, et pour l'ounour
which for the salvation of your souls and for the-honor
de vos vies, et pour veoir le myracle que nostre sires fera
of your lives and for to-see the miracle that our lord will-do
hui, si li plaist, por nous douner roi pour maintenir sainte
today if him pleases for us to-give king for to-maintain holy
eglyse et pour desfendre le peuple et tout le roiaume.
church and for to-defend the people and all the realm

«Nous sommes tout en contenchon d'eslire l'un de nous.
We are all in contention to-choose the-one of us
Et nous ne sommes pas si sage que nous seussiemes eslire
And we not are at-all so wise that we might-know choose
le plus pourfitable. Par chou que nous nel savons, prions
the most profitable By this that we not-it know let-us-pray
a Jhesucrist que il nous fache hui demoustrance d'avoir roi
to Jesus-Christ that he to-us make today showing of-having king
par son plaisir si voirement que il nasqui au jour d'ui. Et
by his pleasure so truly as he was-born on-the day of-today And
en prie chascun de vous au mieus que il savra.» Ensi le
thereof pray each-one of you at-the best that he will-know Thus it

firent comme il lour ot commandé. Et il ala canter messe
did as he to-them had commanded And he went to-sing mass
jusques a l'evangille. Et ja eurent offert de teus en i
until to the-gospel And already had offered of such of-them there
ot, si s'en alerent ensamble devant le moustier. Illuec
was so themselves-thence went together before the minster There
avoit une grant place. Et quant cil qui avoient offert
there-was a great place And when those who had offered
furent issu, si fu ajorné, et lors vinrent devant le moustier,
were issued so was day-come and then came before the minster
et virent devant la porte del moustier, devant la galilee
and saw before the gate of-the minster before the porch
un perron tout quarré en quatre costes, si ne sorent onques
a block all squared in four sides so not knew ever
connoistre de quel pierre il fu et dient que il estoit de
recognize of what stone it was and say that it was of
marbre. Et sour cel perron avoit en mi lieu une englume
marble And on that block there-was in mid place an anvil
de fier largement demi pié haute. Et parmi cele englume
of iron fully half foot high And through that anvil
ot une espee ferue dusc'au heut. Et quant cil le virent
there-was a sword struck up-to-the hilt And when those it saw
qui premiers estoient issu dou moustier, si en orent moult
who first were issued from-the minster so thereof had very
grant mierveille et vinrent arriere au moustier, si le disent
great marvel and came back to-the minster so it told
au peule. Et quant li preudom qui cantoit la messe qui i
to-the people And when the worthy-man who sang the mass who there
estoit l'oi, li archevesques de Logres l'oi, si prist l'iaue
was it-heard the archbishop of Logres it-heard so took the-water
benoite et tous les saintuaires, si vint la tout avant et
holy and all the relics so came there all before and

puis li autre après, et esgarderent moult le pierre et virent
then the others after and looked-at much the stone and saw
l'espee en mi lieu et jeterent de l'iaue benoite sus. Lors
the-sword in mid place and cast of the-water holy upon-it Then
esgarda li archevesques et vit lettres d'or qui estoient au
looked the archbishop and saw letters of-gold which were on-the
pomel de l'espee, si les liut, et disoient que cil qui osteroit
pommel of the-sword so them read and they-said that he who should-remove
cele espee, il seroit rois de la terre par l'election Jhesucrist.
that sword he would-be king of the land by the-election (of-)Jesus-Christ

Quant li archevesques ot veut les lettres, si le dist
When the archbishop had seen the letters so it told
au peule. Lors fu li perrons bailliés a garder a neuf
to-the people Then was the block given to guard to nine
preudommes et a cinq clers. Et lors dient que grant
worthy-men and to five clerks And then say that great
senefiance lour avoit Dieus moustree, si s'en vinrent
significance to-them had God shown so themselves-thence came
arriere pour dire la messe et pour rendre grasce a nostre
back for to-say the mass and for to-render grace to our
signour, et cantent: Te Deum laudamus. Et quant li
lord and sing Te Deum laudamus And when the
preudom fu venus a l'autel, si se torna deviers le peule
worthy-man was come to the-altar so himself turned toward the people
et lour dist: «Ore poés savoir que auchuns de nous iest
and to-them said Now can-you know that some of us is
bons, quant nostre sires a fait pour nous tel demoustrance.
good when our lord has done for us such showing
Et de la senefiance nous mousterra il a sa volenté.» Lors
And of the significance us will-show he at his will Then
canta li preudom la messe. Et quant elle fu dite, si
sang the worthy-man the mass And when it was said so

s'asamblerent tout au perron. Et lors demanderent li uns a
themselves-assembled all at-the block And then asked the one of
l'autre qui assaiera li premiers, et lors s'acordent tout qu'il
the-other who will-test the first and then agree all that-they
n'i assaieront ja fors si comme le loeront li menistre
not-there will-test ever except so as it will-advise the ministers
de sainte eglise. A ceste parole ot grant discorde. Car li
of holy church At this word there-was great discord For the
plus haut et li plus poissant, qui plus grant force avoient,
most high and the most powerful who most great force had
voloient assaier avant. A che ot mainte parole dite qui
wished to-test first At this there-was many word said which
ne doivent mie estre retraites. Et li archevesques parla si
not must at-all be related And the archbishop spoke so
que li plus d'aus l'oirent: «Signour, vous n'estes pas si sage
that the most of-them it-heard Lords you not-are at-all so wise
com je vaurroie ne si preudoume. Et tant voel je bien que
as I would-wish nor so worthy And so-much wish I well that
vous saciés que nostre sires voit et set et en a un
you may-know that our lord sees and knows and thereof has one
eslit, mais ne savons le quel. Et tant vous puis je bien
chosen but not know-we the which And so-much you can I well
dire que riqueche ne gentillece ne fiertés n'i a mestier,
tell that wealth nor nobility nor pride not-there has need
se la volenté non a nostre signeur. Mais je me fi tant
if the will not of our lord But I myself trust so-much
en lui que, se cil qui doit ceste espee oster estoit encore a
in him that if he who must this sword remove were still to
naistre, que elle ne seroit ja ostee devant qu'il l'osteroit.»
be-born that it not would-be ever removed before that-he it-would-remove

A che s'acordent tout li haut homme et li riche, si
To this agree all the high men and the rich so
se traient a une part et dient que il s'acorderont a
themselves draw to one side and say that they themselves-will-accord to
le volenté l'archevesque et que il ouverront tout par son
the will (of-)the-archbishop and that they will-work all by his
conseil. Et quant li archevesques l'oi, si en ot moult
counsel And when the archbishop it-heard so thereof had very
grant joie et ploura de grant joie et dist: «Segneur, ceste
great joy and wept from great joy and said Lords this
humilité que vous avés dite est venue en vous de par
humility that you have said is come in you on behalf-of
Dieu. Et sachiés que j'en ouverrai tout a sa volenté et
God And know that I-thereof shall-work all at his will and
si que je n'en serai ja blasmés.» Chis parlemens fu
so that I not-thereof shall-be ever blamed This parley was
pris devant la grant messe. Li archevesques lor a retrait
taken before the great mass The archbishop to-them has related
que nostre sires a grant miracle fait pour nous et que
that our lord has great miracle done for us and that
moult a ci biele demoustrance; car nostre sires quant il
very has here fair showing for our lord when he
commanda justice en terre si le mist en espee, et l'espee fu
commanded justice on earth so it put in sword and the-sword was
baillie au commenchement des quatre ordres as chevaliers
given at-the beginning of-the four orders to-the knights
pour desfendre sainte eglyse et pour droite justiche tenir.
for to-defend holy church and for right justice to-hold
Et nostre sires nous fait ore par l'espee ceste election. Et
And our lord us makes now by the-sword this election And
sachiés bien qu'il est veu et esgardé a qui il veult baillier
know well that-it is seen and regarded to whom he wishes to-give

ceste justice. Et ne se hastent ja li haut homme pour
this justice And not themselves hasten ever the high men for
essaiier, car elle ne puet ne ne veult mie par riqueche ne
to-test for it not can nor not wishes at-all by wealth nor
par orgueil estre traite; ne ne s'en courechent mie li
by pride be drawn nor not themselves-thereof anger at-all the
povre se li riche l'assaient avant, car il est drois et raisons:
poor if the rich it-test first for it is right and reason
car li plus haut homme et li gentil doivent essaiier avant.»
for the most high men and the noble must test first
Ensi s'acordent tout a chou que li archevesques dist, que il
Thus agree all to this that the archbishop said that he
fache essaiier l'espee a cui que il vaurra, et que il obeiront
make test the-sword by whom that he will-wish and that they will-obey
et terront pour signeur chelui qui Dieus en donra la
and will-hold for lord that-one to-whom God thereof will-give the
grasce. Lors vinrent arriere, et li archevesques en eslit
grace Then came back and the archbishop of-them chose
deus cent et cinquante des plus preudommes que il sot
two hundred and fifty of-the most worthy-men that he knew
a son ensiant et lor fist assaiier a l'espee. Et quant il
to his knowledge and them made test at the-sword And when they
l'orent assaiié, si commanda as autres que il i alaissent.
it-had tested so commanded to-the others that they there should-go
Et lors l'aissaierent li uns apriès l'autre tout cil qui assaiier
And then it-tested the one after the-other all those who test
le vaurrent, mais ains n'i ot chelui qui oster le peust ne
it wished but ever not-there was that-one who remove it could nor
remouvoir. Et puis fu commandés li perrons pour garder a
move And then was commanded the block for to-guard to
neuf preudommes. Et lors fu dit au peuple que s'i
nine worthy-men And then was said to-the people that himself-there

assaieroit qui assaiier s'i vaurroit, et bien i preissent
would-test who test himself-there would-wish and well there should-take
garde li preudomme qui cil seroit qui l'espee osteroit;
heed the worthy-men who he would-be who the-sword would-remove
mais onques ne pot estre ostee de nul qui i venist.
but ever not could be removed by anyone who there came

Ensi fu l'espee tous les huit jours jusques au jour de
Thus was the-sword all the eight days until to-the day of
l'an. Et furent tout li baron a le grant messe, et li
the-year And were all the barons at the great mass and the
archevesques les sermonna et moustra dou bien che que il
archbishop them preached and showed of-the good this that he
pot. Après lour dist: «Signour, je vous avoie bien dit que
could After to-them said Lords I you had well said that
tout par loisir pooient venir li plus lontain a l'espee oster.
all at leisure could come the most distant to the-sword to-remove
Ore poés savoir li quels l'ostera que Dieus l'a eslit.»
Now can-you know the which will-remove-it whom God it-has chosen
Et il dient tout que il ne se mouveront tant qu'il
And they say all that they not themselves will-move until that-they
voient a cui Dieus en donra le don. Ensi fu la messe
see to whom God thereof will-give the gift Thus was the mass
chantee, et alerent li baron a leur osteus. Et après mengier
sung and went the barons to their lodgings And after eating
si comme il soloient alerent li chevalier behourder defors
so as they were-wont went the knights to-joust outside
la ville as chans, si alerent li plus des gens pour veoir le
the town in-the fields so went the most of-the folk for to-see the
behourdis. Et li neuf preudomme qui garderent l'espee i
jousting And the nine worthy-men who guarded the-sword there
alerent. Et quant il orent behourdé une grande pieche, si
went And when they had jousted a great while so

baillierent lour escus a lour serjans et cil commenchierent
gave their shields to their sergeants and these began
a behourder. Et tant behourderent que entre iaus leva une
to joust And so-much jousted that between them rose a
grande meslee, si que tout cil de la ville i acoururent.
great melee so that all those of the town there ran-up
Auctor avoit fait de son fil l'aisné chevalier a la Toussains.
Auctor had made of his son the-elder knight at the All-Saints
Quant la meslee fu commenchie, si apiela cil son frere,
When the melee was begun so called that-one his brother
se li dist: «Va a mon hostel querre m'espee.» Chis fu
so to-him said Go to my lodging to-seek my-sword This-one was
moult preus et igniaus, si dist: «Sire, volentiers.» Lors vint
very valiant and quick so said Lord willingly Then came
a l'ostel, si quist l'espee son frere ou une autre, mais
to the-lodging so sought the-sword (of-)his brother or an other but
n'en pot nulle trouver, si commencha a plourer et fu
not-of-them could any find so began to weep and was
moult destrois. Et lors s'en vint arriere par devant le
very distressed And then himself-thence came back by before the
moustier ou li perrons estoit, et vit l'espee, ou il n'avoit
minster where the block was and saw the-sword where he not-had
onques assaiié. Lors se pensa que se il le pooit avoir que
ever tested Then himself thought that if he it could have that
il le porteroit son frere, et vint tout a cheval, si le prist
he it would-carry (to-)his brother and came all on horse so it took
par le heudure, si l'emporta et le couvri dou pan de sa
by the hilt so it-carried-away and it covered with-the skirt of his
cote. Et ses freres qui l'atendoit defors la ville le vit venir,
coat And his brother who him-awaited outside the town him saw come
se li ala a l'encontre et li demanda s'espee. Et cil dist
so to-him went to the-meeting and him asked-for his-sword And he said

qu'il ne le pooit trouver, mais il en aportoit une autre, si
that-he not it could find but he of-them brought an other so
traist cheli de sous sa cote. Et il li demanda ou il l'a
drew that-one from under his coat And he him asked where he it-has
prise. Et il li dist que c'est l'espee dou perron. Et Kés li
taken And he to-him said that it-is the-sword of-the block And Kay it
prent, si le met dessous le pan de sa cote et quist son pere
takes so it puts under the skirt of his coat and sought his father
tant que il le trouva. Et quant il l'ot trouvé, se li
until that he him found And when he him-had found so to-him
dist: «Sire, je serai rois; veschi l'espee dou perron.» Quant
said Lord I shall-be king here-is the-sword of-the block When
Auctor le vit, si s'esmervilla moult et li demanda comment
Auctor it saw so himself-marveled much and him asked how
il l'avoit eue. Et cil dist qu'il l'avoit prise ou perron.
he it-had had And he said that-he it-had taken in-the block

Quant Auctor oi son fil ensi parler, si ne l'en crei
When Auctor heard his son thus speak so not him-thereof believed
pas, ains li dist que il savoit bien que il mentoit. Lors
at-all rather to-him said that he knew well that he lied Then
s'en alerent viers l'eglise entr'aus deus, et li autres
themselves-thence went toward the-church between-them two and the other
varlès apriès. Quant Auctor vit le perron dont l'espee estoit
lad after When Auctor saw the block whence the-sword was
ostee si dist: «Kés, ne me ment pas. Comment ostastes vous
removed so said Kay not me lie at-all How removed you
ceste espee? Car se vous me mentés, sel savrai jou bien,
this sword For if you me lie so-it shall-know I well
et ja mais ne vous ameroie.» Et cil respont comme cil qui
and ever more not you would-I-love And he answers as he who
ot honte, et dist: «Sire, je ne vous mentirai pas. Artus mes
had shame and said Lord I not you shall-lie at-all Arthur my

freres le m'aporta, si ne sai comment il l'ot.» Quant Auctor
brother it me-brought so not know how he it-had When Auctor
l'ot, si dist: «Bailliés le moi, biaus fieus.» Et Auctor regarde
it-hears so said Give it me fair son And Auctor looks
derriere soi et vit Artu et li dist: «Biaus fieus, cha venés,
behind him and saw Arthur and to-him said Fair son hither come
prenés l'espee et si le remetés arriere de la ou vous le
take the-sword and so it put-back back from there where you it
presistes.» Et Artus le prent, si le remet ens en l'englume,
took And Arthur it takes so it puts-back in in the-anvil
et elle se tint autressi bien comme devant. Et Auctor
and it itself held just-as well as before And Auctor
commanda a Ké son fil que il li baillast. Kés le sace, mais
commanded to Kay his son that he it should-take Kay it pulls but
ne li pot baillier. Lors s'en ala Auctor ou moustier
not it could take Then himself-thence went Auctor into-the minster
et apiela ses deus enfans. Lors prist Artu entre ses bras, si
and called his two children Then took Arthur between his arms so
dist: «Biaus sire, chiers fieus, se je vous pooie pourcachier
said Fair lord dear son if I you could procure
que vous fuissiés rois, quel mieus m'en seroit il?» Et
that you were king what better me-thereof would-be it And
Artus respont: «Sire, je ne puis avoir ne cel bien ne autre
Arthur answers Lord I not can have nor that good nor other
que vous n'en soiiés sires comme mes peres.» Et Auctor
that you not-thereof be lord as my father And Auctor
li dist: «Vostre peres sui jou coume de norreture, mais
to-him said Your father am I as of nurture but
certes je ne sai qui vous engenra ne qui vostre mere fu.»
certainly I not know who you engendered nor who your mother was

Quant Artus oi que cil qui il cuidoit qui fust ses
When Arthur heard that he whom he thought who were his
peres le denoia a fil, si ploura et ot moult grant duel.
father him denied as son so wept and had very great grief
Et dist: «Biaus sire Diex, comment averai jou bien, quant
And said Fair lord God how shall-have I good when
j'ai failli a pere?» Et Auctor li dist: «Biaus sires chiers,
I-have failed of father And Auctor to-him said Fair lord dear
comment que vous pere aiiés eu, se nostre sires veult que
however that you father may-have had if our lord wishes that
vous aiiés ceste grasce, et je le vous aiue a pourcachier,
you may-have this grace and I it to-you aid to procure
quel mieus m'en sera il?» Et Artus li dist: «Sire,
what better me-thereof will-be it And Arthur to-him said Lord
teuls comme vous plaira.» Lors li conte Auctor la bonté
such as you will-please Then to-him tells Auctor the goodness
qu'il li avoit faite et comment il l'a norri et sevra
that-he to-him had done and how he him-has nurtured and weaned
son fil et le fist norrir a une estraingne feme, «pour
his son and him made nurture by a strange woman for
coi vous deveriés moi et mon fil rendre le guerredon, que
which you should to-me and to-my son render the reward for
onques hom ne norri plus doucement enfant que je vous
ever man not nurtured more sweetly child than I you
ai norri. Ore si vous pri que se vous avés ceste grasce et
have nurtured Now so you pray that if you have this grace and
je le vous aiue a porcachier que vous le merissiés a mon
I it to-you aid to procure that you it repay to my
fil.» Et Artus li dist: «Sire, je vous pri que vous ne me
son And Arthur to-him said Lord I you pray that you not me
desavoués pas de fil. Car je ne savroie ou aler. Et se
disavow at-all as son For I not would-know where to-go And if

vous me poés ceste grasce pourcacier et Dieus veut que je
you me can this grace procure and God wishes that I
l'aie, je n'avrai riens qui ne soit en vostre commant.»
it-may-have I not-shall-have anything which not be at your command
Et Auctor li dist: «Biaus fieus, je ne vous demanderai
And Auctor to-him said Fair son I not you shall-ask
pas ore vostre regne, mais tant vous prie je quant vous
at-all now your realm but so-much you pray I when you
serés rois que vous faciés vostre frere senescal de votre terre
will-be king that you make your brother seneschal of your land
en tel maniere que pour fourfait que il face ne perde le
in such manner that for misdeed that he may-do not he-lose the
senescauchie, que tous jours tant comme il vivra autres
seneschalship so-that all days so-long as he will-live other
senescaus ne soit. Et se il est fel et faus et vilains,
seneschal not be And if he is felonious and false and churlish
vous le devés bien sousfrir; que toutes les mauvaises choses
you him must well suffer for all the bad things
qu'il a n'a il prises se par le norriche non qui l'alaita,
that-he has not-has he taken except by the nurse not who him-suckled
et pour vous norrir est il si desnaturés. Et pour chou
and for you to-nurture is he so unnatured And for this
le devés vous mieus sousfrir. Si vous pri que vous li
him must you better suffer So you pray that you to-him
doingniés chou que je vous demanc.» Et Artus dist: «Sire,
give this that I you ask And Arthur said Lord
je li doins moult volentiers.» Lors le mena Auctor a
I to-him give very willingly Then him led Auctor to
l'autel, si le jura Artus a tenir bien et a foi. Et quant il
the-altar so it swore Arthur to hold well and in faith And when he
li ot juré, si vinrent devant le moustier. Et lors fu la
to-him had sworn so came before the minster And then was the

meslee remese, si s'en vinrent li baron en l'eglise
melee ceased so themselves-thence came the barons into the-church
arriere pour viespres oir. Et lors apiela Auctor ses amis et
back for vespers to-hear And then called Auctor his friends and
son lingnage et dist l'archevesque: «Sires, veschi un mien
his lineage and said (to-)the-archbishop Lord here-is a my-own
enfant qui n'est encore mie chevaliers, si me prie que je li
child who not-is yet at-all knight so me prays that I him
face assaiier a ceste espee; si vous pri que vous apielés de
make test at this sword so you pray that you call of
ces barons.» Et il si fist. Et lors s'assamblerent tout au
these barons And he so did And then themselves-assembled all at-the
perron, et quant il i furent, Auctor commanda Artu
block and when they there were Auctor commanded Arthur
que il presist l'espee et le baillast a l'archevesque, et il
that he should-take the-sword and it should-give to the-archbishop and he
si fist. Et quant l'archevesques le tint, si le prist entre ses
so did And when the-archbishop it held so him took between his
bras et commenche a chanter en haut: Te Deum laudamus.
arms and begins to sing on high Te Deum laudamus
Ensi fu portés Artus el moustier. Li baron qui chou
Thus was carried Arthur into-the minster The barons who this
orent veut furent moult angoisseus, et dient que che ne
had seen were very anguished and say that this not
porroit pas estre que uns garchons fust sires d'aus. Et li
could at-all be that a boy were lord of-them And the
archevesques se courecha et dist: «Biau signeur, nostre sires
archbishop himself angered and said Fair lords our lord
set mieus qui chascuns est que vous ne sachiés.» Et Auctor
knows better who each-one is than you — may-know And Auctor
et ses lignages et grant partie de la gent se tenoient
and his lineage and great part of the folk themselves held

deviers Artu. Et li communs del peuple et li baron de la
toward Arthur And the common of-the people and the barons of the
terre se tenoient a l'encontre. Lors dist li archevesques
land themselves held to the-contrary Then said the archbishop
une hardie parole: «Signeur, se tout cil dou monde voloient
a bold word Lords if all those of-the world wished
aler contre ceste election et nostre sires tous seus le vausist,
to-go against this election and our lord all alone it wished
si seroit elle. Et je vous mousterrai quel fianche j'ai en
so would-be it And I to-you shall-show what trust I-have in
Dieu. Alés, Artus, biau frere, remetre l'espee ou vous le
God Go Arthur fair brother put-back the-sword where you it
presistes.» Et Artus le reporta et le remist voiant tous.
took And Arthur it carried-back and it put-back in-sight-of all
Et quant il l'ot remise, si parla li archevesques et dist:
And when he it-had put-back so spoke the archbishop and said
«Onques mais plus biele election ne fu faite ne veue. Ore alés,
Ever more more fair election not was made nor seen Now go
signeur riche houme, et essaiiés se vous le porrés oster.»
lords rich men and test if you it will-be-able remove
Et il si font, mais ains n'i ot nul qui avoir le peust.
And they so do but ever not-there was any who have it could
Et li archevesques lour dist: «Moult est faus ki contre la
And the archbishop to-them said Very is false who against the
volenté de Dieu vait.» Et il dient: «Sire, nous n'alons pas
will of God goes And they say Lord we not-go at-all
contre sa volenté, mais il nous est moult estrange chose que
against his will but it to-us is very strange thing that
uns garchons soit sires de nous.» Et li archevesques lour
a boy be lord of us And the archbishop to-them
dist que «cil qui l'a esleuut le connoist mieus de vous.»
said that he who him-has chosen him knows better than you

The Crowning of Arthur

XXII

The barons will not have a boy for their lord and win delays to Candlemas, then Easter, then Pentecost. Arthur draws the sword each time, makes Kay seneschal, gives away all he is given, and wins them over. On Pentecost eve he is knighted, and the barons ask his pardon. He swears to keep the church and the law, lifts the sword from the anvil, and is anointed king; the block vanishes.

Lors prient li baron l'archevesque qu'il lait l'espee el
Then pray the barons the-archbishop that-he leave the-sword in-the
perron dessi a la Candeler, se s'i assaieront encore
block until to the Candlemas so themselves-thereat will-test still
pluisour que onques n'i assaiierent. Et li archevesques
several who ever not-there tested And the archbishop
lour otria. Ensi remest l'espee ou perron dusques a la
to-them granted Thus remained the-sword in-the block until to the
Chandeler, et lors fu tous li peules assamblés et s'i
Candlemas and then was all the people assembled and himself-thereat
assaia qui essaiier s'i vaut. Et quant il s'i
tested who test himself-thereat wished And when they themselves-thereat
orent tout essaiié, si dist l'archevesques: «Il seroit bien
had all tested so said the-archbishop It would-be well
drois que nous fesissons la volenté Jesucrist.
right that we should-do the will (of-)Jesus-Christ

«Alés, biaus fieus Artus, se nostre signour plaist que vous
Go fair son Arthur if our lord pleases that you
soiiés gouvreneres de cest peule, si me bailliés cele espee.»
be governor of this people so me give that sword
Et Artus va avant, se li baille. Et quant li archevesques
And Arthur goes forward so to-him gives And when the archbishop

le vit et li peuples, si plourerent de joie et de pitié et
it saw and the people so wept for joy and for pity and
demanderent: «A il mais chelui qui contre ceste election
asked Has it more that-one who against this election
soit?» Et li riche homme respondent: «Sire, nous vous
be And the rich men answer Lord we you
prions encore que vous le laissiés dusques a Pasques. Et se
pray still that you it leave until to Easter And if
il ne vient adonques qui le peust oster, nous obeirons par
it not comes then who it could remove we shall-obey by
couvent a cestui. Et se vous le volés autrement faire, si
covenant to this-one And if you it wish otherwise to-do so
fera chascuns au mieus que il porra.» Et li archevesques
will-do each-one at-the best that he will-be-able And the archbishop
dist: «Obeirés vous tout a lui de bon cuer, si je le lais?»
said Will-obey you all to him with good heart if I it leave
Et il dient tout: «Oil, et il fache tous jours de la
And they say all Yes and he may-do all days of the
terre et dou regne a sa volenté.» Et li archevesques dist:
land and of-the realm at his will And the archbishop said
«Artus, frere, remet l'espee el perron. Et se Diu plaist,
Arthur brother put-back the-sword in-the block And if God please
vous ne faurrés ja au bien que Dieus vous a pramis.»
you not will-fail ever of-the good that God to-you has promised
Et cil va avant, si rassiet l'espee en son lieu. Et quant
And he goes forward so resets the-sword in its place And when
elle fu rassise, si le fist couvrir, et elle s'i tint aussi
it was reset so it made cover and it itself-there held as-well
comme elle ot onques fait. Et li archevesques qui avoit
as it had ever done And the archbishop who had
pris l'enfant en garde dist: «Artus, seurement sachiés que
taken the-child in keeping said Arthur surely know that

vous estes rois et sires de cest peuple. Et gardés que vous
you are king and lord of this people And see that you
soiiés preudom. Et dès ore en avant gardés qui vous volés
be worthy-man And from now on forward see whom you wish
qui sache vos privees paroles et vostre conseil, et dounés
who may-know your private words and your counsel and give
et departés vos hounours et vos mestiers de vostre maison,
and distribute your honors and your offices of your household
tout autressi que se vous estiés ja rois. Car vous le serés,
all likewise as if you were already king For you it will-be
se Dieu plaist.» Artus respont: «Sire, jou mech canques
if God please Arthur answers Lord I put whatever
Dieus veut metre de bien en moi en la garde de sainte
God wishes to-put of good in me in the keeping of holy
eglyse et en vostre conseil. Et eslisiés vous meesmes quels
church and in your counsel And choose you yourself what
gens me seroient boin a faire le volenté nostre signour
folk to-me would-be good to do the will (of-)our lord
et au preu de la crestiienté. Et apielés se vous plaist
and to-the profit of the Christendom And call if you please
a vous mon signour.» Et lors apiela li archevesques Auctor
to you my lord And then called the archbishop Auctor
se li moustra les boines paroles que Artus avoit dites.
so to-him showed the good words that Arthur had said
Lors li eslirent teuls consilliers comme il vaurrent.
Then for-him chose such counselors as they wished
Et par le conseil l'archevesque et tous ses barons fist Ké
And by the counsel (of-)the-archbishop and all his barons made Kay
le senescal de sa terre. Et les autres choses laissa jusques
the seneschal of his land And the other things left until
a Pasques. Et quant Pasques furent venues, si s'assamblerent
to Easter And when Easter were come so themselves-assembled

tout a Logres. Et quant il furent tout assamblé la veille
all at Logres And when they were all assembled the eve
de Pasques, li archevesques les manda tous en son palais
of Easter the archbishop them summoned all into his palace
pour consillier. Et quant il furent tout venu, si lour
for to-counsel And when they were all come so to-them
retrait chou que il veoit de la volenté Jhesucrist qui voloit
relates this that he saw of the will (of-)Jesus-Christ who wished
par election que li enfes eust le regne. Et lors retraist
by election that the child should-have the realm And then related
les boines teches qu'il a en lui veut puis que il l'acointa.
the good qualities that-he has in him seen since that he him-acquainted
Lors dient li baron: «Sire, nous ne volons pas estre contre
Then say the barons Lord we not wish at-all to-be against
la volenté nostre signour, mais che nous est moult grant
the will (of-)our lord but this to-us is very great
mierveille d'oume de si bas lieu qui ensi sera sires de nous.»
marvel of-man of so low place who thus will-be lord of us
Et li archevesques dist: «Vous n'estes pas boin crestiien, se
And the archbishop said You not-are at-all good Christians if
vous volés aler encontre.» Et il dient: «Sire, nous n'irons
you wish to-go against-it And they say Lord we not-shall-go
pas, mais faites ent d'une partie a nos grés. Vous avés veut
at-all but do thereof of-one part at our wills You have seen
cel enfant sage et conneu de pluiseurs choses, et nous ne
this child wise and known in several things and we not
l'avons ne conneu ne essaiié, ne nous ne savons se pau non
him-have nor known nor tested nor we not know if little not
de son estre; si vous volons priier que anchois qu'il soit
of his being so you wish-we to-pray that before that-be be
sacrés le nous laissiés essaiier quels hom il vaurra estre.
consecrated him to-us you-let test what man he will-wish to-be

Car se nous veons son estre, il i avera tel de nous
For if we see his being it there will-have such of us
qui bien le cuidera connoistre, se il veoit sa maniere.» Et
who well him will-think to-know if he saw his manner And
il dist: «Volés vous que on meche en respit son sacre?»
he said Wish you that one put in respite his consecration
Et il dient: «Sire, nous le volons bien, et soit respité
And they say Lord we it wish well and be-it respited
jusques a demain. Et se il avient que nous le trouvons tel
until to tomorrow And if it happens that we him find such
il doive estre rois, si metés le sacre en respit jusques
he must be king so put the consecration in respite until
a la Penthecouste. Ensi vous volons nous prier que vous
to the Pentecost Thus you wish we to-pray that you
le fachiés.» Et li archevesques respont: «Ja pour chou ne
it do And the archbishop answers Ever for this not
lairons.» Ensi departent lour conseil, et l'endemain apriès a
shall-we-leave Thus part their council and the-next-day after at
la grant messe si amenerent l'enfant a l'election, si rosta
the great mass so brought the-child to the-election so again-removed
Artus l'espee si comme il avoit fait devant. Et lors le
Arthur the-sword so as he had done before And then him
prisent et leverent en haut et le tinrent pour lour signour.
took and raised on high and him held for their lord
Et lors li prient tout que il remeche l'espee arriere et que
And then him pray all that he put-back the-sword back and that
il parlast a iaus. Et il dist que il le feroit volentiers, et
he should-speak to them And he said that he it would-do willingly and
lors remist l'espee ou perron arriere, et il le menerent
then put-back the-sword in-the block back and they him led
a la maistre eglyse pour parler a lui et pour lui essaiier.
to the master church for to-speak to him and for him to-test

«Sire, nous veons bien que nostre sires veult que vous
Lord we see well that our lord wishes that you
soiiés rois et sires de nous, et dès que il le veult nous
be king and lord of us and since that he it wishes we
le volons, si vous terrons a signour et volons tenir nos
it wish so you shall-hold as lord and wish to-hold our
yretages de vous, et vous prions que vous respités vostre
heritages of you and you pray that you respite your
sacre dusques a la Penthecouste, ne ja pour chou ne
consecration until to the Pentecost nor ever for this not
soiiés mains sires del regne et de nous. Et de chou volons
be less lord of-the realm and of us And of this wish
nous que vous nous respondés sans conseil.» Et Artus
we that you us answer without counsel And Arthur
respont: «Signeur, de chou que vous me dites que jou prenge
answers Lords of this that you me tell that I take
vos houmages et que je vous rende vos hounours et les
your homages and that I you render your honors and them
tiegniés de moi, che ne puis je pas faire ne ne doi, je ne
you-hold of me this not can I at-all do nor not must I not
puis vos hounours ne les autrui baillier ne gouvrener devant
can your honors nor the others' give nor govern before
chou que jou aie la moie. Et de chou que vous me dites
this that I may-have the mine And of this that you me tell
que je soie sires dou regne, che ne puet estre devant chou
that I be lord of-the realm this not can be before this
que jou aie eut le sacre et le couroune et l'ounour
that I may-have had the consecration and the crown and the-honor
del roiaume. Mais le respit que vous me demandés d'endroit
of-the kingdom But the respite that you me ask regarding

le sacre vous donrai jou moult volentiers, ne je ne puis
the consecration you shall-give I very willingly nor I not can
avoir sacre se de par Dieu non et de par vous.»
have consecration if on behalf-of God not and on behalf-of you

Quant li baron oirent chou que li enfes lour a dit, si dient
When the barons heard this that the child to-them has said so say
que chis enfes sera moult sages, se il vit, car moult a bien
that this child will-be very wise if he lives for very has well
respondu. Lors dient: «Sire, il seroit moult mieus que vous
answered Then say Lord it would-be very better that you
fuissiés couronnés et sacrés a le Penthecouste.» Et dedens che
were crowned and consecrated at the Pentecost And within this
obeirent a Artu par le congiet l'archevesque. Lors firent aporter
obeyed to Arthur by the leave (of-)the-archbishop Then made bring
les chiers avoirs et les grans joiaus pour savoir s'il en
the dear possessions and the great jewels for to-know if-he of-them
covoiteroit nul. Et il demande a cheus de qui il estoit acointes
would-covet any And he asks of those with whom he was acquainted
de quel vallanche chascuns estoit, et selonc chou qu'il oi
of what worth each-one was and according-to this that-he heard
dire de chascun, si faisoit. Quant il avoit tout pris les avoirs, si
say of each-one so did-he When he had all taken the possessions so
les departoit ensi que je vous ai dit, selonc chou que chascun
them distributed thus as I to-you have said according-to this that each-one
afferoit. Ensi donnoit a chascun chou que plus li estovoit.
befitted Thus gave-he to each-one this that most to-him behooved

Ensi departoit les dons c'om li dounoit pour lui
Thus distributed-he the gifts that-one to-him gave for him
essaiier, ne onques nul n'en retenoit. Et quant il le
to-test nor ever any not-of-them retained And when they him
virent ensi maintenir, si n'en i ot nul qui ne le
saw thus conduct so not-of-them there was any who not him

prisast en son cuer. Et bien disoient en derriere qu'il
should-prize in his heart And well said in behind that-he
seroit de haut affaire, que il ne veoient en lui nule
would-be of high affair for they not saw in him any
convoitise ne nule mauvaisté, que si tost comme il l'avoit
covetousness nor any badness for so soon as he it-had
pris autressi tost le ravoit il emploiié; ne ne voient que tout
taken just-as soon it again-had he employed nor not see that all
si don ne soient regnaule selon chou que chascuns iert.
his gifts not be royal according-to this that each-one was
Ensi assaiierent Artu que nule mauvaise teche ne porent
Thus tested Arthur so-that any bad quality not could
en lui trouver. Et attendirent jusques a le Penthecouste. Et
in him find And waited until to the Pentecost And
quant vint a la Penthecouste, si s'assamblerent tout li baron
when came to the Pentecost so themselves-assembled all the barons
a Logres, et essaiierent a l'espee tout cil qui essaiier i
at Logres and tested at the-sword all those who test there
vaurrent, ne onques ne le porent avoir. Et li archevesques
wished nor ever not it could have And the archbishop
ot apparillié le couronne et le sacre a le veille de
had prepared the crown and the consecration on the eve of
le Penthecouste le samedi au soir devant viespres. Par le
the Pentecost the saturday at evening before vespers By the
commun conseil et par l'acort des plus des barons fist
common counsel and by the-accord of-the most of-the barons made
l'archevesques Artu chevalier. Et cele nuit si veilla Artus a
the-archbishop Arthur knight And that night so watched Arthur at
la maistre eglise dusques au demain au jour que il fu
the master church until to-the morrow at-the day that it was
ajorné. Si furent mandé tout li baron et assamblé a la
day-come So were summoned all the barons and assembled at the

maistre eglise. Et parla li archevesques a eus tous et lour
master church And spoke the archbishop to them all and to-them
dist: «Signeur, veschi un homme que nostre sires nous a
said Lords here-is a man whom our lord to-us has
eslit par tele election coume vous veés et avés veut dès le
chosen by such election as you see and have seen since the
Noel en encha, que tout cil se sont essaiié a l'espee
Christmas on hitherward for all those themselves are tested at the-sword
qui essaiier s'i vaurrent, ne onques nel pot nus
who test themselves-thereat wished nor ever not-it could anyone
avoir fors Artus qui chi est. Et veschi les vestemens roiaus
have except Arthur who here is And here-are the vestments royal
et le couronne par le commun conseil et par vos bouches
and the crown by the common counsel and by your mouths
mesmes. Ore voel je, se il i a nul de vous qui contre
themselves Now wish I if it there has any of you who against
ceste election soit, qu'il le die.» Et il respondent ensamble:
this election be that-he it say And they answer together
«Sire, nous nous i acordons bien, et volons de par
Lord we ourselves thereto accord well and wish on behalf-of
Dieu que il soit rois sacrés, en tel maniere que se il i
God that he be king consecrated in such manner that if it there
avoit nul de nous viers cui il euust nule male volenté de
had any of us toward whom he might-have any ill will for
chou qu'il ont esté contre son sacre et contre s'election
this that-they have been against his consecration and against his-election
dusques a hui, que il lour pardoinst a tous communaument.»
until to today that he them should-pardon to all in-common
Et lors s'agenoillierent et crierent tout communaument
And then themselves-knelt and cried all in-common
merchi. Et Artus pleure de pitié et s'agenoille viers aus.
mercy And Arthur weeps for pity and himself-kneels toward them

Et dist: «Signeur, je le vous pardoins, et prie a cel
And said Lords I it to-you pardon and pray to that
signour ki ceste hounour m'a consentie a avoir qu'il le
lord who this honor me-has consented to have that-he it
vous pardoinst.» Atant se leverent et prisent Artu
to-you pardon Thereupon themselves raised and took Arthur
entre lour bras et l'en menerent entre lour bras ou li
between their arms and him-thence led between their arms where the
roial viestement estoient et l'en viestirent. Et puis fu
royal vestments were and him-therein clothed And then was
li archevesques apparilliés pour la messe chanter, et dist
the archbishop prepared for the mass to-sing and said
a Artu: «Sire, alés querre l'espee et la justiche dont
to Arthur Lord go seek the-sword and the justice with-which
vous devés desfendre sainte eglise et la crestiienté garder.»
you must defend holy church and the Christendom guard
Lors ala la porcessions au perron. Et puis commanda li
Then went the procession to-the block And then commanded the
archevesques et dist: «Artus, se tu iés teuls que tu voelles
archbishop and said Arthur if thou art such that thou wish
jurer a Dieu et a son pooir d'aidier sainte eglyse et
to-swear to God and to his power to-aid holy church and
essauchier et tenir loiauté en terre et pais a ton pooir et
exalt and hold loyalty on earth and peace to thy power and
maintenir droiture, si va avant et pren l'espee dont nostre
maintain right so go forward and take the-sword of-which our
sires t'a fait election.» Quant Artus oi chou, si pleure de
lord thee-has made election When Arthur heard this so weeps for
pitié et maint autre baron, et dist: «Aussi vraiement comme
pity and many other baron and said As truly as
nostre sires est Dieus et sires deseure toutes choses qui
our lord is God and lord above all things which

sont, me doinst il forche et pooir de faire et de maintenir
are me give he force and power to do and to maintain
chou que vous avés dit, si vraiement que je l'ai en talent.»
this that you have said so truly as I it-have in desire

Ore dist li contes que Artus fu agenoilliés et prist
Now says the tale that Arthur was kneeling and took
l'espee as ses mains jointes et le leva de l'englume aussi
the-sword in-the his hands joined and it raised from the-anvil as
legierement comme se elle n'i tenist riens. Et lors porta
lightly as if it not-there held anything And then carried
l'espee entre ses mains toute droite, et le menerent a l'autel
the-sword between his hands all upright and him led to the-altar
et il le mist sus. Et quant il l'i ot mise, si le sacrerent
and he it put upon-it And when he it-there had put so him consecrated
et oinsent et fisent tout chou c'on doit faire a roy. Quant
and anointed and did all this that-one must do to king When
Artus fu sacrés et la messe chantee, s'en issirent
Arthur was consecrated and the mass sung themselves-thence issued
dou moustier, si esgarderent, et ne virent point del perron,
from-the minster so looked and not saw a-whit of-the block
et ne sorent qu'il fu devenus. Ensi fu Artus esleus a roi,
and not knew what-it was become Thus was Arthur chosen as king
et tint la terre et le regne de Logres lonc tans a pais.
and held the land and the realm of Logres long time in peace